DEAR FRANCOPHILE (LOVER OF FRENCH)

Dear Francophile (lover of French),

Does a sexy French accent turn you on? Do the sounds of the language make your heart beat faster and your legs turn to jelly? Are you intrigued by the seductive cadence of this exotic and romantic language? Don’t you wish that voice was yours? The answers to all of these questions should be an overwhelming, enthusiastic, “Yes, of course!” That’s why you picked up this book, isn’t it? You’ve always wished that you could lose your hometown drawl and sound sophisticated and continental. The opportunity of a lifetime is in your hands right now. In just a few hours time I can help you change your image and introduce you to a culture that is both unique and élégante.

No matter where your interests lie, there’s something in this book for you. If you’re a student, there’s extensive vocabulary and a refresher course in basic, everyday grammar that you simply don’t get in traditional textbooks. If you’re a traveler, there are tips and phrases that will allow you to immerse yourself in the language and traditions of any French-speaking country. If you’re a business person, there’s all you need to know about using modern technology and making a successful deal. And if you’re just a lover of languages, well, there’s a little bit of everything presented as a light read.

I wrote this book with you in mind and it’s totally user-friendly. It’s a tool that will help you open doors that will take you far and wide, while enabling you to feel totally comfortable in all of life’s situations. By the end of this book you’ll be able to cook with Escoffier, see a film at the Cannes Film Festival without reading the subtitles (well, maybe you’ll have to peek a little), order a meal that’s fit for royalty and that won’t put a hole in your pocket, get a new look, rent a villa, send a fax, and even invest in La Bourse (the French stock exchange). What you choose to do with this book is up to you. Give French a try. You won’t be disappointed and you’ll find it far easier than you ever imagined.

Bonne Chance!

bohn shuNs

Good Luck!

Gail Stein
### 20 Important Words and Phrases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Please</td>
<td>«S'il vous plaît»</td>
<td>see voo pleh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Thank you very much</td>
<td>«Merci beaucoup»</td>
<td>mehr-see boo-koo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>You’re welcome</td>
<td>«De rien, Pas de quoi»</td>
<td>duh ryan, pahl kwah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Excuse me</td>
<td>«Pardon, Excusez-moi»</td>
<td>pahr-dohN, ezh-kew-zay mwah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>My name is...</td>
<td>«Je m'appelle...»</td>
<td>zhuh muh-pehl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>I would like...</td>
<td>«Je voudrais...»</td>
<td>zhuh voo-dreh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>I need...</td>
<td>«Il me faut... J'ai besoin de...»</td>
<td>eel muh foh, zheh bul-lzwan duh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Do you have...</td>
<td>«Avez-vous...»</td>
<td>ait-vay voo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Please give me...</td>
<td>«Donnez-moi s'il vous plaît...»</td>
<td>doh-nay mwah seel voo pleh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Could you help me please?</td>
<td>«Pourriez-vous m'aider s'il vous plaît?»</td>
<td>poor-yay voo meh-day see voo pleh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Do you speak English?</td>
<td>«Parlez-vous anglais?»</td>
<td>pahr-lay voo ahr-leh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>I speak a little French</td>
<td>«Je parle un peu le français»</td>
<td>zhuh pahl uhn puh lah frahn-seh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>I don’t understand</td>
<td>«Je ne comprends pas»</td>
<td>zhuh nuh koHN-prahN pah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Please repeat</td>
<td>«Répétez, s'il vous plaît»</td>
<td>ray-pay-lay seel voo pleh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>What did you say?</td>
<td>«Qu’est-ce que vous avez dit?»</td>
<td>kehs-kuh voo ah-vay dee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>I’m lost</td>
<td>«Je me suis égaré(e) »</td>
<td>zhuh muh swee zay-gah-ray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>I’m looking for...</td>
<td>«Je cherche...»</td>
<td>zhuh shehsh...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Where are the bathrooms?</td>
<td>«Où sont les toilettes?»</td>
<td>oo sohn lay twah-leht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Where is the police station?</td>
<td>«Où est le commissariat de police?»</td>
<td>oo eh loh koh-mee-sah-ryah duh poh-lees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Where is the American Embassy?</td>
<td>«Où est l’ambassade américaine?»</td>
<td>oo eh laHN-bah-sahd ah-may-ree-kahn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: The pronunciations are given in American English.*
## CONTENTS AT A GLANCE

### Part 1: The Very Basics

1. **The Top Ten Reasons You Should Study French**  
   Helps you figure out why French is the language for you.  
   \( \text{Page 3} \)

2. **Pronounce It Properly**  
   Shows you how to develop the best pronunciation possible.  
   \( \text{Page 9} \)

3. **You Know More Than You Think**  
   You already have an extensive French vocabulary—it is just a matter of cognates.  
   \( \text{Page 25} \)

4. **Are Idioms for Idiots?**  
   A handy lesson on idioms that will help you to express yourself properly.  
   \( \text{Page 35} \)

5. **Good Grief, It's Grammar!**  
   The basic grammar you need to function in French.  
   \( \text{Page 47} \)

6. **Everything You Wanted to Know about Sex**  
   Masculine, Feminine, and neuter nouns are gender specific.  
   \( \text{Page 53} \)

7. **Let's Plan a Trip**  
   Conjugating regular verbs is a relatively simple task.  
   \( \text{Page 65} \)

### Part 2: Travel

8. **Meetings and Greetings**  
   The best ways to strike up a conversation.  
   \( \text{Page 81} \)

9. **I'd Like to Get to Know You**  
   How to make introductions, express possession, and describe yourself and family members.  
   \( \text{Page 91} \)

10. **Finally, You're at the Airport**  
    To get around, you've got to learn to give and receive directions.  
    \( \text{Page 107} \)

11. **Getting to the Hotel**  
    Tips on picking the best means of transportation, using numbers, and telling time.  
    \( \text{Page 119} \)

12. **Hooray, You've Made It to the Hotel!**  
    Don't like your room? You'll learn to ask for another and to get the amenities you want.  
    \( \text{Page 133} \)
Part 3: Fun and Games

13 What's the Weather?
Now you can talk about the weather in French! You'll also learn the days of the week, months, and the seasons.

14 Let's Sightsee
To have the greatest vacation, you'll have to learn to read the maps and ask questions!

15 I Wanna Shop Till I Drop
Learning to ask about colors, sizes, material, and designs. You'll also learn how to express “this” and “that,” “these” and “those.”

16 Finally, A Home-Cooked Meal
When you peruse the local food stores, you'll be able to ask for what you want, and in what quantities.

17 Let's Eat Out
You can order a great meal in French and get everything you want, from soup to nuts. How to make an exclamation.

18 Let's Have Fun
You'll learn how to ask your new French friends to do “fun” things. The adverbs in this chapter will help you describe your many abilities.

Part 4: Problems

19 Dealing with a Bad Hair Day and Getting Other Personal Services
Whether you need to visit a hair salon or a dry cleaner, this chapter will help you shop for services and make comparisons.

20 Is There a Doctor in the House?
Describe your symptoms and understand your diagnosis.

21 Oops, I forgot…
Getting the drugstore items you need. How to express yourself in the past tense.

22 I Have to Make an Important Phone Call
Using the phone, proper greetings, and what to do if there's a problem.

23 Where's the Nearest Post Office?
Whether you want to mail a letter or collect a parcel, this chapter will keep you out of the dead letter office.
Part 5: Let's Get Down to Business  
24 I Want to Rent a Château  
How to get the apartment or house you want. The future. Using the conditional.  

25 Money Matters  
Mini-dictionary of banking terms. Using the subjunctive.  

Part 6: Answer Key
# CONTENTS

## Part 1: The Very Basics

1. The Top Ten Reasons You Should Study French
   - What's Your Fancy?  
   - Full Speed Ahead  
   - There's Nothing to Fear  
   - The Least You Need to Know  

2. Pronounce It Properly
   - Do You Have Stress?  
   - Shall We Have a Liaison? Or Would You Prefer an Elision?
     - Liaison  
     - Elision  
   - Accentuate the Positive
     - Your Own Personal Accent  
     - Accent Marks  
   - There Sure Are a Lot of Vowel Sounds!
   - So That's Why I Have a Nose  
   - Continuing with Consonants
     - Practice Makes Perfect  
   - The Least You Need to Know  

3. You Know More Than You Think
   - What You Already Know  
   - Perfect Cognates  
   - How Much Do You Understand Already?
And You're Off

Putting Your Idioms to Use I (or You're Off and Running)

It's Time to

Putting Your Idioms to Use II (or What Time Is It?)

Go to Your Left, Your Right, Your Left

Putting Your Idioms to Use III (or Getting There in One Piece)

So, What Do You Think?

Putting Your Idioms to Use IV (or What's Your Opinion?)

How Do You Feel?

Putting Your Idioms to Use V (or What's Up?)

Baby It's Cold Outside

Putting Your Idioms to Use VI (or How's the Weather?)

It's In Your Hands

The Least You Need to Know

5 Good Grief, It's Grammar!

Groping at Grammar

Naming with Nouns

Versatile Verbs

Appropriate Adjectives

Active Adverbs

I'm Not an Idiot—I Know How to Use a Dictionary

Putting Your Dictionary to Work

A Proper Workout with Your Dictionary

The Least You Need to Know

6 Everything You Wanted to Know about Sex
Is It a Girl or a Boy?  
Noun Markers  
Singular Nouns  
He Is/She Is  
When There's More Than One Noun  
Plural Nouns  
Now There's More Than One  
Other Plurals  
Practice Those Plurals  
What Have You Learned about Gender?  
The Least You Need to Know
7 Let's Plan a Trip 65

What's the Subject? 66

Subject Pronouns 66

Tu versus Vous 67

Il, Ils, Elle, Elles? 68

Verbs in Motion 68

Regular Verbs 68

The er Verb Family 70

Conjugation 101 71

The ir Verb Family 71

Conjugation 102 71

The re Verb Family 72

Conjugation 103 72

Ask Me Anything 72

Intonation 73

N'est-ce pas? 73

Est-ce que 73

Inversion 74

Ask Me if You Can 75

And the Answer Is… 75

Verb Tables 76

The Least You Need to Know 78

Part 2: Travel 79

8 Meetings and Greetings 81

Making Friends 82
To Be or Not To Be

What's Your Line?

Idioms with être

Become Very Nosy

Obtaining Information the Easy Way

Obtaining Information by Using est-ce que

Obtaining Information by Using Inversion

Ask Away

The Least You Need to Know

9 I'd Like to Get to Know You

What a Family!

Are You Possessed?

Possession with de

Express These Relationships
Possessive Adjectives  
State Your Preference  
Let Me Introduce You  
Can You?
Taking the Conversation a Little Further  
Idioms with avoir  
Using avoir  
What's He/She Like?  
Gender of Adjectives  
More Than One? What Are They Like?  
What's Your Position?
Complete the Descriptions  
Personal Ads  
The Least You Need to Know  

10 Finally, You're at the Airport  
The Plain Plane  
Airline Advice  
On the Inside
Signs Everywhere
Going, Going, Gone
Can You Tell Me How to Get to…?
So That's Where It Is
Giving and Receiving More Complicated Directions
Using Commands
Prepositions
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contractions</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are You Dazed and Confused?</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Get There!</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Least You Need to Know</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Getting to the Hotel</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planes, Trains, and Automobiles</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taking the Best Means of Transportation</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Something New</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which Do You Prefer?</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using quel</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fill 'er Up</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Point Me in the Right Direction</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How Much Is It?</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What's Your Number?</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What Time Is It?</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Least You Need to Know</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12 Hooray, You've Made It to the Hotel!

What a Hotel! Does It Have…?

Expressing Need

Just in Case

Going to the Top

I'm Afraid There'll Have to Be a Change

cer Verbs

Using cer Verbs

ger Verbs

Using ger Verbs

yer Verbs

Using yer Verbs

e+consonant+er Verbs

Using e+consonant+er Verbs

é+consonant+er Verbs

Using é+consonant+er Verbs

The Least You Need to Know

Part 3: Fun and Games

13 What's the Weather?

It's 20 Degrees, but They're Wearing Shorts!

What's the Temperature?

But It Says in the Paper…

The Forecast

What Day Is It?

This Is the Best Time of the Month
The Four Seasons 155

You Have a Date for What Date? 156

What's the Date? 158

What Do You Make of This? 158

Expressions with faire 159

Using faire 160

The Least You Need to Know 160

14 Let's Sightsee 161

Where Do You Want to Go? 162

What Do You Want to See? 163

I See… 163

Making Suggestions in More Ways Than One 164

Making Suggestions 164

Other Phrases You Might Find Useful 164
What Do You Think? 166
Beyond the Blue Horizon 167
Going to Stay? 168
Coming 169
Where Are You Going? 170
Y Gads! 170
Using y 171
Make a Suggestion 172
The Least You Need to Know 172
15 I Wanna Shop Till I Drop 173
Now That's My Kinda Store! 174
Know Your Jewels 175
Clothing 176
Colors 178
Materials 178
Read the Labels 179
You're Putting Me On 179
What Do You Put On? 179
What's the Object? 180
Position of Object Pronouns 181
Using Direct Object Pronouns 182
Using Indirect Object Pronouns 182
Asking for What You Want 182
What Do You Prefer? 183
Expressing Opinions 184
17 Let's Eat Out

Where Should We Go? 206

Which Restaurant? 206

We're Eating Out 208

Garçon, What Do You Recommend? 210

This Menu Is Greek to Me 211

That's the Way I Like It 213

Spice It Up 215

Special Diets 216

Send It Back Please 217

Fancy Endings 217

Drink to Me Only 218

I'm Thirsty 220

You Only Want Some, Not All? 221

Room Service 222

The Pronoun en 222

Using en 224

Should I or Shouldn't I? 224

It Was Delicious 224

How Was It? 225

The Least You Need to Know 225

18 Let's Have Fun 227

Are You a Sports Fan? 228

Would You Like to Join Me? 230

Extend an Invitation 231
Part 4: Problems

19 Dealing with a Bad Hair Day and Getting Other Personal Services

   My Hair Needs Help, Now!

      Expressing Your Preferences

I'm Having Problems

   At the Dry Cleaner's—à la Teinturerie

   At the Laundry—à la Blanchisserie or à la Laverie Automatique

   At the Shoemaker's—Chez le Cordonnier

   I Need These Shoes

   At the Optometrist's—Chez l'Opticien

   I Need Them Now

   At the Jeweler's—Chez le Bijoutier

   It's My Watch

   At the Camera Shop—au Magasin de Photographie

   I Need a New Camera

Other Services

   More Stress

      Using Stress Pronouns

      Relieve My Stress

Comparison Shopping

      Make a Comparison

The Least You Need to Know

20 Is There a Doctor in the House?

   Where Does It Hurt?

   You Give Me a Pain in the
I Don't Feel So Hot 267
This Is What You Have 267
   How Long Have You Felt This Way? 269
   I'm Suffering 270
   Tell the Truth 270
What Are You Doing to Yourself? 270
   Reflexive or Not? 271
   Position of the Reflexive Pronoun 273
   Using Reflexive Verbs 274
   Commanding Reflexively 274
The Least You Need to Know 274
What Do You Have to Do? 293
I Can't Talk Now 293
What Did You Do to Yourself 293
Excuses 294
The Least You Need to Know 294

23 Where's the Nearest Post Office? 295
Will My Letter Get There? 295
Getting Service 297
At the Post Office 298
I Want to Send a Telegram 298
What Should I Write? 299
Can You Read This? 299
What Do You Know about This? 300
What's the Difference? 301
Savoir or Connaître? 301
What Were You Doing? 302

Formation of the Imperfect 302

The Passé Composé vs the Imperfect 304

Passé Composé or Imparfait? 305

The Least You Need to Know 306

Part 5: Let's Get Down to Business 307

24 I Want to Rent a Château 309

I Want to Rent a Château 310

All the Comforts of Home 312

Let's Buy Furniture 313

Buying or Renting 313

Cracking the Code 314

There's Hope for the Future 316

Aller + Infinitive 316

Today's Plans 316

The Future Tense 316

The Future Tense of Shoe Verbs 317

Verbs Irregular in the Future 318

What Are the Conditions? 319

Formation of the Conditional 319

The Conditional of Shoe Verbs 320

Irregular Verbs in the Conditional 321

What Would You Do? 321

The Least You Need to Know 321

25 Money Matters 323
FOREWORD

As the eyes are windows to the soul, language provides insight and depth to our understanding of another culture. In fact, knowledge of another language enhances understanding of our own language, and generally it strengthens our ability to communicate more effectively in both.

Images of France and French language have fascinated Americans of all ages throughout our history. Its sound and rhythm are particularly beautiful to the ear and emphasized by a culture that evokes images of fine art, literature, wine, and culinary delights, not to mention romantic love and sex appeal.

It also evokes terror.

Those of us who are perfectionists or can't fathom speaking a French word outside the context of the latest American or British pop tune with a French refrain know what I'm talking about. Those of us who have tried using our high school French on a French waiter know that response that strikes fear in one's heart. You know the one I'm talking about. The one that says in only slightly accented, but perfect English, “I beg your pardon, what did you say you wanted?” Of course, the only thing worse than that is if he actually answers you—in French! Then you have to actually understand his response and pray for the correct reply.

If this troubles you, then hope and salvation are only pages away. Whether you're a beginner or have a few years of French language training under your belt, the Complete Idiot's Guide to Learning French On Your Own makes the basics basic and the harder stuff, well, simpler.

It is the primer that will give you the guideposts you'll need to learn this beautiful tongue while reducing your fear of learning it. Whether you fear mastering the accent, or the dreaded subjunctive, there are tips to enlighten you and rules written in a vernacular that any American or English reader can understand.

At the French Institute Alliance Française, New York's French Cultural Center, we immerse our students in French language training, complemented by French films, an electronic learning center, a full French library, and diverse live cultural programs from France and Francophone countries. As the first American Director in over twenty years, my French was more than a little rusty. The first thing I did upon being appointed was to buy a good French-English dictionary. The second thing I would have done—had it been published at the time—would have been to buy the Complete Idiot's Guide to Learning French On Your Own—the perfect complement to the uninitiated, the frightened—or the perfectionist who just wants to get it right.

DAVID S. BLACK
EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR
FRENCH INSTITUTE ALLIANCE FRANÇAISE
INTRODUCTION

Years ago, extensive worldwide travel was simply beyond the reach of most of us. Today, modern technology has made the world a smaller place and has put it at our doorstep. It is now up to you to seize every opportunity to discover it and to broaden your horizons, because yesterday's dreams have become today's reality.

Learning French will allow you to open doors to countless opportunities, experiences, and adventures that beckon you at every turn. It will open your eyes, ears, heart, and soul to new cultures, new ideas, new perspectives, and new situations. The bottom line is, you just never know when it will prove to be the handiest, most useful tool you possess. Read the directions, study the language, and learn to use it slowly, carefully, and with love.

This user-friendly book was designed to help you enjoy your learning experience to the fullest. The light, simple, clearcut approach will instill all the confidence you need to be a successful, competent speaker.

Why and How this Book Is Meant for You

The six parts of this book will take you from the very basics to more extensive knowledge of the patterns of the language. Keep in mind that this is not a phrase book, a dictionary, a grammar book, or a tour book. Rather, it is a combination of the four, with an emphasis on teaching you to communicate effectively in everyday situations: to socialize, to give and obtain information, to express your opinions, to persuade friends and family members to follow a course of action and, plainly and simply, to help you get what you want when you want it. Students, tourists, and business people alike will find this book useful, informative, and easy to use. Each chapter is based on a theme that ties together vocabulary, useful phrases, and grammar, and that provides authentic materials and activities that will give you a better understanding of French-speaking people and immerse you in their culture. Here's what the book covers:

Part 1, “The Very Basics,” begins by discussing why French should be a part of your life, is followed by a phonetic pronunciation guide designed for the shy and easily intimidated speaker, and then proceeds to show you just how much French you know before you even get started. Idioms, slang, and typical gestures are presented, as well as basic, elementary grammar terms and rules. Almost immediately you will be able to engage in simple conversations and ask and answer easy questions.

Part 2, “Travel,” will help you to plan and take a trip. You'll learn how to express greetings and salutations, and introduce, speak about, and describe yourself and your traveling companions. You'll even be able to ask nosy questions. There's a chapter to help you find
your way around the airport, and another that will help you get transportation to wherever you are going (even if you are renting a car). You'll find yourself a pro at giving and receiving directions. Finally, this part will ensure that you get the room you want, with all the creature comforts you desire.

**Part 3, “Fun and Games,”** promises that you will have the greatest experience ever. This section presents in detail anything and everything you could possibly want to do in a foreign country: sports, concerts, museums, tourist attractions. You will learn how to interpret the weather report, express your opinions and preferences, and make suggestions. More important, the two chapters on food will enable you to understand and expertly order from a menu, and ensure that you dine on the finest dishes that French cuisine has to offer—even if you follow a special diet. Finally, the chapter on shopping will allow you to buy whatever your heart desires, from haute couture fashions (don't worry, everything will fit if you use the conversion tables) to souvenirs for your loved ones.

**Part 4, “Problems,”** prepares you for them all. You'll be able to phone home, receive medical attention and assistance, and get your hair done, clothes cleaned, camera fixed, glasses repaired, shoes resoled, prescriptions filled, and mail delivered. You'll even be able to explain what happened in the past.

**Part 5, “Let's Get Down to Business,”** helps you deal with common business transactions. This section includes a mini-dictionary for banking terms. When you're through with this chapter, you'll even be able to buy or rent a piece of property abroad and be able to express your present and future needs.

**Part 6, “Answer Key,”** gives you the answers to all of the exercises in this book.

By the time you have finished this book, you will have studied and practiced skills that will enable you to feel confident in social and business situations where French is required. It is simply a matter of finding the time, being patient, making the effort to test your abilities, and creating your own adventure.

**Extras**

Besides all the vocabulary lists, useful phrases, and grammatical explanations, this book has lots of useful and interesting information provided here and there in sidebars throughout the text. The following icons set these tidbits apart:
Acknowledgments

I would like to acknowledge the contributions, input, support, and interest of the following people:


This book is dedicated to:

• My wonderfully patient and supportive husband, Douglas
• My incredibly loving and understanding sons, Eric and Michael
• My proud parents, Jack and Sara Bernstein
• My superior consultant and advisor, Roger Herz
• My mentor from the very beginning, Yetta Rosenblum
• The memory of a very special gentleman, Ernest Rothschild—a true professional
PART 1
THE VERY BASICS

1 The Top Ten Reasons You Should Study French 3
2 Pronounce It Properly 9
3 You Know More Than You Think 25
4 Are Idioms for Idiots? 35
5 Good Grief, It's Grammar! 47
6 Everything You Wanted to Know about Sex 53
7 Let's Plan a Trip 65
Chapter 1
The Top Ten Reasons You Should Study French

You've picked up this book, and you're probably wondering, “Should I or shouldn't I?” You're probably asking yourself if it will be difficult, if you'll have the time, if it's going to be worth the effort, and if you'll stick with it. My name may not be Dave, but here are my top ten reasons why you need to study French:

10. You love Colette's romance novels.
9. You'd like to root for the Montréal Canadiens in French.
8. You loved Les Misérables so much that you decided to read the original version in its entirety—all 600 plus pages.
7. You want to avoid ordering francs with mustard and sauerkraut.
6. You never know when you're going to run into Catherine Deneuve.
5. You want to impress your date at a French restaurant.

4. You love French movies but find the subtitles too distracting.

3. They won't let you onto the topless beach in Martinique without it.

2. Two words: French Fries.

And finally, the best reason of all:

1. You want to meet St. Exupéry's “Little Prince.”

Are you totally convinced that French is the language for you? Now that I have your undivided attention, let's look at some more down-to-earth, realistic reasons you should study French.

What's Your Fancy?

The following are some serious reasons why you might want to study French:

10. You're a musician, and France is a country where culture is taken seriously. You long to go to L'Opéra and admire its sculptured façade, its magnificent marble staircase, and its elegant foyer. You really like classical music (although you'd never admit it to your friends) and would like to enjoy the operas you love in their native language: Carmen by Bizet, Faust by Gounod, Manon by Massenet, Samson et Dalila by Saint-Saëns. Yes, you want to take your studies further.

9. You're an artist. Your dream is to sit in the Place du Tertre in Montmartre and paint watercolor scenes of Paris or do charcoal portraits of the tourists who stop by your easel to admire your work. You're pulled to Paris by its many museums: the Musée du Louvre with its Mona Lisa and Venus de Milo; the Musée d'Orsay with its impressionist collection; the Centre Georges-Pompidou with its fabulous modern art museum; the well-hidden Musée Picasso; and many more. You long to have a picnic lunch at the Musée Rodin while you sit and admire Le Penseur (The Thinker) or Le Baiser (The Kiss). Art is your life, and you want to study in a place where it is respected and loved.

8. You love French movies and long to understand the actors without the distraction of poorly translated subtitles.

7. You're not greedy, but you do want to make more money. France, a leading nation in the European Economic Community, has the fourth largest economy in the world, and you'd like to take advantage of that. Haute couture (high fashion), perfume, leather goods, precision instruments, automobiles, chemical and pharmaceutical products, and jewelry are all thriving French industries—France is a European leader.
6. **You want to prove you're smart.** The French language has the reputation of being difficult. This dates back to a time when only the smartest junior-high-school students were offered French. Of course, anyone who's ever studied French knows that it really isn't any more difficult than any other foreign language.

5. **You want to live in a French-speaking country.** You love the language, you love the people, or maybe you've been relocated by your company. Whatever the reason, if you're going to be staying in a French-speaking country for an extended period of time, you've got to learn the language.

4. **You love to cook and have a special passion for fabulous dishes and desserts.** You want to go to original sources and to understand all the food terms and culinary techniques. If you decide to take a cooking course in France, you want to know what's going on.

3. **You love to eat.** Do you consider yourself a gourmet? If so, then a basic knowledge of French, especially the culinary terms, is a must. Whether you prefer *nouvelle, haute,* or traditional cuisine, Cajun specialties, regional or native dishes, French cooking is truly considered the world's greatest. Whether you eat in Paris or New Orleans, Algeria or Port-au-Prince, the city or the country, you can be sure that the food you are served is fresh and appetizing, and that it has been expertly and lovingly prepared by a chef who takes great pride in his or her work. And a good French wine accompanying your meal is a tribute to the prestige and excellence of this industry in France.

2. **You want to be totally irresistible, and you truly believe that speaking French will attract that special someone.** You're probably right. French, more than any other language, has the reputation of being “the language of love.” It doesn't even matter what you say. Just whisper any of the beautiful, flowing, songlike phrases in someone's ear to “Wow!” them and to make their heart beat faster. It's practically foolproof.

1. **You love to travel.** In addition to France, there are more than 40 French-speaking countries in the world, where more than 100 million people speak French on a daily basis. Whether you travel for business or pleasure, romance or adventure, excitement or relaxation, your choices include: sensuous tropical islands with white, sandy beaches; lush rain forests with luxuriant, native vegetation; tempting snowcovered mountains perfect for winter sports; sweaty, sultry jungles where special thrills lurk everywhere; fortified ancient villages where history comes to life or bustling, modern cities where the future rapidly unfolds. You don't have to go far: Louisiana, Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Canada, or you could find yourself across the globe in distant, exotic lands in Africa or Asia. Perhaps you will simply be one of the more than 60 million tourists who visit France each year. The possibilities and opportunities are endless.
Full Speed Ahead

The best way to become proficient in something is to plunge right in. Immerse yourself in anything and everything that is French. Have a love affair with the language and the culture. Follow these suggestions to ensure a long-lasting and fulfilling relationship:

• Examine your goals, honestly evaluate your linguistic abilities, and pace yourself accordingly. Take your time, don't rush, and set aside special time each day that you devote only to French.

• Invest in or borrow a good bilingual dictionary. Pocket varieties (usually running between $6 and $10) may suit the needs of some learners but prove somewhat deficient for others. Carefully peruse what is available in your local bookstore or library before making a decision on what is best for you. Current popular dictionaries that are easy to use and that provide a comprehensive listing of current, colloquial vocabulary words are:

  Collins-Robert (approximately $25)
  Larousse (approximately $50)

• Take advantage of all opportunities to listen to the language. Rent French movies and try not to read the English subtitles. If broadcast in your area, listen to public service radio or television stations that provide French programs. Search bookstores and public or college libraries for language tapes that will help you hear and master the French sound system. Create your own tapes and use them to perfect your accent. Ask to use language laboratories and computer programs that are available in many high schools and universities.

• Read everything you can get your hands on: fairy tales, children's books, comic books (Astérix is my personal favorite), newspapers: Le Monde, France-Soir, Le Figaro, Libération, Le Dauphiné Libéré, magazines: Paris Match, Elle, L'Express, Marie-Claire. If you're not too bashful, read aloud and practice your pronunciation and comprehension at the same time.

Create un coin français (a French corner) in a convenient spot in your home. Decorate it with posters or articles. Label items whose names you want to learn and display them for easy viewing. Keep all your materials together and organized in this special French spot.

There's Nothing to Fear

Some people are truly afraid to study a foreign language. They think that it'll be too much work, too hard, too time-consuming. In reality, if you take it slow and don't allow yourself to become overly concerned with grammar and pronunciation, you will manage very well. To help you feel more at ease, try to remember the following:
• **Don't be intimidated by the grammar.** Everyone makes mistakes—even native speakers. And besides, usually only one or two correct words (especially verbs) will enable you to be understood.

• **Don't be intimidated by the pronunciation.** Put on your best French accent, don't be shy, and speak, speak, speak. In any country, there are many different regional accents. Certainly yours will fit in somewhere!

• **Don't be intimidated by the French.** They are perfectly lovely people and accept anyone who makes a sincere attempt to communicate.

• **Don't be intimidated by the reputation French has for being difficult.** As you will see, almost immediately, French is easy and fun.

*Bonne chance! (Buhn shahNs!) Good luck! Let's begin *tout de suite* (toot sweet) (immediately)!*

**The Least You Need to Know**

• Everyone, from every walk of life, can find a reason to study French.

• French is a very useful language to know because it is spoken throughout the world.

• You can get by even if your grammar and pronunciation are less than perfect.

• There's nothing to fear. Learning French really isn't that difficult.

• To become a *francophone* (French speaker), you must first be a *francophile* (lover of French).
When you speak French, you want to sound like they do in the movies: irresistible, romantic, sexy, sophisticated, chic. It's only natural. So lose your inhibitions, put on your best French accent, and repeat and practice the sounds of the language. Although different from English, these sounds are not too difficult to master. Just follow the rules, learn the proper pronunciation of the phonetic symbols, be patient, and you're on your way!

This is a work chapter. It's not terribly exciting, it's not particularly fun, and it's not especially amusing—but don't be reluctant to see it through. Just like anything you might have to learn (a sport, a hobby, a trade or profession), there's work involved, and you must be committed to putting in a certain amount of effort. Think of learning a language as a mental fitness routine. Start slowly and carefully work up to a pace that suits you. Remember, you don't want to burn yourself out at the first workout. So give it your best shot and practice, practice, practice.
Do You Have Stress?

In French, each syllable of a word has just about equal stress, so when speaking, try to pronounce each syllable of a word with equal emphasis. When you remember, place a slightly stronger emphasis on the last syllable of a group of words. Speak smoothly, speak musically, and speak evenly. My best advice: For maximum results, stay on an even keel.

Shall We Have a Liaison? Or Would You Prefer an Elision?

Liaison (linking) and elision (sliding) are two linguistic elements of the French language that give it its fluidity and melodious beauty.

Liaison

As a Rule
Keep the following in mind:

- H and Y are considered vowels in French.
- An N in the pronunciation guide refers to nasal sounds, which are explained in more detail later in this chapter.

Liaison refers to the linking of the final consonant of one word with the beginning vowel of the next word. There are many rules in French explaining when a liaison is mandatory, optional, and forbidden. I could go on for pages boring you with rules you'll probably never remember. For that reason, simply follow the pronunciation guide provided in this chapter and the phonetic keys for words and phrases throughout the book. Make a liaison when you see that the pronunciation of the last consonant sound of one word precedes the beginning vowel of the next word. Look at the first example to get a better idea. The first word is vous, pronounced voo. Its final s (pronounced z) is linked to the beginning of the next word, arrivez. The pronunciation of this word is now zah-ree-vay, and the necessary liaison has been painlessly achieved. When in doubt, follow the guide.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words</th>
<th>Liaison</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vous arrivez</td>
<td>voo zah-ree-vay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mon ami</td>
<td>mohN nah-mee</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Elision

Elision occurs when there are two pronounced vowel sounds: one at the end of a word, and the other at the beginning of the next word. The first vowel is dropped and replaced by an apostrophe. To pronounce the words, simply slide them together. If you try to say them separately, the vowel sounds will clash, and you will probably feel like you have a word stuck in your throat. Elision is a very natural device and gives the language fluidity. The following is an example of elision:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words</th>
<th>Elision</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Je arrive</td>
<td>J'arrive</td>
<td>zah-reev</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le hôtel</td>
<td>l'hôtel</td>
<td>lo-ehl</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Accentuate the Positive

If this is your first experience with a foreign language, you'll probably be mystified by accent marks. Just think of them as pronunciation guideposts that will help you speak like an old pro.

Your Own Personal Accent

For some, French pronunciation is a breeze. If you are lucky enough to have been born with a “good ear,” chances are you can carry a tune or play a musical instrument. You'll imitate the lilt, intonation, and stress without a problem.

For most of us, however, pronunciation is not without problems. If this is you, you're in good company. Consider my former college French literature teacher, a Rhodes scholar from Oxford University, who later went on to become chairman of the Romance Language Department. He was charming, interesting, sweet, very, very intellectual, well-read, and knowledgeable. He also had the worst French accent I have ever heard. He pronounced every word, every syllable, every letter so harshly and with such stress and emphasis that the students would sit in class squinting in pain. He butchered the pronunciation so much that it was memorable.

In my more naïve days, I often wondered why he would teach a language he obviously had so much trouble speaking. When I think back, I realize that it really didn't matter at all. Why? Because we all understood him despite his terrible pronunciation. And that débutant(e)s, is a very valuable lesson for us all. No matter what you sound like (and you couldn't sound any worse than this teacher), if you use the correct vocabulary words, you will be able to make yourself understood. That should be your goal. Nobody is going to laugh at you; they might just say “Pardon” more than usual. In the end, your level of
competence in pronunciation is no big deal. So relax, try your best, and, above all, don't be discouraged.

**Accent Marks**

There are five different accent marks in French that may be used to change the sounds of letters (é versus è, a versus â, and so on), to differentiate between the meanings of two words whose spellings are otherwise the same (a has and à to, at, ou or and où where, and so on) or to replace an s that was part of the word many centuries ago in old French.

An *accent aigu* (´) is seen only on an e (´).

é produces the sound *(ay)*, as in day.

An *accent grave* (&grave;) is used with a (à), e (è), and u (ù).

On an e, an accent grave produces the sound of *(eh)* as the e in the English word *met*.

It doesn't change the sound of the a (à) or u (ù).

An accent *circonflexe* may be used on all vowels: â, ê, î, ô, û. The vowel sounds are longer for â and ô, are slightly longer for ê, and are imperceptible on î and û.

A cédille (ç) is used only on a c (ç). When the c comes before a, o, or u, it means that you pronounce the letter as a soft c (the sound of s).

A tréma (¨) occurs on a second vowel in a series. This accent indicates that the two vowels are pronounced separately, each having its own distinct sound: Haïti *(ay-ee-tee)*, Noël *(noh-ehl)*.
There Sure Are a Lot of Vowel Sounds!

French vowels are a bit complicated. Why? In general, each vowel has a number of different sounds, and there are specific rules and accent marks that help you determine how a vowel is to be pronounced. I've included some practice exercises to help you. Some of the sentences are pretty silly, but they will help you learn how to pronounce the vowel sounds.

### French Letter Symbol Pronunciation Guide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Letter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a, à, â</td>
<td>ah</td>
<td>Say a as in <em>spa</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Open wide (but not too wide) and say *ahhh*....

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ça la</th>
<th>ma</th>
<th>sa</th>
<th>ta</th>
<th>va</th>
<th>papa</th>
<th>Canada</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>sah lah</em></td>
<td><em>mah</em></td>
<td><em>sah</em></td>
<td><em>tah</em></td>
<td><em>vah</em></td>
<td><em>pah-pah</em></td>
<td><em>kah-nah-dah</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### French Letter Symbol Pronunciation Guide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Letter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>é final <em>er</em> and <em>ez</em> es in some one-syllable words; a few <em>ai</em>, <em>et</em> combinations</td>
<td>ay</td>
<td>Say ay as in <em>day</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

é, final *er*, and *ez* are always pronounced *ay*. Instead of driving yourself crazy trying to remember the rules (which are vague), just look at the following guide.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bébé</th>
<th>télé</th>
<th>météo</th>
<th>été</th>
<th>René</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>bay-bay</em></td>
<td><em>tay-lay</em></td>
<td><em>may-tay-o</em></td>
<td><em>ay-tay</em></td>
<td><em>ruh-nay</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>danser</td>
<td>arriver</td>
<td>désirer</td>
<td>parler</td>
<td>tourner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>dahN-say</em></td>
<td><em>ah-ree-vay</em></td>
<td><em>day-zee-ray</em></td>
<td><em>pahr-lay</em></td>
<td><em>toor-nay</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chez</td>
<td>nez</td>
<td>allez</td>
<td>passez</td>
<td>assez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>shay</em></td>
<td><em>nay</em></td>
<td><em>ah-lay</em></td>
<td><em>pah-say</em></td>
<td><em>ah-say</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**French Letter Symbol Pronunciation Guide**

**e** in one-syllable words or in the middle of a word followed by a single consonant

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Letter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>uh</td>
<td>Say e as in the</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Again, this is another rule that requires too much thought for simple conversational French. Consult the pronunciation guide until the rule becomes second nature.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Letter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ce</td>
<td>je</td>
<td>le</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ne</td>
<td>de</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>suh</th>
<th>zhuh</th>
<th>luh</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>demander</td>
<td>pruh</td>
<td>nonN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regarder</td>
<td>vuh</td>
<td>neer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run-gahr-day</td>
<td>duh-mahN-day</td>
<td>pruh-nonN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vuh-ner</td>
<td>ruh-pah-say</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

At this point, don't overwhelm yourself with rules. When in doubt, let the guide do the work for you. With practice, you'll get the hang of it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Letter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>è, é, and e (plus two consonants or a final pronounced consonant)</td>
<td>eh</td>
<td>Say e as in met</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>très</th>
<th>mère</th>
<th>père</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>achète</td>
<td>bibliothèque</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>treh</td>
<td>mehr</td>
<td>pehr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ah-sheht</td>
<td>bee-bleh-oh-tehk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
fête  tête  être  même  prêter

feht  teht  ehtr  mehm  preh-tay

est  sept  rester  concert  Suzette

eh  seht  reh-stay  kohN-sehr  sew-zeht

quel  sel  chef  cher  cette

kehl  sehl  shehf  shehr  seht

ballet  bonnet  jouet  complet  cabinet

bah-leh  bohN-neh  zhoo-eh  kohN-pleh  kah-bee-neh

seize  treize  Seine  peine  pleine

sehz  trehz  sehn  pehn  plehn

aider  jamais  chaise  mais  américaine

eh-day  zhah-meh  shehz  meh  ah-may-ree-keh

French Letter  Symbol  Pronunciation Guide

i, i, y, ui  ee  Say i as in magazine

Smile and show your teeth when you say ee.

il  ici  midi  timide  visiter

eel  ee-see  mee-dee  tee-meed  vee-zee-tay

Sylvie  lycé  mystère  déne  île

seel-vee  lee-say  mee-stehr  deen  eel

huit  nuit  qui  guide  bruit

weet  nwee  kee  geed  brwee

French Letter  Symbol  Pronunciation Guide

i + ll il when preceded by a vowel  y  Say y as in your

For the ill, ail, or eil combinations, remember to keep the l silent.
fille  famille  gentille  billet
fee-y  fah-mee-y  zhahN-tee-y  bee-yeh
travail  soleil  oeil  detail
trah-vahy  soh-lehy  uhy  day-tahy
Every rule has an exception; or in this case, because there aren't too many, the words might be worth memorizing—especially because they're used frequently.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Letter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>i + ll</em> in these words only</td>
<td>eel</td>
<td>Say the word <em>eel</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ville</th>
<th>Village</th>
<th>Mille</th>
<th>Million</th>
<th>Tranquille</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>veel</td>
<td>vee-lahzh</td>
<td>meel</td>
<td>mee-lyohN</td>
<td>trahN-keel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Letter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>o</em> (before <em>se</em>),</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>Say <em>o</em> as in <em>no</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>O (last pronounced sound of word), <em>ô, au, eau</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Keep your lips rounded to pronounce this very open <em>o</em> sound. Once again, for <em>o</em>, there are many letter combinations you will have to learn eventually. For the time being, follow the pronunciation guide.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Radio</th>
<th>Trop</th>
<th>Mot</th>
<th>Stylo</th>
<th>Vélo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rah-dyo</td>
<td>tro</td>
<td>mo</td>
<td>stee-lo</td>
<td>vay-lo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hôtel</th>
<th>Allô</th>
<th>Tôt</th>
<th>Bientôt</th>
<th>Hôpital</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>o-tehl</td>
<td>ah-lo</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>byaN-to</td>
<td>o-pee-tahl</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Au</th>
<th>Aussi</th>
<th>Jaune</th>
<th>Autre</th>
<th>Auteur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>o-see</td>
<td>zhon</td>
<td>otr</td>
<td>o-tuhr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Eau</th>
<th>Beau</th>
<th>Cadeau</th>
<th>Gâteau</th>
<th>Manteau</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>bo</td>
<td>kah-do</td>
<td>gah-to</td>
<td>mahN-to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Letter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>o</em> when followed by a pronounced consonant other than <em>s</em></td>
<td>oh</td>
<td><em>o</em> as in <em>love</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This *o* sound is not nearly as rounded and open as the one before. It may take some practice to distinguish between the two. If you can't, don't worry—chances are no one is listening that closely anyway. As you practice, try to hear the difference.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>notre</th>
<th>pomme</th>
<th>donner</th>
<th>téléphone</th>
<th>octobre</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nohtr</td>
<td>pohm</td>
<td>doh-nay</td>
<td>tay-lay-fohn</td>
<td>ohk-tohbr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### French Letter Symbol Pronunciation Guide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Letter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>ou, où, oû</em></td>
<td>oo</td>
<td><em>Say oo as in tooth</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Round your lips to say *oo*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>toujours</th>
<th>écouter</th>
<th>douze</th>
<th>doux</th>
<th>beaucoup</th>
<th>où</th>
<th>goût</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>too-zhoor</em></td>
<td><em>ay-koo-tay</em></td>
<td><em>dooz</em></td>
<td><em>doo</em></td>
<td><em>bo-koo</em></td>
<td>oo</td>
<td>goo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Letter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>oy, oi</em></td>
<td>wah</td>
<td><em>Say w as in watch</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>moi</th>
<th>trois</th>
<th>soir</th>
<th>froid</th>
<th>voiture</th>
<th>pourquoi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>mwah</em></td>
<td><em>trwah</em></td>
<td><em>swahr</em></td>
<td><em>frwah</em></td>
<td><em>vwah-tewr</em></td>
<td><em>poor-kwah</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voyage</td>
<td>voyez</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>vwah-yahzh</em></td>
<td><em>vwah-yay</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Letter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>u, ú</em></td>
<td>ew</td>
<td><em>No equivalent</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pitfall**: You may be tempted to pronounce *oi* like *oy*, as the sound heard at the beginning of the word *oyster*. Avoid the pitfall. Practice the correct *wa* sound until you get it down pat.

There really is no English sound that is equivalent to the French *u* sound. Try the following for best results: Say the sound *oo* as in *Sue* while trying to say *ee* as in *see*. As you try to make the sound, concentrate on puckering your lips as if you just ate a very sour pickle. That's about as close as you can get. If you say *oo*, don't worry, you'll be understood. This is a foreign sound that requires concentration and practice.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>super</th>
<th>sur</th>
<th>tu</th>
<th>du</th>
<th>une</th>
<th>salut</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>sew-pehr</em></td>
<td><em>sewr</em></td>
<td><em>tew</em></td>
<td><em>dew</em></td>
<td><em>ewn</em></td>
<td><em>sah-lew</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
So That's Why I Have a Nose

You must use your nose and your mouth to produce a French nasal sound. Here's how it's done. Hold your nose, then use your mouth to say the vowel sound. It's that simple. Of
course you're not going to walk around with your hand on your nose. That's just a technique to get you started and to make you aware of what a nasal sound should sound like. We are so accustomed to taking English pronunciation for granted that we never stop to consider how we produce certain sounds. When learning a foreign language, it's sometimes necessary to pause and think about the sounds we want to make.

Nasal sounds will occur when a vowel is followed by a single *N* or *M* in the same syllable. In the pronunciation guide, you will see a vowel sound followed by *N*. This indicates that you must make a nasal sound.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Nasal</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>an (am), en (em)</em></td>
<td>ahN</td>
<td>Similar to <em>on</em> with little emphasis on <em>n</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now hold your nose, say *on*, and you'll quickly get the hang of it. Watch for the *N* indicating the vowel sound.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>français</th>
<th>dans</th>
<th>anglais</th>
<th>grand</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>frahN-seh</em></td>
<td><em>dahN</em></td>
<td><em>ahN-gleh</em></td>
<td><em>grahN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lampe</td>
<td>maman</td>
<td>ambiance</td>
<td>ambition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>lahNp</em></td>
<td><em>mah-mahN</em></td>
<td><em>ahN-byahNs</em></td>
<td><em>ahN-bee-syohN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en</td>
<td>encore</td>
<td>souvent</td>
<td>attendre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ahN</em></td>
<td><em>ahN-kohr</em></td>
<td><em>soo-vahN</em></td>
<td><em>ah-tahNdr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>décembre</td>
<td>temps</td>
<td>sembler</td>
<td>employé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>day-sahNbr</em></td>
<td><em>tahN</em></td>
<td><em>sahN-blay</em></td>
<td><em>ahN-plwah-yay</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Nasal</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>in (im), ain (aim)</em></td>
<td>aN</td>
<td>Similar to <em>an</em> with little emphasis on <em>n</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hold your nose again and practice the sounds:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cinq</th>
<th>Martin</th>
<th>cousin</th>
<th>demain</th>
<th>américain</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>saNk</strong></td>
<td>mahr-taN</td>
<td>koo-zaN</td>
<td>duh-maN</td>
<td>ah-may-ree-kaN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple</td>
<td>important</td>
<td>impossible</td>
<td>impatient</td>
<td>faim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>saNpl</strong></td>
<td>aN-pohr-tahN</td>
<td>aN-poh-seebl</td>
<td>aN-pah-syahN</td>
<td>faN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You should be getting the hang of nasals by now. Try these:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Nasal</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oin</td>
<td>waN</td>
<td>Similar to wa of wag</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Nasal</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ien</td>
<td>yaN</td>
<td>Similar to yan of Yankee</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Try these sounds:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Nasal</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>on (om)</td>
<td>ohN</td>
<td>Similar to on as in long</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Be patient for the last of the nasal sounds:
Continuing with Consonants

Most final consonants are not pronounced except for final c, r, f, and l (think of the word careful). Final s is not pronounced in French, so avoid the temptation. Doing so will quickly unveil your amateur status.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Eric</th>
<th>Luc</th>
<th>avec</th>
<th>parc</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ay-rek</td>
<td>lewk</td>
<td>ah-vehk</td>
<td>pahrk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amour</td>
<td>bonjour</td>
<td>tour</td>
<td>cour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ah-moor</td>
<td>bohN-zhoor</td>
<td>toor</td>
<td>koor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neuf</td>
<td>sauf</td>
<td>chef</td>
<td>actif</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nuhf</td>
<td>sof</td>
<td>shehf</td>
<td>ahk-teef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il</td>
<td>Michel</td>
<td>journal</td>
<td>cheval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eel</td>
<td>mee-shehl</td>
<td>zhoor-nahl</td>
<td>shuh-vaHl</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BUT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>salut</th>
<th>dessert</th>
<th>beaucoup</th>
<th>minutes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sah-lew</td>
<td>duh-sehr</td>
<td>bo-koo</td>
<td>mee-newt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### French Letter Symbol Pronunciation Guide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Letter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>b, d, f, k, l, m, n, p, s, t, v, z</td>
<td>The same</td>
<td>Same as English</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These letters are all so easy because they are pronounced exactly the same in French and in English. You will, however, have to follow the rules for the pronunciation of other consonants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Letter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>c (hard sound before a, o, u, or consonant) qu, final q</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>Say c as in card</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>carte</th>
<th>court</th>
<th>document</th>
<th>classe</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kahrt</td>
<td>koor</td>
<td>doh-kew-mahN</td>
<td>klahs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qui</td>
<td>quoi</td>
<td>quatre</td>
<td>pourquoi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kee</td>
<td>kwah</td>
<td>kahtr</td>
<td>poor-kwah</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**French Letter** | **Symbol** | **Pronunciation Guide**
--- | --- | ---
c (soft sound before e, i, y), ç, s at beginning of word, s next to a consonant, tion (t), x (only in the words given) | s | cent

As you can see, there are lots of ways to get the s sound. Practice them all:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ce</th>
<th>cinéma</th>
<th>Nancy</th>
<th>ça</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>suh</td>
<td>see-nay-mah</td>
<td>nahN-see</td>
<td>sah</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>nation</th>
<th>attention</th>
<th>invitation</th>
<th>action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nah-syohN</td>
<td>ah-tahN-syohN</td>
<td>aN-vee-tah-syohNn</td>
<td>ahk-syohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>six</td>
<td>dix</td>
<td>soixante</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sees</td>
<td>dees</td>
<td>swah-sahNt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**French Letter** | **Symbol** | **Pronunciation Guide**
--- | --- | ---
ch | sh | Say the ch in machine

We've all had practice with this sound—especially those of us with children. Shhh.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>chanter</th>
<th>chocolat</th>
<th>sandwich</th>
<th>toucher</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shahN-tay</td>
<td>shoh-koh-lah</td>
<td>sahNd-weesh</td>
<td>too-shay</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**French Letter** | **Symbol** | **Pronunciation Guide**
--- | --- | ---
g (hard sound before a, o, u, or consonant), gu (before i, e, y) | g | Say the g in good |

These words should present no problem:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>garçon</th>
<th>goûter</th>
<th>glace</th>
<th>légume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gahr-sohN</td>
<td>goo-tay</td>
<td>glahs</td>
<td>lay-gewm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guy</td>
<td>bague</td>
<td>fatigué</td>
<td>guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gee</td>
<td>bahg</td>
<td>fah-tee-gay</td>
<td>geed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### French Letter Symbol Pronunciation Guide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Letter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>g (soft sound before e, i, y), ge (soft before a, o, j)</td>
<td>zh</td>
<td>Say the s as in <em>pleasure</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This might take a little practice before you get used to it:

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>garage</td>
<td>girafe</td>
<td>Gisèle</td>
<td>Égypte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gah-razh</td>
<td>zhee-rahf</td>
<td>zhee-zehl</td>
<td>ay-zheep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>âge</td>
<td>orange</td>
<td>manger</td>
<td>voyageons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ahzh</td>
<td>oh-rahNzh</td>
<td>mahN-zhay</td>
<td>vwah-yah-zohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>je</td>
<td>jour</td>
<td>jaune</td>
<td>jupe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhuh</td>
<td>zhoor</td>
<td>zhon</td>
<td>zhewp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### French Letter Symbol Pronunciation Guide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Letter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gn</td>
<td>ny</td>
<td>Say the n as in <em>union</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This sound will take some practice, too. Be careful not to overemphasize it:

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>montagne</td>
<td>Espagne</td>
<td>gagner</td>
<td>accompagner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mohN-tah-nyuh</td>
<td>ehs-pah-nyuh</td>
<td>gah-nyay</td>
<td>ah-kohN-pah-nyay</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### French Letter Symbol Pronunciation Guide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Letter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td></td>
<td>Always silent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We've come to the easiest letter of all. H is always silent. Most of the time, it is used as a vowel and, therefore, requires elision with a vowel that might precede it: *l'homme (the man)*. In other instances, h is used as a consonant and does not require elision with the preceding vowel: *le héroïs*. To tell how h is being used, you must look in a dictionary, where the consonant h is usually indicated with an *.

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>huit</td>
<td>hôtel</td>
<td>heure</td>
<td>homme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weet</td>
<td>o-tehl</td>
<td>uhr</td>
<td>ohm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### French Letter Symbol Pronunciation Guide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Letter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>No equivalent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The French \( r \) requires the participation of your throat. First, drop your tongue to the bottom of your mouth and rest it against your teeth. Keep it out pressed there, out of your way. Now clear your throat or gargle and say “r” at the back of your throat at the same time. That’s it—you’ve got the French \( r \). A few words of advice: Do not roll your \( r \); that’s what they do in Spanish. Do not roll your tongue; that’s what we do in English. This will require a fair amount of practice on your part until you get it down pat.

**French Letter** | **Symbol** | **Pronunciation Guide**
--- | --- | ---
\( s \) (between vowels), \( sion \) | \( z \) | Say \( z \) as in \( zero \)

This sound is easy:

- \( musée \)
  - musique
  - cousin
  - télévision

**French Letter** | **Symbol** | **Pronunciation Guide**
--- | --- | ---
\( th \) | \( t \) | Say \( t \) as in \( to \)

There is no \( th \) sound in French. Native French speakers have a tremendous amount of difficulty with our words \( the \), \( this \), and \( there \) because they pronounce \( th \) as \( t \). You, of course, will want to say \( th \). Don’t. Your nationality will be showing again.

- \( Catherine \)
  - thé
  - théâtre
  - sympathique

**French Letter** | **Symbol** | **Pronunciation Guide**
--- | --- | ---
\( x \) | \( ks \) | Say \( xe \) as in \( excel \)

This last sound (that’s right, we've finally reached the end) is a little tricky. Practice it well:

- \( extra \)
  - mixte
  - excellent
  - exprimer

- \( ehks-trah \)
  - meekst
  - \( ehk-seh-lahN \)
  - \( ehks-pree-may \)
**Practice Makes Perfect**

Now that you are an expert, put on your best accent and practice pronouncing these names that were taken from a Parisian phone book:

You will notice that many French family names begin with *Le* and *La* and are taken from elements in nature. It really does lend an extra beauty to the language when the people are named for beautiful things. In number 14, however, I am sure that Jean Lavache (*John the Cow*) would probably have been happier had his ancestors been associated with something different.

1. Éric Le Parc  
2. Colette Lapiere  
3. Michel Lechien  
4. Alain Lechat  
5. Agnès Leloup  
6. Roland Lamouche  
7. Patrick Leboeuf  
8. Solange Laforêt  
9. Philippe Lebec  
10. Florence Lavigne  
11. Monique Le Pont  
12. Dominique Lafontaine  
13. Daniel La Tour  
14. Jean Levache  
15. Jeanne Larivière  
16. Hubert La Fleur

**The Least You Need to Know**

- Perfect your pronunciation by losing your inhibitions and by reading aloud French newspapers, magazines, and literature.
- It's best to allow yourself to slip and slide the sounds together while speaking the language.
- If your accent is poor, you'll still be understood.
- Practice and devotion will help improve your accent.
- Remember that some French accents change the sound of the letter on which they appear.
- Use your nose wisely for the correct pronunciation of French nasal sounds.
Chapter 3
You Know More Than You Think

**In This Chapter**

- Cognates help you understand French
- Tricks to help you understand even more
- French words in the English language
- Pitfalls and traps to avoid

*Café, restaurant, amateur, boutique, bureau*—the list of French words that you already know is surprisingly extensive. You see, you really do know a lot of French. You don't realize it yet, but your vocabulary is filled with French words and phrases. And there are plenty of French words and expressions that you will find very easy to use and understand with a minimal amount of effort. By the end of this chapter, you will be well on your way to producing intelligent but simple sentences that will allow you to express feelings, thoughts, and opinions.

**What You Already Know**

There is absolutely nothing on television. After watching the news in French on a local cable station, my husband (who has no French blood coursing through his veins) takes
off for the local video rental store to choose some entertainment for the evening. An hour later he returns with a wide grin on his face and cheerfully exclaims: “Oiseau ([wah-zo] that's French for bird, his term of endearment for me), I've got a surprise for you.” I wait in eager anticipation to hear that he rented a hot, new release fresh from the theater. Instead, he informs me that he picked out the latest French film.

As a francophile, I should be jumping for joy, but he can read the disappointment on my face. Truth be told, I find French movies lacking in adventure, and I don't love character studies. The subtitles are extremely distracting. He, on the other hand, can't wait to get the film into the VCR, and I can't understand why. It's true that he had two years of college French, but that was over 30 years ago, and I did all his homework. The Cs he passed with were certainly not an indication of a love affair with the language. So why French films? He likes exotic movies, he loves to hear the language, and, believe it or not, he can understand what the actors and actresses are saying. How can that be? He never listened as a student. How does the man do it?

The simple answer is cognates. What are they? Quite simply, a cognate is a word that is spelled exactly the same, or almost the same, as a word in English and that has the same meaning. Sometimes we've actually borrowed the word from the French, letter for letter, and have incorporated it into our own vocabulary. Sure, the cognates are pronounced differently in each language, but the meaning of the French word is quite obvious to anyone who speaks English.

Perfect Cognates

Table 3.1 is a list of some cognates that are exactly the same in both French and English. Take your time pronouncing the French words and compare them to their English equivalents. Your goal is to sound French.
Table 3.1 Perfect Cognates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>Le</th>
<th>La</th>
<th>L'</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blond</td>
<td>ballet</td>
<td>blous</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blohN</td>
<td></td>
<td>bloohN</td>
<td></td>
<td>ahk-see-dahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capable</td>
<td>bureau</td>
<td>boutique</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kah-pahbl</td>
<td>bew-ro</td>
<td>boo-teek</td>
<td></td>
<td>ah-kohr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certain</td>
<td>chef</td>
<td>date</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sehr-taN</td>
<td>shehf</td>
<td>daht</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>content</td>
<td>client</td>
<td>dispute</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kohN-tahN</td>
<td>klee-yahN</td>
<td>dees-pewt</td>
<td></td>
<td>ah-nee-mahl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grave</td>
<td>guide</td>
<td>note</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grahV</td>
<td>geed</td>
<td>noht</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horrible</td>
<td>hamburger</td>
<td>permission</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oh-reebl</td>
<td>ahm-bewr-gehr</td>
<td>pehr-mee-syoHn</td>
<td></td>
<td>omelette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>immense</td>
<td>journal</td>
<td>photo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ee-mahNs</td>
<td>zhoor-nahl</td>
<td>foh-to</td>
<td></td>
<td>orange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orange</td>
<td>sandwich</td>
<td>route</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oh-rahnzH</td>
<td>sahNd-weesh</td>
<td>root</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permanent</td>
<td>service</td>
<td>signification</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pehr-mah-nahN</td>
<td>sehr-vees</td>
<td>see-nyee-fee-kah-syoHn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possible</td>
<td>soda</td>
<td>table</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poh-seebl</td>
<td>soh-dah</td>
<td>tahlbl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The rules governing the agreement of adjectives with the nouns they modify will be discussed in detail in Chapter 9.

**How Much Do You Understand Already?**

I'd venture to guess that, by now, you're in the same league as my husband. The sentences below should be a snap to understand, and the pronunciation should present no problem if you patiently follow the key. Don't be shy! Give it your best effort.

Read the following sentences in French. What are you saying? (*Est* expresses *is* in French.)

1. La blouse est orange. 
   lah blooz eh toh-rahNzh

2. Le service est horrible. 
   luh sehr-vees eh toh-reebl
3. L'excursion est impossible.
lehk-skewr-zyoN eh taN-poh-seebN

4. Le guide est capable.
luh geed eh kah-pahbl

5. Le client est certain.
luh klee-yahN eh sehr-taN

Near Cognates
Table 3.2 lists the cognates that are nearly the same in both French and English. Take your time pronouncing the French words and compare them to their English equivalents. Remember: Your goal is to sound French.

Table 3.2 Near Cognates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>Le</th>
<th>La</th>
<th>L'</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>actif</td>
<td>balcon</td>
<td>banane</td>
<td>acteur</td>
<td>ahk-tuhr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ahh-teef</td>
<td>bahl-kohN</td>
<td>bahn-hnm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aimable</td>
<td>bébé</td>
<td>banque</td>
<td>adresse</td>
<td>ahN-drhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ehh-mahbl</td>
<td>bay-bay</td>
<td>bahNk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ambitieux</td>
<td>café</td>
<td>bicyclette</td>
<td>affaire</td>
<td>ah-fehr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ahhN-bee-syuh</td>
<td>kah-fay</td>
<td>bee-see-kleht</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>américain</td>
<td>cinéma</td>
<td>carotte</td>
<td>âge</td>
<td>ahzh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ahh-may-ree-kaN</td>
<td>see-nay-mah</td>
<td>kah-roht</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amusant</td>
<td>coton</td>
<td>cathédrale</td>
<td>agence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ahh-mew-zahN</td>
<td>koh-tohN</td>
<td>kah-tay-drahl</td>
<td>ah-zahNs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ancien</td>
<td>dictionnaire</td>
<td>chambre</td>
<td>anniversaire</td>
<td>ah-neev-vehr-sehr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ahhN-syaN</td>
<td>deek-syoh-nehr</td>
<td>shahNbr</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bleu</td>
<td>dîner</td>
<td>couleur</td>
<td>appartement</td>
<td>ahN-pahr-tuh-mahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bluh</td>
<td>dee-nay</td>
<td>koo-ruhr</td>
<td></td>
<td>ahr-teest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confortable</td>
<td>directeur</td>
<td>enveloppe</td>
<td>artiste</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kohN-fohr-tahbl</td>
<td>dee-rehk-tuhr</td>
<td>ahhN-vlohp</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curieux</td>
<td>docteur</td>
<td>famille</td>
<td>éléphant</td>
<td>ay-lay-fahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kew-ryuh</td>
<td>dohk-tuhr</td>
<td>fah-mee-y</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>délicieux</td>
<td>jardin</td>
<td>fontaine</td>
<td>employé</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day-lee-syuh</td>
<td>zhahr-daN</td>
<td>fohN-tehn</td>
<td>ahN-plwah-yay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>différent</td>
<td>juge</td>
<td>guitare</td>
<td>enfant</td>
<td>ahhN-fahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dee-fay-rahN</td>
<td>zhewzh</td>
<td>gee-tahr</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(table continued on next page)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>Le</th>
<th>La</th>
<th>L'</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>difficile</td>
<td>légume</td>
<td>lampe</td>
<td>exemple</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dee-fee-seel</td>
<td>lay-gewm</td>
<td>lahNp</td>
<td>ehks-zahNpl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>élégant</td>
<td>mécanicien</td>
<td>lettre</td>
<td>hôtel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ay-lay-gahN</td>
<td>may-kah-nee-syaN</td>
<td>lehtr</td>
<td>o-tehl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enchanté</td>
<td>moteur</td>
<td>liste</td>
<td>océan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aN-shahN-tay</td>
<td>moh-tuhr</td>
<td>leest</td>
<td>oh-say-yahN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fatigué</td>
<td>papier</td>
<td>maladie</td>
<td>oncle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fah-tee-gay</td>
<td>pah-pyay</td>
<td>mah-lah-dee</td>
<td>ohNkl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grillé</td>
<td>parc</td>
<td>marchandise</td>
<td>opéra</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gree-yay</td>
<td>pahrk</td>
<td>mahr-shahN-deez</td>
<td>oh-pay-rah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intéressant</td>
<td>parfum</td>
<td>musique</td>
<td>opticien</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aN-tay-reh-sahN</td>
<td>pahr-fuhrN</td>
<td>mew-zeek</td>
<td>ohp-tee-syaN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnifique</td>
<td>porc</td>
<td>nationalité</td>
<td>orchestre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mah-nyee-feek</td>
<td>pohr</td>
<td>nah-syoh-nah-lee-tay</td>
<td>ohr-kestr</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nécessaire</td>
<td>président</td>
<td>paire</td>
<td>université</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nay-seh-sehr</td>
<td>pray-zee-dahN</td>
<td>pehr</td>
<td>ew-nee-vehr-see-tay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occupé</td>
<td>professeur</td>
<td>personne</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oh-kew-pay</td>
<td>proh-feh-suhr</td>
<td>pehr-sohn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>populaire</td>
<td>programme</td>
<td>pharmacie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poh-pew-lehr</td>
<td>proh-grahm</td>
<td>fahr-mah-see</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rapide</td>
<td>serveur</td>
<td>région</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rah-peed</td>
<td>seh-r-vuhr</td>
<td>ray-zhohN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>riche</td>
<td>supermarché</td>
<td>salade</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reesh</td>
<td>sew-pehr-mahr-shay</td>
<td>sah-lahd</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sérieux</td>
<td>téléphone</td>
<td>soupe</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say-ryuh</td>
<td>tay-lay-fohn</td>
<td>soop</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sincère</td>
<td>théâtre</td>
<td>télévision</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saN-sehr</td>
<td>tay-ahtr</td>
<td>tay-lay-vee-zyohN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>splendide</td>
<td>touriste</td>
<td>tente</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>splahN-deed</td>
<td>too-reest</td>
<td>tahNt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superbe</td>
<td>vendeur</td>
<td>tomate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sew-pehrb</td>
<td>vahN-duhr</td>
<td>toh-maht</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Verb Cognates

There are many French verbs (words that show action or a state of being) that are so similar to their English counterparts that you will recognize their meaning almost immediately. The majority of French verbs fall into one of three families: the *er* family, the *ir* family, and the *re* family. This concept is foreign to us, since English has borrowed so much from so many different languages that no "verb families" exist. For now, you will see that the largest French family, by far, is the *er* family. Any verbs belonging to a family are considered regular, while those that do not belong to a family are designated as irregular. Each family has its own set of rules, which will be explained in Chapter 7. All irregular verbs must be memorized. Look at the three major families and see if you can determine the meanings of the verbs presented in Table 3.3:

Table 3.3 Verb Families

The ER Family

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accompagner</td>
<td>ah-kohN-pah-nyay</td>
<td>inviter</td>
<td>aN-vee-tay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adorer</td>
<td>ah-doh-ray</td>
<td>marcher</td>
<td>mahr-shay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aider</td>
<td>eh-day</td>
<td>modifier</td>
<td>moh-dee-fyay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blâmer</td>
<td>blah-may</td>
<td>observer</td>
<td>ohb-sehr-vay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>changer</td>
<td>shahN-zhay</td>
<td>pardonner</td>
<td>pahr-doh-nay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chanter</td>
<td>shahN-tay</td>
<td>passer</td>
<td>pah-say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commander</td>
<td>koh-mahN-day</td>
<td>payer</td>
<td>peh-yay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commencer</td>
<td>koh-mahN-say</td>
<td>persuader</td>
<td>pehr-swah-day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>danser</td>
<td>dahN-say</td>
<td>porter</td>
<td>pohr-tay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>décider</td>
<td>day-see-day</td>
<td>préférer</td>
<td>pray-fay-ray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>déclarer</td>
<td>day-klah-ray</td>
<td>préparer</td>
<td>pray-pah-ray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demander</td>
<td>duh-mahN-day</td>
<td>présenter</td>
<td>pray-zahN-tay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>désirer</td>
<td>day-zee-ray</td>
<td>prouver</td>
<td>proo-vay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diner</td>
<td>dee-nay</td>
<td>recommander</td>
<td>ruh-koh-mahN-day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>échanger</td>
<td>ay-shahN-zhay</td>
<td>refuser</td>
<td>ruh-few-zay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>embrasser</td>
<td>ahN-brah-say</td>
<td>regarder</td>
<td>ruh-gahr-day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entrer</td>
<td>ahN-tray</td>
<td>regretter</td>
<td>ruh-greh-tay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>envelopper</td>
<td>ahN-vloh-pay</td>
<td>remarquer</td>
<td>ruh-mahr-kay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hésiter</td>
<td>ay-zee-tay</td>
<td>réparer</td>
<td>ray-pah-ray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ignorer</td>
<td>ee-nyoh-ray</td>
<td>réserver</td>
<td>ray-zehr-vay</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(table continued on next page)
(table continued from previous page)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>signer</th>
<th>see-nyay</th>
<th>vérifier</th>
<th>vay-ree-fyay</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tourner</td>
<td>toor-nay</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The IR Family**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>accomplir</th>
<th>ah-kohn-pleer</th>
<th>défendre</th>
<th>day-fah-Ndr</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>applaudir</td>
<td>ah-plo-deer</td>
<td>répondre</td>
<td>ray-pohNdr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finir</td>
<td>fee-neer</td>
<td>vendre</td>
<td>vahNdr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**This Is Easy**

As a matter of fact, this is so easy that you can easily read and understand these sentences without any problem at all:

1. Le serveur aide le touriste.  
   *luh sehr-vuhr ehd luh too-reest*

2. Maman prépare de la soupe et de la salade.  
   *mah-mahN pray-pahr duh lah soop ay duh lah sah-lahd*

3. Le mécanicien répare le moteur.  
   *luh may-kah-nee-syAaN ray-pahr luh moh-tuhr*

4. Le bébé regarde la télévision.  
   *luh bay-bay ruh-gahrd lah tay-lay-vee-zyohN*

5. Le touriste réserve la chambre.  
   *luh too-reest ray-sehrv lah shahNbr*

   *luh geeN ruh-koh-mahNd luh kah-fay*

7. L'employé vend la marchandise.  
   *l'ahN-plwah-yay vahN lah mahr-shahN-deez*

8. L'enfant adore la musique moderne.  
   *lahN-fahN ah-dohr lah mew-zeek moh-dehrN*

9. L'acteur préfère l'opéra italien.  
   *lahk-tuhr pray-fehr l'oh-pay-rah ee-tah-lyaN*

10. La famille désire l'hôtel confortable.  
    *lah fah-mee-y day-zeer lo-tehl kohN-foh-tahbl*
**Give Your Opinions**

Imagine that you are a tourist in a French-speaking country. Use what you've learned to express these opinions to a fellow tourist:

1. The garden is splendid.
2. The fountain is superb.
3. The artist is popular.
4. The music is splendid.
5. The restaurant is elegant.
6. The theater is old.
7. The cathedral is magnificent.
8. The actor is tired.
9. The hotel is elegant.
10. The opera is amusing.

Some special tricks on pronunciation have already been mentioned in chapter 2. When you look at Table 3.4, you will see how adding an *s* after an accent circonflexe (^) and how substituting an *s* for an *é* or adding one after it will help you figure out the meanings of many words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>accent (^)</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>é</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arrêter (ah-ruh-tay)</td>
<td>to arrest</td>
<td>écarlate (ay-kahr-laht)</td>
<td>scarlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bête (beht)</td>
<td>beast</td>
<td>échapper (ay-shah-pay)</td>
<td>to escape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conquête (kohN-keht)</td>
<td>conquest</td>
<td>école (ay-kohl)</td>
<td>school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coûter (koo-tay)</td>
<td>to cost</td>
<td>épars (ay-pahr)</td>
<td>sparse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>croûte (kroot)</td>
<td>crust</td>
<td>épellation (ay-puh-lah-syoN)</td>
<td>spelling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fête (feht)</td>
<td>feast</td>
<td>épice (ay-pees)</td>
<td>spice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forêt (foh-reh)</td>
<td>forest</td>
<td>épier (ay-pyay)</td>
<td>to spy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hôpital (o-pee-tahl)</td>
<td>hospital</td>
<td>épponge (ay-pohNzh)</td>
<td>sponge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hôte (ot)</td>
<td>host</td>
<td>épousier (ay-poo-zay)</td>
<td>to espouse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
False Friends

Just when you think you know it all, exceptions pop up to prevent you from becoming overly confident. *Faux amis or false friends* are words spelled exactly the same or almost the same in both French and English, but which have very different meanings in each language and might even be different parts of speech. Don't fall into the trap of thinking that every French word that looks like an English one is automatically a cognate. It's not quite that simple. Beware of the *faux amis* listed in Table 3.5.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3.5 False Friends</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>English</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>figure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prune</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raisin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sensible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>store</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>travel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Are You Well Read?*

The famous French literary titles listed here all contain cognates. Give their English equivalents:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anouilh</td>
<td>Le Sauvage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balzac</td>
<td>La Comédie humaine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baudelaire</td>
<td>Les Paradis artificiels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camus</td>
<td>L'Étranger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cocteau</td>
<td>La Machine Infernale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cocteau</td>
<td>Les Enfants terribles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colette</td>
<td>La Vagabonde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flaubert</td>
<td>L'Éducation sentimentale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gide</td>
<td>La Symphonic pastorale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hugo</td>
<td>Les Misérables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laclos</td>
<td>Les Liaisons dangereuses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malraux</td>
<td>La Condition humaine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molière</td>
<td>Le Malade imaginaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prévert</td>
<td>Spectacle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rousseau</td>
<td>Confessions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sartre</td>
<td>La Nausée</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltaire</td>
<td>Lettres Philosophiques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zola</td>
<td>La Joie de Vivre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The Least You Need to Know**

- By using cognates you can express yourself in French with a minimal amount of effort.
- Many French words and expressions are in use every day in English.
- Beware of false friends. Don't let them trap you into mistakes.
Chapter 4
Are Idioms for Idiots?

Idioms are very important to a complete and correct understanding of the language. Imagine a beautiful young woman walking along the Champs-Élysées, an elegant, tree-lined avenue in Paris. Two men approach from the opposite direction and look her up and down. She hears one man casually say to the other "Oh là là. Elle a du chien." The young lady, having taken a year or two of French in school hears elle (she) and chien (dog). She immediately puts two and two together and thinks these men have called her a “dog.” If she is extraordinarily brazen, perhaps she even smacks one across the face. She has just made a terrible mistake. What she doesn't understand is the idiomatic expression avoir du chien, which in English means to be alluring, sexy. The English equivalent of what the men said was really: “Boy, is she attractive.”
What's an Idiom?

So what exactly is an idiom? In any language, an idiom is a particular word or expression whose meaning cannot be readily understood by either its grammar or the words used. Examples of some common English idioms are:

- To look on the bright side.
- On the other hand.
- To fall head over heels.
- To be down and out.

Slinging Slang

What's the difference between an idiom and slang? Slang refers to colorful, popular words or phrases that are not part of the standard vocabulary of a language. Slang is considered unconventional. Many of these words evolved as needed to describe particular things or situations. Here are some examples of English slang:

- Give me a break!
- Get real!
- Tough luck!
- Get a life!

What's the Difference Anyway?

Idioms are acceptable in oral and written phrases, whereas slang, although freely used in informal conversations, is generally considered substandard in formal writing or speaking. Much slang is, at best, x-rated.

What Is It?

Take a look at some of these popular expressions used in sentences. I'm sure that you will immediately realize that it would be impossible to translate them into French. Certainly they couldn't be translated word for word. Which are they, idioms or slang?

- You drive me crazy!
- Keep your shirt on!
- Don't jump the gun!
- I'm always on the go.
- You'll have to pay through the nose.
- He likes to play the field.
- It's raining cats and dogs!
- We'll just have to kill some time.
- I'm going to call your bluff.
- Can you buy some time?
- She got angry and she lost it.
- He's on his way up.
- Get a head start on the project.
- Did you fall for it?
Did you recognize that these are idiomatic expressions that we use in English all the time? Good for you. Now compare those sentences with the ones below:

Shucks!  What a cop out!
She just flipped out!  Don't dis my friend.
My son is a computer geek.  That's tacky!

Did you notice how these slang sentences differed from the idiomatic ones? Excellent! You probably won't be using much French slang, but the idioms sure will come in handy.

There are a great many idioms in French. In this chapter we will look at six categories of idioms that you might find helpful: travel and transportation, time, location and direction, expressing opinions, physical conditions, and weather conditions. Other idiomatic expressions will appear in their appropriate chapters.

And You're Off

Let's say you are taking a trip. We might ask: “Are you going on a plane or on a boat?” In French the word for on is sur (sewr). If you said: “Je vais sur l'avion” that would imply that you were flying on the exterior of the plane. And, as we all know, that is truly impossible. It pays to know the French idioms to avoid this type of confusion. It is well worth your time to learn the idiomatic expressions covered in Table 4.1.

### Table 4.1 Idioms for Travel and Transportation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Idiom</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>à bicyclette</td>
<td>ah bee-see-kleht</td>
<td>by bicycle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à cheval</td>
<td>ah shuh-vahl</td>
<td>on horseback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à moto</td>
<td>ah moh-to</td>
<td>by scooter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à pied</td>
<td>ah pyeh</td>
<td>on foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en automobile</td>
<td>ahN no-toh-moh-beel</td>
<td>by car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en avion</td>
<td>ahN nah-vyohN</td>
<td>by plane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en bateau</td>
<td>ahN bah-to</td>
<td>by boat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en bus</td>
<td>ahN bews</td>
<td>by bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en métro</td>
<td>ahN may-tro</td>
<td>by subway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en taxi</td>
<td>ahN tahk-see</td>
<td>by taxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en train</td>
<td>ahN traN</td>
<td>by train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en voiture</td>
<td>ahN vwah-tewr</td>
<td>by car</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Putting Your Idioms to Use I (or You're Off and Running)**

Tell how you would get to the following places:

Example: the drugstore 

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Your place of business or school</td>
<td>6. The park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. The movies</td>
<td>7. A tropical island</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Your doctor</td>
<td>8. A fishing trip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. The nearest hospital</td>
<td>9. A museum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Europe</td>
<td>10. The library</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**It's Time to…**

For some travelers time is of the essence and they make sure they get that wake-up call bright and early in the morning. They want to be on the go as soon as possible. For others, it's not important at all. They don't even wear a watch. They're on vacation and time is simply unimportant. Whether you're time-conscious or not, the idioms in Table 4.2 will serve you well.

**Table 4.2 Time Expressions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Idiom</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>à bientôt</td>
<td>ah byaN-to</td>
<td>see you soon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à ce soir</td>
<td>ah suh swahr</td>
<td>until this evening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à demain</td>
<td>ah duh-maN</td>
<td>until tomorrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à l'heure</td>
<td>ah luhr</td>
<td>on time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à la fois</td>
<td>ah lah fois</td>
<td>at the same time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à samedi</td>
<td>ah sahm-dee</td>
<td>until Saturday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à temps</td>
<td>ah tahN</td>
<td>on time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à tout à l'heure</td>
<td>ah too tah luhr</td>
<td>see you later</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>au bout de</td>
<td>o boo duh</td>
<td>at the end of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>au revoir</td>
<td>o ruh-vwahr</td>
<td>good-bye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de bonne heure</td>
<td>duh boh nuhr</td>
<td>early</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
de jour en jour   duh zhoor ahN zhoor   from day to day

(table continued on next page)
(table continued from previous page)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Idiom</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>de temps à autre</td>
<td>duh tahN zah o-truh</td>
<td>from time to time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de temps en temps</td>
<td>duh tahN zahN tahN</td>
<td>from time to time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du matin au soir</td>
<td>dew mah-taN o swahr</td>
<td>from morning until evening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en même temps</td>
<td>ahN mehm tahN</td>
<td>at the same time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en retard</td>
<td>ahN ruh-tahr</td>
<td>late</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il y a (+ time)</td>
<td>eel yah</td>
<td>ago (+ time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>par jour (semaine, mois)</td>
<td>pahr zhoor (suN-mehn, mwah)</td>
<td>by day, week, month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tout à l'heure</td>
<td>too tah luhr</td>
<td>in a while</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tout de suite</td>
<td>toot sweet</td>
<td>immediately</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Putting Your Idioms to Use II (or What Time Is It?)

What French idioms of time would you use in the following situations?

1. When you leave a friend for the day you would say:
2. If your boss wants something done right away, he wants it done:
3. If you have an interview at 9 a.m. and you arrive at 10 a.m. you arrive:
4. If you have an interview at 9 a.m. and you arrive at 8 a.m. you arrive:
5. If you are going to see a friend later today, you will see him/her:
6. If you go to the movies every once in a while, you go:
7. If you work all day long, you work:
8. If you are leaving a friend for today, but know that you will see him/her tomorrow, you would say:

Go to Your Left, Your Right, Your Left

Probably among the most useful idioms are those telling you how to get where you want to go. Most men, of course, would never dream of asking for directions. They have to prove that they can find it themselves. So when my husband and I find ourselves off the beaten path, I'm the one who goes into the nearest gas station. I like to know exactly where I'm going and, if I get lost, I want precise directions. The idioms of location and direction in Table 4.3 are quite important for any traveler, don't you think? (This list is for men, too.)
### Table 4.3 Idioms Showing Location and Direction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Idiom</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>à côté (de)</td>
<td><em>ah ko-tay (duh)</em></td>
<td>next to, beside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à droite (de)</td>
<td><em>ah drawht (duh)</em></td>
<td>to the right (of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à gauche (de)</td>
<td><em>ah gosh (duh)</em></td>
<td>to the left (of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à l'étranger</td>
<td><em>ah lay-trahN-zhay</em></td>
<td>abroad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à la campagne</td>
<td><em>ah lah kahN-pahN-nyuh</em></td>
<td>in the country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à la maison</td>
<td><em>ah lah meh-zohN</em></td>
<td>at home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à part</td>
<td><em>ah pahr</em></td>
<td>aside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à travers</td>
<td><em>ah trah-vehr</em></td>
<td>across, through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>au loin</td>
<td><em>o lwaN</em></td>
<td>in the distance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>au milieu (de)</td>
<td><em>o mee-lyuh (duh)</em></td>
<td>in the middle (of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>au-dessous de</td>
<td><em>o duh-soo duh</em></td>
<td>beneath, below</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>au-dessus de</td>
<td><em>o duh-sew duh</em></td>
<td>above, over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de l'autre côté (de)</td>
<td><em>duh lohtr ko-tay (duh)</em></td>
<td>on the other side (of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du côté de</td>
<td><em>dew ko-tay duh</em></td>
<td>in the direction of, toward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en bas (de)</td>
<td><em>ahN bah duh</em></td>
<td>at the bottom of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en face (de)</td>
<td><em>ahN fahs (duh)</em></td>
<td>opposite, facing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en haut (de)</td>
<td><em>ahN o (duh)</em></td>
<td>at the top of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en plein air</td>
<td><em>ahN pleh nehr</em></td>
<td>in the open air, outdoors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en ville</td>
<td><em>ahN veel</em></td>
<td>downtown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le long de</td>
<td><em>luh lohN duh</em></td>
<td>along</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>par ici (là)</td>
<td><em>pahr ee-see (lah)</em></td>
<td>this way (that way)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tout droit</td>
<td><em>too drwah</em></td>
<td>straight ahead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tout près</td>
<td><em>too preh</em></td>
<td>nearby</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Putting Your Idioms to Use III (or Getting There in One Piece)**

You can get there. Below is a small map of a city street. There are six buildings to identify:
la pharmacie Legrand
le cinéma Rex

le café Lebrun  le restaurant Bonaparte

le théâtre Odéon  le musée de l'art moderne

Read the directions and label the buildings on le boulevard Victor Hugo:
À gauche de la pâtisserie il y a le théâtre Odéon. Et à côté du théâtre il y a le café Lebrun. En face du café se trouve le restaurant Bonaparte. À droite de la pâtisserie, il y a la pharmacie Legrand. De l'autre côté du boulevard, en face, est le cinéma Rex. À gauche du cinéma et tout droit devant le théâtre se trouve le musée de l'art moderne.

**So, What Do You Think?**

Everyone, at one time or another, has an opinion about something. Some people are certainly more expressive than others. Whether you're talking about your flight, the food you ate, the movie you watched, the people you met, or life in general, you will need to know how to properly express your feelings. Table 4.4 below should help.

**Table 4.4 Expressing Your Opinions with Idioms**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Idiom</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>à mon avis</td>
<td><em>ah mohN nah-vee</em></td>
<td>in my opinion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à vrai dire</td>
<td><em>ah vreh deer</em></td>
<td>to tell the truth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>au contraire</td>
<td><em>o kohN-treh</em></td>
<td>on the contrary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bien entendu</td>
<td><em>byaN nahN-tahN-dew</em></td>
<td>of course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bien sûr</td>
<td><em>byaN sewr</em></td>
<td>of course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bon marché</td>
<td><em>bohN mahr-shay</em></td>
<td>cheap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c'est-à-dire</td>
<td><em>seh-tah-deer</em></td>
<td>that is to say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cela m'est égal</td>
<td><em>suh-lah meh tay-gahl</em></td>
<td>that's all the same to me (I don't care.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cela ne fait rien</td>
<td><em>suh-lah nuh feh ryaN</em></td>
<td>that doesn't matter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d'accord</td>
<td><em>dah-kohr</em></td>
<td>agreed, O.K.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(table continued on next page)*
Your friend has proposed some afternoon activities. Indicate a willingness to go along with his/her suggestions. Show that you are unwilling to go along with him/her.

How Do You Feel?

Let's say you are freezing cold. So you say to your French host: “Je suis froid,” and he cracks up laughing. Why? In English we use adjectives to describe how we are feeling, thus you've chosen (so you think): “I am cold.” The French say: “I have cold” (which doesn't mean that they are sick and have a cold). Your French host would literally interpret what you said as that you are cold to the touch of a hand. Of course this sounds very strange and silly to us. Just remember, our idioms sound very off-beat to others.

You will notice that all the idioms below begin with the verb avoir, which means to have. Of course, it will be necessary to conjugate avoir as the subject of the sentence changes, but that will be discussed further in Chapter 9. For now, concentrate on how you feel—J'ai (zhay, I have)—using the expressions for physical conditions in Table 4.5.

### Table 4.5 Idiomatic Physical Conditions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Idiom</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>avoir besoin (de)</td>
<td>ah-vwahr buh-zwaN duh</td>
<td>to need</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoir chaud</td>
<td>ah-vwahr sho</td>
<td>to be hot (person)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoir envie (de)</td>
<td>ah-vwahr ahN-vee (duh)</td>
<td>to need (intransitive)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(table continued from previous page)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Idiom</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>avoir faim</td>
<td>ah-vwahr faN</td>
<td>to be hungry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoir froid</td>
<td>ah-vwahr frwah</td>
<td>to be cold (person)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoir honte (de)</td>
<td>ah-vwahr ohNt (duh)</td>
<td>to be ashamed (of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoir l'air (+ adj.)</td>
<td>ah-vwahr lehr</td>
<td>to seem, look</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoir l'air de (+ inf.)</td>
<td>ah-vwahr lehr duh</td>
<td>to seem to, look as if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoir mal à</td>
<td>ah-vwahr mahl ah</td>
<td>to have an ache in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoir peur (de)</td>
<td>ah-vwahr puhr (duh)</td>
<td>to be afraid (of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoir quelque chose</td>
<td>ah-vwahr kehl-kuh shohz</td>
<td>to have something wrong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoir raison</td>
<td>ah-vwahr reh-sohN</td>
<td>to be right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoir soif</td>
<td>ah-vwahr swahf</td>
<td>to be thirsty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoir sommeil</td>
<td>ah-vwahr soh-mehy</td>
<td>to be sleepy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoir tort</td>
<td>ah-vwahr tohr</td>
<td>to be wrong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoir…ans</td>
<td>ah-vwahr…ahN</td>
<td>to be __ years old</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Putting Your Idioms to Use V (or What's Up?)

Express how you feel, using idioms.

1. sleepy
2. hot
3. hungry
4. thirsty
5. being wrong
6. on your 30th birthday
7. being correct
8. cold

Baby It's Cold Outside

As a Rule
Weather conditions are always expressed impersonally with the expression il fait... (it's...). Faire can be used with other subject nouns and pronouns, but not when discussing the weather.
Travelers tend to be obsessed with weather, which makes sense given that many plans are contingent on it. The French way of discussing weather differs from ours. If you said to your French host: “Il est chaud.” He or she would assume that you were speaking about something that was warm to the touch. The French use the verb faire (to make, to do) to describe most weather conditions. We wouldn't use the verbs make and do to express ourselves in English. We'd be laughed at. But in France, do as the French do as you study Table 4.6.
Table 4.6 Idiomatic Weather Expressions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Idiom</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>faire beau</td>
<td>fehr bo</td>
<td>to be nice weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire chaud</td>
<td>fehr cho</td>
<td>to be hot weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire des éclairs</td>
<td>fehr day zay-klehr</td>
<td>to be lightning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire doux</td>
<td>fehr doo</td>
<td>to be mild</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire du soleil</td>
<td>fehr dew soh-lehy</td>
<td>to be sunny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire du tonnerre</td>
<td>fehr dew toh-nehr</td>
<td>to be thuddering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire du vent</td>
<td>fehr dew vahN</td>
<td>to be windy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire frais</td>
<td>fehr freh</td>
<td>to be cool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire froid</td>
<td>fehr frwah</td>
<td>to be cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire jour</td>
<td>fehr zhoor</td>
<td>to be daytime, light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire mauvais</td>
<td>fehr mo-veh</td>
<td>to be bad weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire nuit</td>
<td>fehr nwee</td>
<td>to be night, dark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quel temps fait-il?</td>
<td>kehl tahN feh-teel</td>
<td>What is the weather?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Putting Your Idioms to Use VI (or How's the Weather?)**

Look at the weather map of France for the day. Tell what the weather will be in each of the cities listed below:

1. À Paris il fait ________
2. À Nice il fait ________
3. À Bordeaux il fait ________
4. À Strasbourg il fait ________
5. À Toulouse il fait ________
It's In Your Hands

The French are very expressive people and tend to speak a lot with their hands. Facial expressions and body language are also an important part of communicating feelings and emotions. Many gestures perfectly convey certain French slang expressions without the use of words. These gestures play an important role in the French language:

1. Mon œil. (mohN nuhy) My eye. You can't fool me.

2. J'en ai par-dessus la tête (zhahN nay pahr-duh-sew lah teht) I've had it up to here.
3. Au poil!
(o pwahl)
Perfect!

4. Extra!
(ehks-trah)
Super!

5. C'est la barbe!
(seh lah bahrb)
It's boring!

6. Qu'est-ce que tu veux que j'y fasse?
(Kehs-kuh tew vuh kuh zhee fahs) What do you want me to do about it?
The Least You Need to Know

• Every language has its own peculiar idioms that can't be translated word for word.

• Idioms, not slang, will help you speak the language the way it should be spoken.

• Proper gestures can help you convey your feelings.
Today's approach to learning a foreign language is certainly much different than it was in the past. There's been a de-emphasis on grammatical rules and an emphasis on communication. So if you really want to speak like a Frenchman/woman, you will be happy to know that speaking a foreign language doesn't mean you'll mentally have to translate word for word from one language to the other or concentrate on memorizing endless pages of rules. Sure, that's how they tried to teach you in school way back when (and it was pure drudgery). But the powers that be have finally come to realize that communicating doesn't mean walking around with a dictionary under your arm. On the contrary, it means learning to use the language and its patterns the way a native speaker does. To do this, you need to know basic grammar as well as the idioms and colloquialisms used by native speakers.
Groping at Grammar

When you hear the word *grammar*, do you get a sinking feeling in the pit of your stomach like when someone mentions *math*? Did you ever have the pleasure of diagramming a sentence? I still have very vivid memories of many seemingly useless grammatical terms. You don't have to be an expert grammarian to learn a foreign language. All you really need is a basic understanding of four simple parts of speech: nouns, verbs, adjectives, and adverbs. Now don't get all nervous. You'll see how simple it really is.

**Naming with Nouns**

*Nouns* refer to people, places, things, or ideas. Just like in English, nouns can be replaced by pronouns (he, she, it, they). Unlike English, however, all nouns in French have a gender. That means that all nouns have a *SEX*. That ought to grab your attention momentarily. Sorry to disappoint you, but in this case *SEX* refers to the masculine or feminine designation of the noun. In French, all nouns also have a number (singular or plural). Little articles (words that stand for “the” or “a”) serve as noun markers and usually help to indicate gender and number. But even if you can't figure out the gender of a noun, you will still be understood, as long as you use the correct word. You will learn more about gender in Chapter 6.

**Versatile Verbs**

*Verbs* are words that show action or a state of being. In both English and French, we conjugate verbs. That word “conjugate” sounds a lot scarier than it really is. In English, conjugating is so automatic (because we've been doing it practically since birth) that we don't even realize that we are doing it. I had a friend who took four years of high school French and never understood the concept of verb conjugation (she was absent that day). I explained it to her, and she realized that it's really quite simple. *Conjugating* means giving the correct form of the verb so that it agrees with the subject. For example: In English, we say *I am* but *you are, he is*, and so on; *I look* but *she looks*. It just doesn't work to mix and match the subjects and verb forms whether you are speaking English or French. Imagine how silly it would sound to you if a French person said, “I are.” You will have to strive to give the form of the verb that matches the subject. But don't despair. Even if you use the wrong verb form, you will be understood. Surely you would understand a foreigner who said, “You is very nice.”

That's enough for now. Verb conjugation will be explained in greater depth in Chapter 7.

**Appropriate Adjectives**

*Adjectives* help to describe nouns. Unlike English, in French all adjectives agree in number and gender (sex) with the nouns they modify. In other words, in a French sentence, all
the words have to match. If the noun is singular, then its adjective must also be singular. If the noun is feminine, then you must be sure to give the correct feminine form of the adjective you are using.

In English, adjectives are generally placed before the nouns they modify: for example, *the blue house*. In French, most adjectives come after the nouns they describe: for example, *la maison bleue*. Don't get nervous. If you make a mistake, you will still be understood. You will find out more about adjectives in Chapter 9.

**Active Adverbs**

*Adverbs* are words that describe verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs. In English, most adverbs end in *ly*: for example, *He dances slowly*. In French, they end in *ment*: *Il danse lentement*. Adverbs will probably pose few problems as you learn the language. Adverbs are discussed in greater detail in Chapter 18.

**I'm Not an Idiot—I Know How to Use a Dictionary**

Sure you know how to use an *English* dictionary. Even if you don't know how to spell the word you're looking up, you usually stumble across it eventually. But using a bilingual dictionary requires a certain, albeit minimal, amount of grammatical expertise. Believe it or not, an open-book dictionary test is probably harder than any test you would have to study for. To use a bilingual dictionary successfully, you must know and be aware of the differences between the various parts of speech.

**Putting Your Dictionary to Work**

The very first thing you should do is open to the front of your dictionary and find the list of abbreviations. Generally, there is a rather long, comprehensive list. There are only a few abbreviations that are truly essential and that need attention. They are:

* adj.—adjective.
* adv.—adverb.
* f.—indicates a *feminine* noun. The gender of nouns will be explained in Chapter 6.
* n.—noun (sometimes an *s* is used). The *n.* designation is generally used only if the noun can be either masculine or feminine.
* m.—indicates a *masculine* noun.
* pl.—indicates a *plural* noun. More on noun plurals in Chapter 6.
* p.p.—indicates the *past participle* of a verb. A past participle is necessary when a verb is used in the past tense. An explanation follows in Chapter 21.
• v.i.—indicates an intransitive verb, which can stand alone: I eat.

• v.t.—indicates a transitive verb that may be followed by a direct object: He removes his hat (removes may not stand alone) or may be used in the passive, where the subject is acted upon: I was seen.

• v.r.—indicates a reflexive verb, where the subject acts upon itself: I brush my teeth. Reflexive verbs will be treated in Chapter 20.

Now, let's see how well you can do with your bilingual French-English, English-French dictionary. We'll start with the English word mean. Consider the following sentences and how the meaning of the word mean changes:

That man is mean. (adjective)

What can that mean? (verb)

What is the mean (average)? (noun)

If you change mean to the plural, its meaning changes:

What is the means of transportation? (noun)

Look up the work mean, and you see:

mean [min] vt signifier; adj (miserly) radin, (nasty) méchant, (vicious) sauvage; n (math) moyenne f; (method) moyen; m means ressources fpl

Now try completing the following sentences with the correct form of the word mean:

1. That man is mean. Determine the part of speech. Did you choose an adjective? Good! Now complete the French sentence: Cet homme est _____. The correct choice is méchant.

2. What can that mean? In this sentence, did you select mean as a verb? You got it! The French sentence would read: Qu'est-ce que ça peut ____. I hope you chose signifier.

3. What is the mean? This term refers to the average of two numbers. Because the correct word is feminine, you will have to use the article la before the noun you choose. Articles will be discussed in Chapter 6. The French is: Quelle est la ____. The answer is moyenne.

4. What is the means of transportation? Means is plural in English but masculine, singular in French. Use le before the noun you choose. The French is: Quel est ____ de transport. The answer is le moyen.
As you can see, to successfully look up the meanings of the word you want to use, you must do three things:

1. Check to make sure that you are using the correct part of speech: noun, verb, adjective, or adverb.

2. Check your work by looking up the French word you have chosen and by verifying that the English meaning given is the one you want.

3. Check that you are using the correct form of the word: the right number (singular or plural) and the right gender (masculine or feminine).

**A Proper Workout with Your Dictionary**

Use a bilingual dictionary to see if you can find the correct word to complete each of the following French sentences. For now, I've supplied the proper articles. *Write all verbs in the infinitive form.* We'll move on to conjugation later, in Chapter 7.

1. Look at the fire!  
   Regard le __________.

2. The boss is going to fire the employee.  
   Le patron va __________ l'employé.

3. I see the light.  
   Je vois la __________.

4. I am going to light the barbecue.  
   Je vais __________ le barbecue.

5. There is water in the well.  
   Il y a de l'eau dans le __________.

6. He sings well.  
   Il chante __________.

**The Least You Need to Know**

- Nouns refer to people, places, things, and ideas.
- Verbs indicate an action or state of being.
- Adjectives describe nouns.
- Adverbs describe verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.
- You must use both sides of a bilingual dictionary to obtain the proper definition of a word.
Chapter 6
Everthing You Wanted to Know about Sex

You're really not going to find out *everything* you wanted to know about sex in this chapter, but you will get a better understanding of how the French view *gender* (a polite way of saying *sex*). Unlike English where girls are girls, and boys are boys, and everything else is neuter, every single noun (person, place, thing, or idea) in French is designated as *masculine* or *feminine, singular* or *plural*. How is this determination made? Sometimes it's obvious, sometimes there are clues, and sometimes it's just downright tricky. This chapter will teach you to make the right connections.
Is It a Girl or a Boy?

If you're speaking about a man or a woman, gender is obvious. But what if you want to talk about a lovely boutique you passed by the other day? There is no obvious clue to you as yet, telling you the gender of the word *boutique*. Do you assume that it's feminine because women like to go to boutiques? In this day and age, that's a dangerous thing to do. There are, however, tricks for determining gender that you will learn as you read and study the chapter.

As a Rule
The word *boutique* ends in *gue*—most French words with this ending are feminine.

Suppose that you want to purchase a tie that you saw in the boutique. It would be normal to assume that *cravate* is masculine because men wear ties more often than women do. But you would be wrong in your assumption. In fact, *cravate* is a feminine word. “Why?” you're probably asking yourself. “That really doesn't make any sense.” You're right. It doesn't. And unfortunately, there are no clues and no tricks to help you with this word and many others like it. So what do you do? You learn which endings are usually masculine and which are feminine, and for the others, you try to learn the word with its *noun marker* (*le* [un] or *la* [une]). If you forget the noun marker, you can always resort to a good French dictionary. Just remember, even if you make a gender mistake, as long as you have the correct vocabulary word, you'll be understood.

As a Rule
Only singular noun markers show the gender of the noun.

Noun Markers

*Noun markers* are articles or adjectives that tell you whether a noun is *masculine* (m.) or *feminine* (f.), *singular* (sing.) or *plural* (pl.). The most common markers, shown in Table 6.1, are *definite articles* expressing “the” and *indefinite articles* expressing “a,” “an,” “one,” or “some.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun Markers</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the</td>
<td><em>le</em> (l') (<em>luh</em>)</td>
<td><em>la</em> (l') (<em>lah</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a, an, one</td>
<td><em>un</em> (uhn)</td>
<td><em>une</em> (ewn)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For words beginning with a vowel or vowel sound (*h, y*), the definite articles *le* and *la* become *l'* . The masculine or feminine gender of the noun, so easily determined when the masculine *le* or the feminine *la* is used, remains a mystery when *l'*.
(masculine or feminine) is used. Therefore, you need to learn the indefinite article \textit{un} or \textit{une} for any word that begins with a vowel.

\textbf{As a Rule}

The \textit{e} is never dropped from the indefinite article \textit{une}. The final \textit{e} does, however, change the sound of the word \textit{un} (uhN) to \textit{une} (ewn).

\textit{Singular Nouns}

The nouns in Table 6.2 are very easy to mark because they obviously refer to males or females:

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|l|l|l|l|l|l|}
\hline
\textbf{Masculine} & \textbf{Pronunciation} & \textbf{English} & \textbf{Feminine} & \textbf{Pronunciation} & \textbf{English} \\
\hline
le père         & \textit{luh pehr}         & father        & la mère       & \textit{lah mehr}       & mother            \\
le grand-père   & \textit{luh grahN-pehr}   & grand-father  & la grand-mère & \textit{lah grahN-mehr} & grand-mother      \\
le garçon       & \textit{luh gahr-sohN}    & boy           & la fille      & \textit{la fee-y}      & girl              \\
l'amis          & \textit{lah-mee}          & friend(m.)    & l'amie        & \textit{lah-mee}       & friend(f.)        \\
un homme        & \textit{uhN nohm}         & man           & une femme     & \textit{ewn fahm}       & woman             \\
uhN oncle       & \textit{uhN nohN-kluh}    & uncle         & une tante     & \textit{ewn tahNt}     & aunt              \\
uhN cousin      & \textit{uhN koo-zaN}      & cousin(m.)    & une cousine   & \textit{ewn koo-zeen}   & cousin(f.)        \\
uhN ami         & \textit{uhN nah-mee}      & friend(m.)    & une amie      & \textit{ewn nah-mee}    & friend(f.)        \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\caption{Gender-Obvious Nouns}
\end{table}

Some nouns can be either masculine or feminine. To indicate whether you are speaking about a male or female, simply change the marker to suit the identity of the person, as listed in Table 6.3:

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|l|l|l|}
\hline
\textbf{Word} & \textbf{Pronunciation} & \textbf{Meaning} \\
\hline
artiste       & \textit{ahr-teeest}     & artist          \\
camarade      & \textit{kah-mah-rahd}   & friend          \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\caption{Nouns for Both Sexes}
\end{table}

\textit{(table continued on next page)}
Let's take a look at an interesting sentence:

Jacques Cousteau est une personne importante.

Did you notice the use of the feminine indefinite article *une*? Are you perplexed? After all, Jacques Cousteau is a man. Shouldn't the indefinite article reflect this? Not really. The answer is simple, although somewhat unsatisfactory for men and women alike.

Whether we agree or not, some nouns are always masculine or feminine no matter what the sex of the person to whom you are referring. Notice that the "Always Masculine" list, which generally refers to professions, is much longer than the "Always Feminine" list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Always Masculine</th>
<th>Always Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agent de police (<em>ah-zhahN duh poh-lees</em>)/police officer</td>
<td>connaissance/acquaintance (<em>koh-neh-sahNs</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>artisan (<em>ahr-tee-zahN</em>)/artisan</td>
<td>personne/person (<em>pehr-sohn</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bébé (<em>bay-bay</em>)/baby</td>
<td>star (<em>stahr</em>)/star</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chef (<em>shehf</em>)/chef, head</td>
<td>vedette (<em>vuh-deht</em>)/star</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dentiste (<em>dahN-teest</em>)/dentist</td>
<td>victime (<em>veek-teem</em>)/victim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>écrivain (<em>ay-kree-vaN</em>)/writer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ingénieur (aN-zhay-nyuh)r/engineer
libraire (lee-breh)r/bookstore clerk
mannequin (mahn-kaN)/model
médecin (mayd-saN)/doctor

(table continued on next page)
Always Masculine | Always Feminine
---|---
pompier (pohN-pyeh)/firefighter
peintre (paNtr)/painter
professeur (proh-feh-suhr)/teacher

The endings in Table 6.4 can be helpful in determining the gender of the noun and can make marking easier. This will require some memorization and practice on your part.

Table 6.4 Masculine and Feminine Endings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine Endings</th>
<th>Feminine Endings</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-acle</td>
<td>-ade</td>
<td>spectacle (spehk-tahkl)</td>
<td>limonade (lee-moh-nahd)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-age*</td>
<td>-ale</td>
<td>garage (gah-razh)</td>
<td>cathédrale (kah-tay-drahl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-al</td>
<td>-ance</td>
<td>animal (ah-nee-mahl)</td>
<td>chance (shahNs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-eau**</td>
<td>-ence</td>
<td>château (shah-to)</td>
<td>essence (eh-sahNns)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-et</td>
<td>-ette</td>
<td>ticket (tee-keh)</td>
<td>chainette (sheh-neht)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ier</td>
<td>-ie</td>
<td>papier (pah-pyay)</td>
<td>magie (mah-zhee)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-isme</td>
<td>-ique</td>
<td>cyclisme (see-kleez-muh)</td>
<td>boutique (boo-teek)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ment</td>
<td>-oire</td>
<td>changement (shahNzh-mahN)</td>
<td>histoire (ees-twahr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-sion</td>
<td></td>
<td>expression (ehks-preh-syohN)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-tion</td>
<td></td>
<td>addition (ah-dee-syohN)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ure</td>
<td></td>
<td>coiffure (kwah-fewr)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* except page (pahzh) (f.); plage (plahzh) (f.) beach
** except eau (o) (f.) water; peau (po) (f.) skin

Marking some nouns is as easy as adding an e to the masculine form to get the corresponding feminine form. When you do this, there will be a change in the pronunciation of any feminine noun ending in a consonant. For the masculine noun, the final consonant is not pronounced. When the e is added to form the feminine, the consonant must then be pronounced. Another change is that the final nasal sound of a masculine in ending (aN) loses its nasality when the feminine ending becomes ine (een). Observe these changes in Table 6.5.
Table 6.5 Sex Changes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Le (L’), Un</th>
<th>La (L’), Une</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ami (ah-mee)/friend</td>
<td>amie (ah-mee)/friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avocat (ah-vo-kaht)/lawyer</td>
<td>avocate (ah-vo-kaht)/lawyer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cliente (klee-yahN)/client</td>
<td>client (klee-yahN)/client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cousin (koo-zaN)/cousin</td>
<td>cousine (koo-zeen)/cousin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>employé (ahN-plwah-yay)/employee</td>
<td>employée (ahN-plwah-yay)/employee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>étudiant (ay-tew-dyahN)/student</td>
<td>étudiante (ay-tew-dyahN)/student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voisin (vwah-zaN)/neighbor</td>
<td>voisine (vwah-zeen)/neighbor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**As a Rule**

The masculine nouns in Table 6.6 that end in a nasal sound will have corresponding feminine forms where there is no nasal sound.

Some masculine noun endings (usually referring to professions) very conveniently have a corresponding feminine ending. Most of the feminine endings sound different, as you will notice in Table 6.6.

Table 6.6 More Sex Changes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine Ending</th>
<th>Feminine Ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-an</td>
<td>paysan (peh-ee-zahn)/peasant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-el</td>
<td>contractuel (kohN-trahk-tew-ehl)/traffic enforcer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-er</td>
<td>pâtissier (pah-tee-syay)/pastry chef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-eur</td>
<td>vendeur (vahN-duhr)/salesman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ien</td>
<td>mécanicien/mechanic (may-kah-nee-syaN)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-on</td>
<td>patron (pah-trohN)/boss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-teur</td>
<td>spectateur (spehk-tah-tuhr)/spectator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-anne</td>
<td>paysanne (peh-ee-zahn)/peasant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-elle</td>
<td>contractuelle (koh-trahk-tew-ehl)/traffic enforcer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>pâtissière (pah-tee-syehr)/pastry chef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-euse</td>
<td>vendeuse/ (vahN-duhz) saleswoman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ienne</td>
<td>mécanicienne (may-kah-nee-syehn)/mechanic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-onne</td>
<td>patronne (pah-trohn)/boss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-trice</td>
<td>spectatrice (spehk-tah-trees)/spectator</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
He Is/She Is

Review what you've learned so far and then complete the list with the missing professions. Be very careful before you choose an ending. Remember, some nouns do not change.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Il est</th>
<th>Elle est</th>
<th>Il est</th>
<th>Elle est</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>avocat</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>infirmier</td>
<td>___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>___</td>
<td>dentiste</td>
<td>pompier</td>
<td>___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coiffeur</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>patronne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>___</td>
<td>factrice</td>
<td>mannequin</td>
<td>___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boucher</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>pâtissière</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>___</td>
<td>étudiante</td>
<td>médecin</td>
<td>___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>___</td>
<td>chef</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>ouvrière</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>électricien</td>
<td>___</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pitfall
Beware of trying to use your common sense to guess gender: make-up, stockings, and pocketbook are masculine, while car, shirt, and fishing are feminine.

If you did well with this exercise, then it's time to continue. The good news is: There are no more rules. However, because most nouns in French do not follow any specific set of rules, you should learn them with their markers. You'll see that you'll get the hang of it in no time. And if you make a gender mistake, it's really not that serious—as long as you've chosen the correct noun, you'll be understood.

When There's More Than One Noun

When a French noun refers to more than one person, place, thing, or idea, just like in English, it must be made plural. But it is not enough to simply change the noun—the marker must be made plural, as well. As you study Table 6.7, you will see that in the plural, the masculine and feminine noun markers for the and some are exactly the same.

Table 6.7 Plural Noun Markers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the</td>
<td>les</td>
<td>les</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some</td>
<td>des</td>
<td>des</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What does this mean? Because le, la, and l’ all become les in the plural, and un and une become des, using a plural noun marker does not enable you to determine the gender of any noun. Plural noun markers indicate only that the speaker is referring to more than one noun. This means that you must learn each noun with its singular noun marker.

**Plural Nouns**

Forming the plural of most nouns in French is really quite easy. All you have to do is add an *unpronounced s* to the singular form:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>le garçon</td>
<td>les garçons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>un garçon</td>
<td>des garçons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la fille</td>
<td>les filles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'enfant*</td>
<td>les enfants*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(un enfant**)</td>
<td>des enfants**</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The letters s, x, and z are all letters that are used to make plurals in French. So what happens if you have a French noun that ends in one of these letters? Absolutely nothing!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>le prix</td>
<td>les prix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le fils</td>
<td>les fils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le nez</td>
<td>les nez</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**As a Rule**

Remember *ellipsis* and **liaison? Use the pronunciation guide and *slide the sounds joined by the apostrophe: l'homme (loim) and j'écris (zhay-kray), and **link the sound of the final consonant with the beginning vowel: les hôtes (lay zo-teh) and nous arrivons (nou zah-ree-vohn). Don't pronounce the final s if you want your French to sound authentic.**

Common words that end in *s*:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Word</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>l'ananas (lah-nah-nah)</td>
<td>pineapple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le héros (luh ay-ro)</td>
<td>hero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'autobus (lo-toh-bews)</td>
<td>bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le mois (luh mwah)</td>
<td>month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le bas (luh bah)</td>
<td>stocking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le jus (luh zhew)</td>
<td>juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le bras (luh brah)</td>
<td>arm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le palais (luh pah-leh)</td>
<td>palace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le colis (luh koh-lee)</td>
<td>package</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le pardessus (luh pahr-duh-sew)</td>
<td>overcoat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le corps (luh kohr)</td>
<td>body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le pays (luh pay-ee)</td>
<td>country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le dos (luh do)</td>
<td>back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le repas (luh ruh-pah)</td>
<td>meal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Now There's More Than One

Chances are that when you travel, you're going to see more than one château, museum, church, etc. If you choose to discuss or describe these things, you'll want to make sure that you've got your plurals down pat. Practice makes perfect, so try to express that you see more than one of the things in the following list.

Example: héros/hero

Je vois (zhuh v waht I see) des héros.

boutique

Other Plurals

The letter x is used in French to make plurals.

- For nouns ending in eau:

le bateau (luh bah-to)/boat
le bureau (luh bew-ro)/office, desk
le cadeau (luh kah-do)/gift
le chapeau (luh shah-po)/hat
le château (luh shah-to)/castle
le couteau (luh koo-to)/knife

le tapis (luh tah-pee)/rug
la croix (lah krwah)/cross
la voix (lah vwah)/voice

Common words that end in x:

la croix (lah krwah)/cross
la voix (lah vwah)/voice

Now There's More Than One

As a Rule
There is no elision or liaison with *h as indicated in the dictionary: le homard (luh oh-maid) and les hors-d'oeuvre (lay ohr-duhvr).

The letter x is used in French to make plurals.

- For nouns ending in eau:

le bateau (luh bah-to)/boat
le bureau (luh bew-ro)/office, desk
le cadeau (luh kah-do)/gift
le chapeau (luh shah-po)/hat
le château (luh shah-to)/castle
le couteau (luh koo-to)/knife

les bateaux
les bureaux
les cadeaux
les chapeaux
les chateaux
les couteaux
l eau (lo)/water  
le gâteau (luh gah-to)/cake  
le manteau (luh mahN-to)/coat
le morceau (luh mohr-so)/piece les morceaux
l'oiseau (lwah-zo)/bird les oiseaux
le rideau (luh ree-do)/curtain les rideaux
le tableau (luh tah-blo)/picture, chalkboard les tableaux

• For nouns ending in *eu*, except le pneu (luh pnuh)/tire: les pneus:

l'animal (lah nee mahl)/animal les animaux
le cheveu (luh shuh vuh)/hair les cheveux
le jeu (luh zhuh)/game les jeux
le lieu (luh lyuh)/place les lieux
le neveu (luh nuh-vuh)/nephew les neveux

• For nouns ending in *al*, change *al* to *aux* except for le bal (luh bahl)/ball: bals; le festival (luh fehs-tee-vahl)/festival: festivals.

le cheval (luh shuh-vahl)/horse les chevaux
l'hôpital (lo-pee-tahl)/hospital les hôpitaux
le journal (luh zhoor-nahl)/newspaper les journaux

• For some nouns ending in *ou*, add *x* to form the plural:

le bijou (luh bee-zhoo)/jewel les bijoux
le caillou (luh kah-yoo)/pebble les cailloux
le genou (luh zhuh-noo)/knee les genoux
le joujou (luh zhoo-zhoo)/toy les joujoux

• Just as we have some words in English that are always plural (*pants, sunglasses, shorts, news*), so do the French. Here are some nouns that might prove useful to you:

les ciseaux (m.) (lay see-zo)/scissors les lunettes (f.) (lay lew-neht)/eyeglasses
les gens (m.) (lay zhahN)/people les vacances (f.) (lay vah-kahNs)/vacation
Learning a foreign language wouldn't be a challenge if there weren't some irregularities. Here are some irregular plurals you might find useful:

- l'œil (m.) (luhy)/eye
- le travail (luh trah-vahy)/work
- madame (mah-dahm)/Mrs.

les yeux (*lay zyuh*)
les travaux (*lay trah-vo*)
mesdames (*may-dahm*)
mademoiselle (mahd-mwah-zehl)/Miss

monsieur (muh-syuh)/Mr.

mesdemoiselles (mayd-mwah-zehl)
messieurs (meh-syuh)

As a Rule
Although you can refer to one hair in French as un cheveu, (for example, if there were a hair in your food), hair, in general, is always plural and is referred to as les cheveux.

Some compound nouns (nouns made up of two nouns usually joined by a hyphen) do not change in the plural—only their markers do:

le gratte-ciel (luh graht-syehl)
les gratte-ciel/skyscrapers

le hors d'oeuvre *(luh ohr-duhvr)
les hors d'oeuvre/appetizers (lay ohr-duhvr)

le rendez-vous (luh rahN-day-voo)
les rendez-vous/appointments

Practice Those Plurals
If you're anything like me, you're always looking for something because you're either (a) very absent-minded or (b) totally lacking a sense of direction. Try your luck at telling someone what you are looking for:

Example: boats

Je cherche (zhuh shehrsh/I am looking for) les bateaux.

1. castles  5. packages
2. eyeglasses  6. palaces
3. people  7. scissors
4. newspapers  8. toys

What Have You Learned about Gender?

Read the following employment ads that were taken from an actual French newspaper and check whether the employer is looking for a male or female employee:
The Least You Need to Know

• You can change some nouns from masculine to feminine by adding an e or by changing the ending of the word.

• You must memorize the gender of most nouns.

• Most plurals end in s or x.

• Singular and plural nouns sound the same—only the markers change in pronunciation.
Chapter 7
Let's Plan a Trip

In This Chapter

▶ Subject pronouns
▶ Verb families and conjugation
▶ What to do to ask a question
▶ Common verbs from all the families

In the last chapter, you learned about nouns: how to determine their gender and how to make them plural. Nouns and the pronouns used to replace them are very important because you can use them as the subject of a sentence. In this chapter, you will see how you can communicate your thoughts in French by using nouns or pronouns and the verbs that convey the actions that are being performed.

To accomplish this, let's do something exciting. Let's plan a trip. Planning and taking an imaginary trip to a French-speaking country will teach you how to get along in most everyday situations where you would need French. Picture the places you could go: the bustling cities, the sandy beaches, the medieval towns. Imagine the sites you could see: the museums, the cathedrals, the parks, the gardens; and the people you could meet: French, Canadians, Haitians, Africans. The possibilities are endless. Let's start with the basics.
What's the Subject?

You're on a group tour and everyone involved seems to have his or her own agenda. You would like to take pictures of the beautiful stained-glass windows of Notre Dame. The woman next to you, she insists on the Eiffel Tower. The couple to your right, they would prefer to spend the day shopping. And the tour guide, well, he's just disgusted at this point. In order to express the things people do, you need to learn about verbs. Verbs require a subject, whether it is stated, as in

I would like to go to the Louvre.

The guide is waiting for us.

or understood, as in a command:

Go to the Pompidou Center. (The subject is understood to be you.)

A subject can be a noun or a pronoun that replaces the noun:

The artist is painting a landscape.

He (she) is painting a landscape.

Subject Pronouns

Just as in English, the French subject pronouns in Table 7.1 are given a person and a number (singular or plural):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>first</td>
<td>je* (zhuh)</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>second</td>
<td>tu** (tew)</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>third</td>
<td>il (eel)</td>
<td>he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>elle (ehl)</td>
<td>she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>on (ohn)</td>
<td>one, you, we, they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The subject pronoun je requires elision and becomes j’ before a vowel or vowel sound (h, y).

**The subject pronoun tu is used when speaking to a single (one) friend, relative, child, or pet. Tu is called the familiar form. The u from tu is never dropped for elision: tu arrives.

**The subject pronoun vous is used in the singular to show respect to an older person or when speaking to someone you don’t know very well. Vous is always used when speaking to more than one person, regardless of familiarity. Vous is referred to as the polite form.

***The subject pronoun ils is used to refer to more than one male or a combined group of males and females.
**Tu versus Vous**

Would you use *tu* or *vous* when speaking to the following people? A doctor? Your cousin? Your friend? A salesman? A woman waiting in line for a bus? Two friends? A policeman from whom you are asking directions? Your friends?

---

**Cultural Tidbits**

*Tu* is used by the French when speaking to their pets because they are considered family members. Pets are held in very high regard in France. It is not unusual at all to see a family accompanied by its dog in a French restaurant. No, the dog doesn’t sit at the table. It eats on the floor, as usual, out of its own bowl. And, believe it or not, there are special take-out restaurants catering strictly to the family canine.

---

*Pronouns* are very useful because they allow you to speak fluidly without having to constantly repeat the noun. Imagine how tedious it would be to hear: Luc is French; Luc is from Paris; Luc would make a wonderful guide. A better version would be: Luc is French; *he*’s from Paris, and *he*’d make a wonderful guide. Use pronouns to replace *proper nouns* (the name of a person or persons), as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Pronoun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lucien</td>
<td>Il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martine</td>
<td>Elle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippe et Claude</td>
<td>Ils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marie et Anne</td>
<td>Elles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paul et Georgette</td>
<td>Ils</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can also use pronouns to replace the name of a common noun referring to a person, place, thing, or idea, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Pronoun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>le restaurant</td>
<td>il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la boutique</td>
<td>elle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le restaurant et le café</td>
<td>ils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la boutique et la poste</td>
<td>elles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le restaurant et la boutique</td>
<td>ils</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Il, Ils, Elle, Elles?

Are you like me, an incurable gossip? Imagine that you've just attended a fabulous party and now you're driving your best friend home. Of course, the two of you can't wait to talk about all the *invités* (guests). Which pronoun would you use when speaking about: Charles? Lucie et Sylvie? Berthe? Pierre? Luc et Henri? Robert et Suzette? Janine, Charolotte, Michèle, et Roger? Paul, Roland, et Annick?

And which pronoun would you substitute for these nouns, subjects which came up in your conversation about the festivities? La fête? Le bal costumé? La musique et le décor? Les vêtements? Le travail et le coût? La cuisine et la nourriture? L'ambiance? L'hôte et l'hôtesse?

Verbs in Motion

Do you like to bungee jump? Participate in ballroom dancing competitions? Skydive? Or are you a couch potato attracted to more mundane activities like reading a book or watching T.V.? No matter what your preferences, you'll have to learn to use verbs to express any action, motion, or state of being. Verbs are referred to as *regular* if they follow a set pattern of rules and *irregular* if they don't. This chapter will look at regular verbs only.

Regular Verbs

Verbs are generally shown in the infinitive, the basic “to” form of the verb: to live, to laugh, to love. An infinitive, whether in French or English, is the form of the verb before it has been conjugated. We conjugate verbs all the time in English without even paying attention to the fact that we're doing it. *Conjugation* refers to changing the ending of a regular verb so that it agrees with the subject. For example, think of the verb *dance*. The infinitive is *to dance*, and it is conjugated as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I dance</th>
<th>We dance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You dance</td>
<td>You dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/she dances</td>
<td>They dance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With irregular verbs, such as the verb *to be*, the entire form changes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am</th>
<th>We are</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You are</td>
<td>You are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/she is</td>
<td>They are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Regular verbs in French belong to one of three large families: verbs whose infinitives end in *er*, *ir*, or *re*. The verbs within each family are all conjugated in exactly the same manner, so after you've learned the pattern for one family, you know them all. The *er* family is, by far, the largest.

In order to plan your imaginary trip, you'll need to do the following, as in Table 7.2:

**Table 7.2 Regular Verbs in Families**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>trouver</em></td>
<td><em>trouver</em></td>
<td>to find a travel agency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>contacter</em></td>
<td><em>contacter</em></td>
<td>to contact an agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>parler</em></td>
<td><em>parler</em></td>
<td>to speak about the trip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>préparer</em></td>
<td><em>préparer</em></td>
<td>to prepare a list of questions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>poser</em></td>
<td><em>poser</em></td>
<td>to ask questions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>donner</em></td>
<td><em>donner</em></td>
<td>to make phone calls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>étudier</em></td>
<td><em>étudier</em></td>
<td>to study the brochures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>décider</em></td>
<td><em>décider</em></td>
<td>to decide where to go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>réfléchir</em></td>
<td><em>réfléchir</em></td>
<td>to think before acting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>choisir</em></td>
<td><em>choisir</em></td>
<td>to choose a hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>établir</em></td>
<td><em>établir</em></td>
<td>to establish an itinerary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>remplir</em></td>
<td><em>remplir</em></td>
<td>to fill out the necessary documents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>attendre</em></td>
<td><em>attendre</em></td>
<td>to wait for the passport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>répondre</em></td>
<td><em>répondre</em></td>
<td>to answer questions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>rendre</em></td>
<td><em>rendre</em></td>
<td>to return the necessary papers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The verbs in the preceding table are written in the infinitive form. If you want to express what someone is doing, you must choose a subject pronoun and then learn the conjugations, as in Table 7.3:
### Table 7.3 Family Conjugations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>trouver</strong> (to find)</th>
<th><strong>choisir</strong> (to choose)</th>
<th><strong>attendre</strong> (to wait for)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je trouve</td>
<td>je choisis</td>
<td>j'attends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhuh troov</td>
<td>zhuh shwah-zee</td>
<td>zhah-tahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu trouves</td>
<td>tu choisis</td>
<td>tu attends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tew troov</td>
<td>tew shwah-zee</td>
<td>tew ah-tahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on trouve</td>
<td>il, elle, on choisit</td>
<td>il, elle, on attend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eel, ehl, ohN troov</td>
<td>eel, ehl, ohN shwah-zee</td>
<td>eel, ehl, ohN nah-tahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous trouvons</td>
<td>nous choisissent</td>
<td>nous attendez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noo troo-vohN</td>
<td>noo shwah-zees-ohN</td>
<td>noo zah-tahN-dohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous trouvez</td>
<td>vous choisissent</td>
<td>vous attendez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voo troo-vay</td>
<td>voo shwah-zees-say</td>
<td>voo zah-tahN-day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles trouvent</td>
<td>ils, elles choisissent</td>
<td>ils, elles attendent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eel, ehl troov</td>
<td>eel, ehl shwah-zees</td>
<td>eel, ehl zah-tahN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### The er Verb Family

Let's start with the biggest and easiest family. This will give you an introduction to conjugation that will put you at ease right from the start. To conjugate *er* verbs, drop *er* from the infinitive and then add the following endings:

- **je**
  - *e*
  - *nous*
  - *ons*
- **tu**
  - *es*
  - *vous*
  - *ez*
- **il, elle, on**
  - *e*
  - *ils, elles*
  - *ent*

Now you can conjugate any *er* verb that belongs to the family. So, if you want to brag about your accomplishments to impress a member of the opposite sex, the sky's the limit.

Je gagne beaucoup d'argent.  
I earn a lot of money.

Je joue très bien aux sports.  
I play sports very well.

Je dîne dans les restaurants les plus élégant.  
I dine in the finest restaurants.

See how easy it is?
Conjugation 101

Use the correct form of the verb to express what each individual is doing on vacation:

For example, (regarder): Je regarde le spectacle.

1. (traverser) Il ____________ la rue.
2. (demander) Elles ____________ l'adresse.
3. (chercher) Nous ____________ le musée.
4. (accompagner) J' ____________ ma famille.
5. (louer) Vous ____________ un appartement.
6. (présenter) Sylvie et Luc ____________ leurs amis à leurs parents.

The ir Verb Family

To conjugate *ir* verbs, drop *ir* from the infinitive and then add these endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>is</th>
<th>nous</th>
<th>issons</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je</td>
<td></td>
<td>nous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>vous</td>
<td>issez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>ils, elles</td>
<td>issent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Conjugation 102

It's time to see if you're up to the challenge. Be careful with infinitives like *choisir* and *réussir* that already have *i’s* and *s’s* in them. By the time you're finished conjugating them they may look a little strange (Nous réussissons, Tu choisis), but they are correct. Be confident and give the correct form of the verb and express what each tourist does:

1. Nous/finir ____________ à huit heures.
2. On/réfléchir ____________.
3. Ils/jouir ____________ de tout.
4. Tu/applaudir ____________ au théâtre.
5. Elle/réussir ____________ à parler français.
7. Vous/agir ____________ bien.
8. Alice et Berthe/remplir ____________ les formulaires.
The re Verb Family

As a Rule
You’re in luck. Sometimes things are easier than they appear. There is no ending for the third person singular form (il, elle, on) of re verbs: Il (Elle, On) répond/He, She, One answers. So, in this case, there’s no need to be concerned about memorizing anything.

This family is, by far, the smallest. The verbs attendre (to wait for), entendre (to hear), and vendre (to sell) are high-frequency verbs that you'll be using and hearing on a regular basis. So, it will be necessary to commit this conjugation to memory. To conjugate re verbs, drop re from the infinitive and then add these endings:

je  s

tu  s

il, elle, on

nous  ons

vous  ez

ils, elles  ent

Conjugation 103

People on vacation do all sorts of different things. Use your knowledge of re verbs to describe their actions. In the following, choose the verb that best completes the sentence. Then, provide the correct verb form to explain what each tourist is doing:

attendre (to wait for)  perdre (to lose)  descendre (to go down)
rendre (to return)  entendre (to hear)  répondre (to answer)

1. Tu _________ le métro.
2. Elles _________ en ville.
3. Nous _________ notre plan de la ville.
4. Vous _________ à des questions.
5. Il _________ les nouvelles (the news).
Ask Me Anything

When planning your trip, you'll find lots of questions that you'll want to ask. Let's concentrate on the easy ones—those that require a simple yes or no answer.
There are four ways to show that you’re asking a question. You can use:

1. intonation
2. the tag *n'est-ce pas* (isn't that so?)
3. *Est-ce que* at the beginning of your phrase
4. inversion.

**Intonation**

The easiest way to show that you’re asking a question is to simply change your intonation and raise your voice at the end of the sentence. To do this, place an imaginary question mark at the end of your statement and speak with a rising inflection.

Tu penses au voyage? (tew pahNz o vwaH-yahzh)

Are you thinking about the trip?

Notice how your voice starts out lower and gradually keeps rising until the end of the sentence.

Tu penses au voyage. You are thinking about the trip.

When using the same sentence as a statement of fact, notice how your voice rises and then lowers by the end of the sentence.

*N'est-ce pas?*

Another simple way to ask a question is to add the tag *n'est-ce pas* (nehs pas/isn't that so?) at the end of the sentence.

Tu penses au voyage, n'est-ce pas?

**Est-ce que**

Yet another way to ask the same question is to put *Est-ce que* (ehs-kuh) at the beginning of the sentence. *Est-ce que* is not translated but does indicate that a question follows:

Est-ce que tu penses au voyage?
Inversion

The last way to form a question is by inversion, which is used far more frequently in writing than in conversation. *Inversion* means reversing the word order of the subject pronoun and the conjugated verb form. Several rules govern inversion, which can get tricky—but don’t despair. If you feel more comfortable using one of the other three methods mentioned, by all means, use them. You will still be speaking perfectly correct French, you will be understood, and your question will be answered. For those who are up to the challenge, the rules are as follows:

• **Avoid inverting with je.** It's awkward and is very rarely used.

• **You can ONLY invert subject pronouns with conjugated verbs. DO NOT INVERT with nouns!** Look at some examples to see how inversion works with the subject pronouns:

  Tu penses au voyage.  Penses-tu au voyage?
  Nous expliquons bien.  Expliquons-nous bien?
  Vous parlez français.  Parlez-vous français?
  Ils commandent du vin.  Commandent-ils du vin?
  Elles habitent à Paris.  Habient-elles à Paris?

• **A -t- must be added with il and elle to avoid having two vowels together.** This usually happens only with verbs in the *er* family. For the *ir* and *re* families, the *il* and *elle* verb forms end in a consonant:

  Il travaille aujourd'hui.  Travaille-t-il aujourd'hui?
  Elle contacte l'agent.  Contacte-t-elle l'agent?
  Il finit son dessert.  Finit-il son dessert?
  Elle attend le bus.  Attend-elle le bus?

• **When you have a noun subject and you want to use inversion, you MUST replace the noun with the appropriate pronoun.** You may retain the noun at the beginning of the question, but then you must invert the corresponding pronoun with the conjugated verb form. For example:

  Le chanteur *est-il* français? The pronoun *il* was chosen because *le chanteur* (the singer) is a singular, masculine noun. No -t- was necessary because the verb ends in a consonant.
La robe est-elle trop petite? The pronoun elle was chosen because la robe (the dress) is a feminine, singular noun. Again, no -t- was necessary because the verb ends in a consonant.

Le docteur et le dentiste travaillent-ils aujourd'hui? The pronoun ils was chosen because we are referring to more than one male noun.

Les brochures sont-elles à notre disposition? The pronoun elles was chosen because we are referring to a feminine, plural noun.

Le gâteau et la mousse sont-ils excellents? The pronoun ils was chosen because when referring to two nouns of different genders, the male noun is always given precedence.

Remember that whether you are using intonation, est-ce que, n'est-ce pas, or inversion, you are asking for exactly the same information: a yes/oui (wee) or no/non (nohN) answer:

Tu poses des questions intelligentes?
Est-ce que tu poses des questions intelligentes?
Tu poses des questions intelligentes, n'est-ce pas?
Poses-tu des questions intelligentes?

Ask Me if You Can

Imagine that you're sitting on a bus with your tour group. Unfortunately, you're stuck in horrible traffic on the autoroute and you and your fellow travelers are bored beyond belief. To keep yourselves occupied, you decide to ask questions about everyone on board, including yourselves. Using the subjects and actions listed, write questions in as many ways as you can.

1. nous/parler trop
2. il/descendre souvent en ville
3. vous/accomplir beaucoup
4. Marie/téléphoner toujours à sa famille
5. tu/attendre toujours les autres
6. les garçons/jouer au tennis
7. elles/écouter le guide
8. Luc et Anne/sembler heureux

And the Answer Is…

If you're an upbeat person who enjoys doing lots of things, you'll surely want to know how to answer “yes.” To answer affirmatively (yes), use oui (wee) and then give your statement:

Vous dansez? Oui, je danse.
To answer yes to a negative question, use *si*.

Tu ne danses pas bien? Si, je danse bien.

Perhaps you're in a foul mood and everyone and everything is getting on your nerves. Or maybe “no” is just an honest answer. To answer negatively (no), use *non* (*nohN*) and then add *ne* and *pas* (not), respectively, before and after the conjugated verb form. Remember, if there are two verbs, only the first is conjugated:

Vous fumez? Non, je ne fume pas. Non, je ne désire pas fumer.

You can easily vary your negative answers by putting the following negative phrases before and after the conjugated verb:

ne…jamais (*nuh…zhah-meh*) never

Je ne fume jamais. I never smoke.

ne…plus (*nuh…plew*) no longer

Je ne fume plus. I no longer smoke. (I don't smoke anymore.)

ne…rien (*nuh…ryaN*) nothing, anything

Je ne fume rien. I'm not smoking anything.

If you want to increase your vocabulary quickly, you'll need to have as many verbs as possible on the tip of your tongue. Tables 7.4, 7.5, and 7.6 provide you with practical lists of the most frequently used *er, ir,* and *re* verbs—these are the ones that you'll need the most in any given situation.

**Verb Tables**

**Table 7.4 Common er Verbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>pronunciation</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aider</td>
<td><em>eh-day</em></td>
<td>to help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>annoncer</td>
<td><em>ah-nohN-say</em></td>
<td>to announce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bavarder</td>
<td><em>bah-vahr-day</em></td>
<td>to chat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>changer</td>
<td><em>shahN-zhay</em></td>
<td>to change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chercher</td>
<td><em>shehr-shay</em></td>
<td>to look for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commencer</td>
<td><em>koh-mahN-say</em></td>
<td>to begin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>danser</td>
<td><em>dahN-say</em></td>
<td>to dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demander</td>
<td><em>duh-mahN-day</em></td>
<td>to ask</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(table continued on next page)*
### Verb List

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dépenser</td>
<td>day-pahn-say</td>
<td>to spend (money)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>donner</td>
<td>doh-nay</td>
<td>to give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>écouter</td>
<td>ay-koo-tay</td>
<td>to listen (to)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>étudier</td>
<td>ay-tew-day</td>
<td>to study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expliquer</td>
<td>eks-plee-kay</td>
<td>to explain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exprimer</td>
<td>eks-pree-may</td>
<td>to express</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fermer</td>
<td>fehr-may</td>
<td>to close</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fonctionner</td>
<td>fohNk-syohN-nay</td>
<td>to function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garder</td>
<td>gahr-day</td>
<td>to keep, watch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habiter</td>
<td>ah-bee-tay</td>
<td>to live (in)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indiquer</td>
<td>aN-dee-kay</td>
<td>to indicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jouer</td>
<td>zho-ay</td>
<td>to play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laver</td>
<td>lah-vay</td>
<td>to wash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manger</td>
<td>mahN-zhay</td>
<td>to eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marcher</td>
<td>mahr-shay</td>
<td>to walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nager</td>
<td>nah-zhay</td>
<td>to swim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oublier</td>
<td>oo-blee-yay</td>
<td>to forget</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parler</td>
<td>pahr-lay</td>
<td>to speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>penser</td>
<td>pahN-say</td>
<td>to think</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>préparer</td>
<td>pray-pah-ray</td>
<td>to prepare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>présenter</td>
<td>pray-zahN-tay</td>
<td>to present, introduce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quitter</td>
<td>kee-tay</td>
<td>to leave, remove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regarder</td>
<td>ruh-gahr-day</td>
<td>to look at, watch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regretter</td>
<td>ruh-gruh-tay</td>
<td>to regret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rencontrer</td>
<td>rahN-kohN-tray</td>
<td>to meet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retourner</td>
<td>ruh-toor-nay</td>
<td>to return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sembler</td>
<td>sahn-blay</td>
<td>to seem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signer</td>
<td>see-nyay</td>
<td>to sign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>téléphoner</td>
<td>tay-lay-foh-nay</td>
<td>to telephone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>travailler</td>
<td>trah-vah-yay</td>
<td>to work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voyager</td>
<td>vwah-yah-zhay</td>
<td>to travel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 7.5 Common ir Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agir</td>
<td>ah-zheer</td>
<td>to act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avertir</td>
<td>ah-veh-heer</td>
<td>to warn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blanchir</td>
<td>blahN-sheer</td>
<td>to bleach, whiten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choisir</td>
<td>shwah-zeer</td>
<td>to choose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finir</td>
<td>fee-neer</td>
<td>to finish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guérir</td>
<td>gay-reer</td>
<td>to cure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jouir</td>
<td>zhoo-eer</td>
<td>to enjoy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maigrir</td>
<td>meh-greer</td>
<td>to become thin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obéir</td>
<td>oh-bay-eer</td>
<td>to obey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>punir</td>
<td>pew-neer</td>
<td>to punish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>réfléchir</td>
<td>ray-flay-sheer</td>
<td>to reflect, think</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>réussir</td>
<td>ray-ew-seer</td>
<td>to succeed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 7.6 Common re Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>attendre</td>
<td>ah-tahNdr</td>
<td>to wait (for)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>descendre</td>
<td>deh-sahnдр</td>
<td>to go (come) down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entendre</td>
<td>aN-tahNdr</td>
<td>to hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perdre</td>
<td>pehrdr</td>
<td>to lose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>répondre</td>
<td>ray-pohNdr ah</td>
<td>to answer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vendre</td>
<td>vahNdr</td>
<td>to see</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Least You Need to Know

- Subject pronouns can be used to replace any subject noun.
- Any verb that follows a subject noun or pronoun must be properly conjugated.
- There are different rules for conjugating verbs belonging to the er, ir, and re families.
- The easiest way to indicate that you're asking a question is to raise the intonation in your voice.
PART 2
TRAVEL

8 Meetings and Greetings 81

9 I'd Like to Get to Know You 91

10 Finally, You're at the Airport 107

11 Getting to the Hotel 119

12 Hooray, You've Made It to the Hotel! 133
Chapter 8
Meetings and Greetings

In This Chapter
- Greetings and salutations
- All about être (to be)
- The different professions
- Getting the information you need

You planned your trip in Chapter 7, and the time has come to put what you've learned to good use. Now that you can create simple French sentences (using subject nouns, pronouns, and regular verbs) and ask yes-no questions, you're ready to engage in a short conversation.

While you're sitting on the plane on your way to a glorious vacation in a French-speaking country, you might want to strike up a conversation with the person sitting next to you. If that person speaks French, you're in luck. This is an excellent opportunity for you to introduce yourself and, perhaps, to get a few helpful hints and recommendations about places to visit, restaurants to go to, and things to do in the country you're visiting.
Making Friends

Even though you've read every travel book in your local bookstore, you may still be a little nervous about your trip. What you really need to do is speak to someone from the country—someone who lives there and can fill you in on everything you can do and see and everywhere to go. Where can you find this person? Probably sitting right next to you on the plane! There's plenty of time before you arrive at your destination, so why not strike up a conversation?

Since you don't know the person at all, a formal approach is *de rigueur* (mandatory). A typical opening conversation might start with many of these phrases:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bonjour</td>
<td><em>bohN-zhoor</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bonsoir</td>
<td><em>bohN swahr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monsieur</td>
<td><em>muh-syuh</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>madame</td>
<td><em>mah-dahm</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mademoiselle</td>
<td><em>mahd-mwah-zehl</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Je m'appelle</td>
<td><em>zhuh mah-pehl</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comment vous appelez-vous?</td>
<td><em>kohN-mahN voo zah-play voo</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comment allez-vous?</td>
<td><em>kohN-mahN tah-lay voo</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Très bien.</td>
<td><em>treh byaN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pas mal.</td>
<td><em>pah mahl</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comme ci comme ça.</td>
<td><em>kohm see kohm sah</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

During an informal opening conversation (between young people or friends), you might use these phrases:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Salut!</td>
<td><em>sah-lew</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Je m'appelle.</td>
<td><em>zhuh mah-pehl</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comment t'appelles-tu?</td>
<td><em>kohN-mahN tah-pehl tew</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ça va?</td>
<td><em>sah vah</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ça marche?</td>
<td><em>sah mahrsh</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ça va.</td>
<td><em>sah vah</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ça marche.</td>
<td><em>sah mahrsh</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*de rigueur* (mandatory)
If you'd really like to get to know the person you are talking to, ask him or her a few questions about himself or herself: Where he or she is from, for example. You'll also want to respond correctly when others ask where you are from. To do this, you will need the verb être (to be). Just as it is in English, the verb to be (être) is irregular, and all of its forms must be memorized. Because you will be using this verb so frequently, make it a top priority to memorize its forms. Compare the conjugations in Table 8.1. As you will see, there are more irregular forms in French than there are in English.

Table 8.1 The Verb être (to be)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je suis</td>
<td>zhuh swee</td>
<td>I am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu es</td>
<td>tew eh</td>
<td>you are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on est</td>
<td>eel (ehl) (ohN) eh</td>
<td>he, she, one is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous sommes</td>
<td>noo sohm</td>
<td>we are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous êtes</td>
<td>voo zeht</td>
<td>you are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles sont</td>
<td>eel (ehl) sohN</td>
<td>they are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Do you detect an unfamiliar accent when speaking to an acquaintance? Get ready to satisfy your curiosity by using the verb être to ask about a person's origins. You're ready to proceed:
Formal use:

Vous êtes d'où?  
\[ voo \textit{ zeh } \textit{ doo } \] Where are you from?

Informal use:

Tu es d'où?  
\[ tew \textit{ eh } \textit{ doo } \] Where are you from?

Je suis de _____ (city).  
\[ zhuh \textit{ swee } \textit{ duh } \] I am from _____ (city).

To express the state you come from, keep the following in mind:

Use \textit{ de} (from) for all feminine states; that is, any state ending in \textit{ e} and for any state whose name has an adjective:
Je suis de Maine.
Je suis de New York.

Use *du* (from) for all masculine states; that is, states ending in any letter other than *e*.
Je suis du Vermont.

Use *des* (from) to say that you come from the U.S.
Je suis des États-Unis.

**What's Your Line?**

You can also use *être* to ask about a person's job or to talk about your own job. The feminine forms are given in parentheses in Table 8.2. Some occupations have only masculine or feminine forms despite the gender of the person employed. Other professions use the same word for masculine and feminine employees, but require the gender-appropriate noun marker (*le* [un] or *la* [une]).

**Formal use:**

Quel est votre métier?

*kehr eh vohtay may-tay*  
What is your profession?

**Informal use:**

Quel est ton métier?

*kehr eh tohNmay-tay may-tay*  
What is your profession?

Je suis…

*zhuh swee...*  
I am…

**Table 8.2 Professions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Profession</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agent de police m.</td>
<td><em>ah-zahN duh poh-leez</em></td>
<td>police officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avocate</td>
<td><em>ah-voh-kah(t)</em></td>
<td>lawyer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bijoutier (bijoutière)</td>
<td><em>bee-zhooy-tyay (bee-zhooy-tyehr)</em></td>
<td>jeweler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td>Pronunciation</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caissier</td>
<td><em>keh-syay</em></td>
<td>cashier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coiffeur</td>
<td><em>kwah-fuhr</em></td>
<td>hairdresser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commerçante</td>
<td><em>koh-mehr-sahn(t)</em></td>
<td>merchant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dentiste m.</td>
<td><em>dahN-teest</em></td>
<td>dentist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(table continued on next page)*
(table continued from previous page)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Profession</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>docteur m.</td>
<td>dohk-tuhr</td>
<td>doctor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>électricien(ne)</td>
<td>ay-lehk-tree-syaN (ay-lehk-tree- syehn)</td>
<td>electrician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>étudiante</td>
<td>ay-tew-dyahN (ay-tew-dyahNt)</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facteur (factrice)</td>
<td>fahk-tuhr (fahk-trees)</td>
<td>postal worker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gérante</td>
<td>zhay-rahN(t)</td>
<td>manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infirmier (infirmière)</td>
<td>aN-feer-myay (aN-feer-myehr)</td>
<td>nurse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mécanicien(ne)</td>
<td>may-kah-nee-syaN (may-kah-nee-syehn)</td>
<td>mechanic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>médecin m.</td>
<td>mayd-saN</td>
<td>doctor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musicien(ne)</td>
<td>mew-zee-syaN (mew-zee-syehn)</td>
<td>musician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pompier m.</td>
<td>pohN-pyay</td>
<td>firefighter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secrétaire m. or f.</td>
<td>seh-kray-tehr</td>
<td>secretary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serveuse f.</td>
<td>sehr-vuhz</td>
<td>waitress</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Idioms with être**

Imagine that you are on the phone with your French-speaking relative, Uncle Gaston. You think you hear him say to you, “Je suis en train de préparer le dîner.” Hearing the cognates train, preparer, and diner, you immediately assume that Uncle Gaston is a chef on one of France’s trains, perhaps on the T.G.V. (Train à Grande Vitesse—a very modern and fast train). But how could this be? The last you heard, he was a nephrologist at a leading teaching hospital in Paris. Did he have a change of heart? If you think you hear something that sounds wildly implausible, chances are you’re right. Just when you think you have a handle on the language, idioms, those linguistic bugaboos, are ready to trip you up. In this case, your Uncle was using an idiomatic expression that means he’s busy preparing dinner (bouillabaisse perhaps?). Table 8.3 will show you some new idioms with être.

---

**As a Rule**

To refer to a woman who’s in a profession that always uses the masculine word form, simply add the word femme (fahm/woman) before the job title: Elle est femme pilote/She’s a woman pilot.
Table 8.3 Idioms with être

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Idiom</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>être à</td>
<td><em>ehtr ah</em></td>
<td>to belong to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>être d'accord (avec)</td>
<td><em>ehtr dah-kohr</em></td>
<td>to agree (with)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>être de retour</td>
<td><em>ehtr duh ruh-toor</em></td>
<td>to be back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>être en train de + infinitive</td>
<td><em>ehtr ahN traN duh</em></td>
<td>to be in the act of, busy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>être sur le point de + infinitive</td>
<td><em>ehtr sewr luh pwaN duh</em></td>
<td>to be on the verge of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Make sure to conjugate the verb when you use it in context:

Ce journal est à moi. This newspaper is mine.

Je suis d'accord. I agree.

Est-il de retour? Is he back?

Nous sommes en train de manger. We are busy eating.

Es-tu sur le point de finir? Are you on the verge of finishing?

Become Very Nosy

Picture this: That sublime hunk in seat 6B—you think he's cute. What phrases do you need to probe more deeply and develop the relationship of your dreams? You have a million questions and you want thorough answers. You're going to have to ask *information questions* to find out all the relevant facts you seek. Whatever the situation or problem, you'll be able to see it through with the words and expressions in Table 8.4.

Table 8.4 Information Questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>à quelle heure</td>
<td><em>ah kehl uhr</em></td>
<td>at what time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à qui</td>
<td><em>ah kee</em></td>
<td>to whom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à quoi</td>
<td><em>ah kwah</em></td>
<td>to what</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avec qui</td>
<td><em>ah-vehk kee</em></td>
<td>with whom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avec quoi</td>
<td><em>ah-vehk kwah</em></td>
<td>with what</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de qui</td>
<td><em>duh kee</em></td>
<td>of, about, from whom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de quoi</td>
<td><em>duh kwah</em></td>
<td>of, about, from what</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>combien (de + noun)</td>
<td><em>kohN-byaN (duh)</em></td>
<td>how much; many</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comment</td>
<td><em>kohN-mahN</em></td>
<td>how</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(table continued on next page)
(table continued from previous page)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>où</td>
<td>where</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d'où</td>
<td>from where</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pourquoi</td>
<td>why</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quand</td>
<td>when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qui</td>
<td>who, whom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>que</td>
<td>what</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qu'est-ce que</td>
<td>what</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Comment est-ce que vous voyagez (tu voyages)?

De qui? De quoi est-ce que vous parlez (tu parles)?

Qu'est-ce que vous regardez (tu regardes)?

D'où est-ce que vous êtes (tu es)?

Où est-ce que vous habitez (tu habites) en France?

Quand? À quelle heure est-ce que le vol (the flight) arrive?

Combien est-ce que un soda coûte?

**Obtaining Information by Using Inversion**

Finally, you can use inversion to ask information questions. Put the question word(s) (as listed in Table 8.4) before the inverted subject pronoun and conjugated verb form:

Avec qui voyagez-vous (voyages-tu)?

Pourquoi voyagez-vous (voyages-tu)?

Comment voyagez-vous (voyages-tu)?

De qui? De quoi parlez-vous (parles-tu)?

Que regardez-vous (regardes-tu)?

D'où êtes-vous (es-tu)?

Où habitez-vous (habites-tu) en France?

Quand? À quelle heure le vol (the flight) arrive-t-il?

Combien coûte-t-il un soda?
You will probably ask for information in a variety of different ways. No doubt you'll choose the way that feels more comfortable and seems to flow. Most of the time, however, you will probably tack the question word or phrase onto the end of your statement (Vous êtes d'où?). Why not? It's easy and it works. Using *est-ce que* may be your choice on occasion, especially if you have a noun subject (À quelle heure est-ce que l'avion arrive?). At other times, you might find it preferable to invert (Que cherches-tu?). Whichever way you choose, you will be perfectly understood and will get the information you need.
Ask Away

Read each of the following paragraphs. Ask as many questions as you can, based on the information given to you in each selection. In paragraph A, you are asking about Robert. In paragraph B, you must ask Georgette questions about herself:


The Least You Need to Know

• Choose your words carefully! The greeting words you use depend upon your familiarity with that person.

• The verb être is one of the most useful verbs in French. It is essential to memorize it because it is irregular.

• You can ask yes/no questions by using intonation, the tag n'est-ce pas, est-ce que at the beginning of a sentence, and inversion.

• You can get information easily by learning a few key words and phrases, and by placing them at the end of the thought, before est-ce que at the beginning of the sentence, or before an inverted question form.
Chapter 9
I'd Like to Get to Know You

If you've successfully used the linguistic tools provided in the preceding chapter, then you should be well on your way to introducing yourself and making new friends. You certainly don't want to appear rude, so how about introducing your family members to your new acquaintances? Perhaps you, too, will meet a new friend and be introduced to members of his or her family. Whatever the circumstances, it helps to be prepared.

Let's say there is someone in particular you think you would like to meet. But before you make your introduction, you'd like to find out a few things about this person. This chapter will give you the tools you need to find out what your potential pal is really like.
What a Family!

How many times have you opened your mouth during the course of a conversation only to find that you've done a magnificent job of sticking your foot in it? If you're anything like me, it's probably happened more often than you care to remember. Have you ever (as I have done) mistaken someone's father for his grandfather? Or worse yet, someone's wife for his mother? I've learned not to make any assumptions when I meet someone. Table 9.1 will help you to avoid a potentially embarrassing situation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 9.1 Family Members</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Male</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le père</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le grand-père</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le beau-père</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'enfant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le frère</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le demi-frère</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le beau-fils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le fils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'oncle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le cousin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le neveu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le mari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le gendre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le petit ami</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

So, you've got a large family. How much easier it is to group our kids, parents, and grandparents together when we speak about them. Here are some useful plurals and their spellings:

- les enfants: lay zahN-fahN
- les parents: lay pah-rahN
- les grands-parents: lay graHN-pah-rahN
- les beaux-parents: lay bo pah-rahN
- les enfants: lay zahN-fahN
- les parents: lay pah-rahN
- les grands-parents: lay graHN-pah-rahN
- les beaux-parents: lay bo pah-rahN

the children
the parents
the grandparents
the in-laws
Are You Possessed?

Don't be upset, but you're probably possessed. That is, you're somebody's somebody: your mother's child, your friend's friend, your brother's sister, or your sister's brother. There are two ways to show possession in French: by using the preposition *de* and by using possessive adjectives.

**Possession with de**

To show possession in English, we put 's or 's after a noun. But there are no apostrophes in French. In order to translate *Roger's mother* into French, a speaker would have to say *The mother of Roger = la mère de Roger.* The preposition *de* means *of* and is used to express possession or relationship. *De* is repeated before each noun and becomes *d'* before a vowel:

*C'est le père de Jean et d'Anne.*

He's John and Anne's father.

If the possessor is referred to not by name but by a common noun such as *the boy or the parents* (*He is the boy's father: The father of the boy; or That's the parents' car: The car of the parents*), then *de* contracts with the definite articles *le* and *les* to express *of the*, as shown in Table 9.2.

**Table 9.2 Contractions with de**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>de +</th>
<th>le</th>
<th>DU</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>de +</td>
<td>les</td>
<td>DES</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**As a Rule**

No changes are necessary for de *+ la* or de *+ l’*.

*Ce sont les parents de la fille.*

*Ce sont les parents de l’homme.*

Examples using contractions with *de* are:

*Ce sont les parents du garçon.*

*Ce sont les parents des jeunes filles.*

**Express These Relationships**

Now that you understand how to use *de* to express possession, how would you say: Michael's mother? André and Marie's father? The girls' grandparents? The boy's uncle? The family's grandfather? The child's brother?
**Possessive Adjectives**

The possessive adjectives *my, your, his, her,* and so on, show that something belongs to someone. In French, possessive adjectives agree with the nouns they describe (the person or thing that is possessed) and not with the subject (the person possessing them). See how this compares with English:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He loves his mother.</td>
<td>Il aime sa mère.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She loves her mother.</td>
<td>Elle aime sa mère.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He loves his father.</td>
<td>Il aime son père.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She loves her father.</td>
<td>Elle aime son père.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Son* and *sa* both mean *his* or *her* because the possessive adjective agrees with the noun it modifies, not with the subject. Therefore, *her father = son père* because *son* agrees with the word *père*, which is masculine; and *his mother = sa mère* because *sa* agrees with the word *mère*, which is feminine. This difference makes French very tricky to English speakers. Just remember that it is important to know the gender (masculine or feminine) of the noun possessed. When in doubt, look it up! Table 9.3 summarizes the use of possessive adjectives.

**Table 9.3 Possessive Adjectives**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Used before masculine singular nouns or feminine singular nouns beginning with a vowel</th>
<th>Used before feminine singular nouns beginning with a consonant only</th>
<th>Used before all plural nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mon (<em>mohN</em>) <em>my</em></td>
<td>ma (<em>mah</em>) <em>my</em></td>
<td>mes (<em>may</em>) <em>my</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ton (<em>tohN</em>) <em>your</em> (fam.)</td>
<td>ta (<em>tah</em>) <em>your</em> (fam.)</td>
<td>tes (<em>tay</em>) <em>your</em> (fam.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>son (<em>sohN</em>) <em>his, her</em></td>
<td>sa (<em>sah</em>) <em>his, her</em></td>
<td>ses (<em>say</em>) <em>his, her</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notre (<em>nohtr</em>) <em>our</em></td>
<td>notre (<em>nohtr</em>) <em>our</em></td>
<td>nos (<em>no</em>) <em>our</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>votre (<em>vohtsr</em>) <em>your</em> (pol.)</td>
<td>votre (<em>vohtsr</em>) <em>your</em> (pol.)</td>
<td>vos (<em>vo</em>) <em>your</em> (pol.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leur (<em>luhr</em>) <em>their</em></td>
<td>leur (<em>luhr</em>) <em>their</em></td>
<td>leurs (<em>luhr</em>) <em>their</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
State Your Preference

Pitfall
There is no elision with possessive adjectives because there are no final vowels to drop. Never use m', t', or s' to express his or her.

Do you have a favorite song, color, restaurant, vacation spot? We all have our own individual preferences. What are yours? Express them by using the correct possessive adjective (mon, ma, mes).

Examples:

acteur favori  
Mon acteur favori est Danny DeVito.

acteurs favoris  
Mes acteurs favoris sont Mel Gibson et Patrick Swayze.

actrices favorites  
restaurants favoris  
couleur favorite

chanson (song) favorite  
sport favori  
film favori

Let Me Introduce You

Let me introduce myself. My name is Gail. And I'd love for you to meet my husband, Doug, who's helped me tremendously with this book. Do you know my sons Eric and Michael? Eric is a computer wiz. This manuscript couldn't have been typed without him. And Michael, well, he's my source of moral support. Now, let's make some introductions in French:

Permettez-moi de me présenter. Je m'appelle___.

Pehr-meh-tay mwah duh muh pray-zahN-tay. Zhuh mah-pehl___.

You might ask about a companion:

Vous connaissez (Tu connais) mon cousin, Roger?

voo koh-neh-say (tew koh-neh) mohN koo-zahN roh-zhay?

If the answer is no (non), then you would say:

Je vous présente (Je te présente) mon cousin, Roger.

zhuh voo pray-zahNt (zhuh tuh pray-zahNt) mohN koo-zahN roh-zhay.

or

C'est mon cousin, Roger.

seh mohN koo-zahN roh-zhay.
To express pleasure at having met someone, you might say:

Formally

\[ \text{Je suis content(e) [heureux (heureuse), enchanté(e)] de vous connaÎtre.} \]
\[ zhuh swee kohN-tahN [zuh-ruht(z), zahN-shahN-tay] duh voo koh-nehtur \]
I am glad (happy, delighted) to know you.

Informally

\[ \text{Enchanté(e), C'est un plaisir} \]
\[ ahN-shahN-tay, seh tuhN pleh-zeer \]
Delighted. It's a pleasure.

The correct reply to an introduction is:

\[ \text{Moi de même.} \]
\[ mwah dmehm \]
The pleasure is mine.

**Can You?**

Are you interested in initiating a conversation and getting your family or traveling companion involved? If so, see if you can do the following in French:

1. Introduce yourself to someone.
2. Ask someone if they know a member of your family.
3. Introduce a member of your family to someone.
4. Express pleasure at having met someone.
5. Respond to someone who says how glad they are to have met you.

**Taking the Conversation a Little Further**

Perhaps you would like to discuss how many children you have or your age; or you might want to describe family members or friends who aren't present. A verb that you will find most helpful is **avoir** (to have). Like the verb **être** (to be), **avoir** is an irregular verb, and all of its forms (as seen in Table 9.4) must be memorized.

**Table 9.4 The Verb avoir (to have)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>j’ai</th>
<th>tu as</th>
<th>il, elle, on a</th>
<th>nous avons</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zhay</td>
<td>tew ah</td>
<td>eel, (ehl), (ohN) ah</td>
<td>noo zah-bohN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have</td>
<td>you have</td>
<td>he, she, one has</td>
<td>we have</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(table continued on next page)*
(table continued from previous page)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vous avez</td>
<td>you have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles ont</td>
<td>eel, (ehlz) ohN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Idioms with avoir**

In Chapter 4, you were given many idioms with *avoir* that express physical conditions. To refresh your memory, review Chapter 4.

Now you are ready for some new *avoir* idioms. Perhaps you would like to thank a family for giving you the *opportunity* to stay in their home. You might be tempted to give a French twist to our word *opportunity*. After all, *opportunité* does have a French ring to it. When you look up your creation (*opportunité*) in a bilingual dictionary, you will find that the word does exist, but it doesn't mean what you had hoped (in fact, it means *expediency*, *advisability*, *fitness*). To avoid other mistakes, study the *avoir* idioms in Table 9.5.

**Table 9.5 Idioms with avoir**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>avoir l'occasion de</td>
<td>to have the opportunity to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoir de la chance</td>
<td>to be lucky</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoir l'habitude de</td>
<td>to be accustomed to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoir l'intention de</td>
<td>to intend to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoir le temps de</td>
<td>to have the time to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoir lieu</td>
<td>to take place</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Make sure to conjugate the verb when you use it in context:

- J'ai l'occasion de voyager        I have the opportunity to travel.
- Tu as de la chance.              You're lucky.
- J'ai l'habitude de dîner à six heures. I'm accustomed to dining at six o'clock.
- Avez-vous l'intention de partir bientôt? Do you intend to leave soon?
- Ils n'ont pas le temps d'attendre. They don't have the time to wait.
- Le rendez-vous a lieu à midi. The meeting is taking place at noon.

**Using avoir**

*Avoir* is a verb that you'll be constantly using. Now that you've taken the time to learn all of its forms and useful idiomatic expressions, see if you can properly complete the following thoughts:
avoir de la chance 
avoir l'occasion de

avoir l'habitude de 
avoir le temps de

avoir l'intention de 
avoir lieu

1. Tu ne travailles pas. Alors tu________________ aider tes parents.

2. Il regarde la télévision tous les jours. Il______________ regarder la télévision.

3. Vous avez gagné (won) la loterie. Vous____________

4. Elles sont riches. Elles________________________ visiter la France chaque année (every year).

5. J'étudie le français. Un jour j'______________________ d'aller (to go) à Paris.

6. La cérémonie____________aujourd'hui (today).

What's He/She Like?

I've been blabbing about myself for several chapters now. Are you curious to know what I'm like? Do you have a mental picture of what a French author looks like? Did you guess brunette (thank you, L'Oréal), brown eyes, 5'4", thin, and young at heart? (I'd tell you my real age, but my students might be curious enough to read this book and discover the answer to a very well-kept secret.) That's me.

If you want to describe a person, place, thing, or idea in detail, you must use adjectives. French adjectives always agree in gender (masculine or feminine) and number (singular or plural) with the nouns or pronouns they modify. In other words, all the words in a French sentence must match:

Her father is happy. 
Son père est content.

Her mother is happy. Sa mère est contente.

Fortunately, many adjectives follow the same, or almost the same, rules for gender and plural formation as the nouns you've studied in Chapter 6.

Gender of Adjectives

With most adjectives, you form the feminine by simply adding an e to the masculine form, as shown in Table 9.6. You will notice that a pronunciation change occurs when an e is added after a consonant. That consonant, which was silent in the masculine, is now pronounced in the feminine form. When the e is added after a vowel, there is no change in pronunciation.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>âgé</td>
<td>âgéâée</td>
<td>old, aged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>américain</td>
<td>américaine</td>
<td>American</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amusant</td>
<td>amusante</td>
<td>amusing, fun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bleu</td>
<td>bleue</td>
<td>blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blond</td>
<td>blonde</td>
<td>blond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charment</td>
<td>charmente</td>
<td>charming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>content</td>
<td>contente</td>
<td>glad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>court</td>
<td>courte</td>
<td>short</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dévoué</td>
<td>dévouée</td>
<td>devoted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>élégant</td>
<td>élégante</td>
<td>elegant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fatigué</td>
<td>fatiguée</td>
<td>tired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fort</td>
<td>forte</td>
<td>strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>français</td>
<td>française</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grand</td>
<td>grande</td>
<td>big</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haut</td>
<td>haute</td>
<td>tall, big</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intelligent</td>
<td>intelligente</td>
<td>an-teh-llee-zhahNt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intéressant</td>
<td>intéressante</td>
<td>an-tay-reh-sahNt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>joli</td>
<td>jolie</td>
<td>pretty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lourd</td>
<td>lourde</td>
<td>heavy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occupé</td>
<td>occupée</td>
<td>busy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ouvert</td>
<td>ouverte</td>
<td>open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parfait</td>
<td>parfaite</td>
<td>perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>petit</td>
<td>petite</td>
<td>small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poli</td>
<td>polie</td>
<td>polite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prochain</td>
<td>prochaine</td>
<td>next</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>situé</td>
<td>située</td>
<td>situated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If an adjective already ends in an \(e\), it is not necessary to make any changes at all. Both the masculine and feminine forms are spelled and pronounced exactly the same (see the adjectives in Chapter 3, pages 27–29).
célèbre (say-lehbr) famous malade (mah-lahd) sick
célibataire (say-lee-bah-tehr) single mince (maNs) thin
chauve (shov) bald moderne (moh-dehrn) modern
comique (koh-meek) comical pauvre (pohvr) poor
drôle (drohl) funny propre (prohpr) clean
facile (fah-seel) easy sale (sahl) dirty
faible (fehbl) weak splendide (splahN-deed)
formidable (fohr-mee-dahbl) great sympathique (saN-pah-teek) nice
honnête (oh-neht) honest triste (treest) sad
maigre (mehgr) thin vide (veed) empty

If a masculine adjective ends in $x$, the feminine is formed by changing $x$ to $se$, which gives the feminine ending a $z$ sound, as seen in Table 9.7.

**Table 9.7 Adjectives Ending in eux and euse**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>affectueux</td>
<td>affectueuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ambitieux</td>
<td>ambitieuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>courageux</td>
<td>courageuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curieux</td>
<td>curieuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangereux</td>
<td>dangereuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>délicieux</td>
<td>délicieuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furieux</td>
<td>furieuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>généreux</td>
<td>généreuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heureux (happy)</td>
<td>heureuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malheureux (unhappy)</td>
<td>malheureuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paresseux (lazy)</td>
<td>paresseuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sérieux</td>
<td>sérieuse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If a masculine adjective ends in $f$, the feminine is formed by changing $f$ to $ve$. See Table 9.8 for pronunciation changes.
Table 9.8 Adjectives Ending in f and ve

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>actif</td>
<td>ahk-teef</td>
<td>active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attentif</td>
<td>ah-tahN-teef</td>
<td>attentive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imaginatif</td>
<td>ee-mah-zhee-nah-teef</td>
<td>imaginative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impulsif</td>
<td>aN-pewl-seef</td>
<td>impulsive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intuitif</td>
<td>aN-tew-ee-teef</td>
<td>intuitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naIf</td>
<td>nah-eef</td>
<td>naïve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neuf (new)</td>
<td>nuhf</td>
<td>neuve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sportif</td>
<td>spohr-teef</td>
<td>sportive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vif lively</td>
<td>veef</td>
<td>vive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If a masculine adjective ends in *er*, the feminine is formed by changing *er* to *ère*, as shown in Table 9.9.

Table 9.9 Adjectives Ending in er and ère

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cher</td>
<td>shehr</td>
<td>chère</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dernier</td>
<td>dehr-nyay</td>
<td>dernière</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entier</td>
<td>ahN-tyay</td>
<td>entière</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>étranger</td>
<td>ay-trahN-zhay</td>
<td>étrangère</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fier</td>
<td>fyehr</td>
<td>fière</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>léger</td>
<td>lay-zhay</td>
<td>légère</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>premier</td>
<td>pruh-myay</td>
<td>première</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some masculine adjectives double the final consonant and then add *e* to form the feminine, as shown in Table 9.10.

Table 9.10 Adjectives that Double Their Consonants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ancien</td>
<td>ahN-syaN</td>
<td>ancienne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bas</td>
<td>bah</td>
<td>basse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(table continued on next page)
(table continued from previous page)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bon</td>
<td>bohN</td>
<td>bonne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>européen</td>
<td>ew-roh-pay-aN</td>
<td>européenne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gentil</td>
<td>zhahN-tee-y</td>
<td>gentille</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gros</td>
<td>gro</td>
<td>grosse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mignon</td>
<td>mee-nyohN</td>
<td>mignonne</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Finally, the adjectives in Table 9.11 list irregular feminine forms that must be memorized.

**Table 9.11 Irregular Adjectives**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beau*</td>
<td>bo</td>
<td>belle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blanc</td>
<td>blahN</td>
<td>blanche</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complet</td>
<td>kohN-pleh</td>
<td>complète</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doux</td>
<td>doo</td>
<td>douce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faux</td>
<td>fo</td>
<td>fausse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>favori</td>
<td>fah-voh-ree</td>
<td>favorite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frais</td>
<td>freh</td>
<td>fraîche</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td>lohN</td>
<td>longue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nouveau*</td>
<td>noo-vo</td>
<td>nouvelle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vieux*</td>
<td>vyuh</td>
<td>vieille</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The French use special forms: bel, nouvel, and vieil before masculine nouns beginning with a vowel or vowel sound to prevent a clash between two pronounced vowel sounds. This allows the language to flow.*

un bel appartement       un nouvel appartement       un vieil appartement

If the adjective comes **after** the noun, then the regular masculine form is used:

L'appartement est beau.       L'appartement est nouveau.       L'appartement est vieux.
More Than One? What Are They Like?

Perhaps you'd like to describe a physical or personality trait that is common to more than one of your family members. This is now a relatively simple task to perform because adjectives are often made plural in the same way as the nouns you've already studied.

The plural of most adjectives is formed by adding an unpronounced s to the singular form:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>timide</td>
<td>timide(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charmant(e)</td>
<td>charmant(e)s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>joli(e)</td>
<td>joli(e)s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fatigué(e)</td>
<td>fatigué(e)s</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If an adjective ends in s or x, it is unnecessary to add the s:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>exquis</td>
<td>exquis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heureux</td>
<td>heureux</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Most masculine singular adjectives ending in al change al to aux in the plural:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>spécial</td>
<td>spéciaux</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For the irregular, masculine, singular adjectives *beau*, *nouveau*, and *vieux*, the problem of having two conflicting vowel sounds (one at the end of the adjective and the other at the beginning of the noun that follows) is eliminated by adding an *s* or an *x* when the plural is formed. This eliminates the need for a plural form for the special masculine singular.
adjectives *bel, nouvel, and vieil* that are used only before nouns beginning with a vowel or a vowel sound. Note the plural formation for these masculine adjectives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beau</td>
<td>beaux</td>
<td>de beaux films</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bel</td>
<td>beaux</td>
<td>de beaux appartements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nouveau</td>
<td>nouveaux</td>
<td>de nouveaux films</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nouvel</td>
<td>nouveaux</td>
<td>de nouveaux appartements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vieux</td>
<td>vieux</td>
<td>de vieux films</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vieil</td>
<td>vieux</td>
<td>de vieux appartements</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What's Your Position?**

In French, most adjectives are placed after the nouns they modify. Compare this with English, where we do the opposite:

```
un homme intéressant        an interesting man
```

Adjectives showing:

**BEAUTY:** beau, joli

**AGE:** jeune, nouveau, vieux

**GOODNESS** (or lack of it): bon, gentil, mauvais, vilain

**SIZE:** grand, petit, court, long, gros, large

generally precede the nouns they modify. Remember **BAGS,** and you'll have no trouble with these adjectives:

- un beau garçon: a handsome boy
- une large avenue: a wide avenue
Complete the Descriptions

How would you describe the Eiffel Tower, the car of your dreams, the mayor of your city? Here's an opportunity to give your opinions about certain things by using appropriate adjectives. Complete your descriptions carefully using the rules you've learned.

1. La Tour Eiffel est une ____ tour____
2. Les film français sont de____ films____
3. Le président des États-Unis est un _____ homme ______
4. Les boutiques parisiennes sont de _____ boutiques ______
5. Le musée du Louvre est un_____ musée _____

**Personal Ads**

Read the following personal ads taken from a few French magazines and newspapers. Describe the person writing the ad and the type of person being sought.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Personal Ad</th>
<th>Advertiser Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FRANÇAIS, 26 ans, plein de charme, romantique et cultivé aimerait rencontrer Jeune Française pour sorties sympa-thiques</td>
<td>27 ANS, excellent situation de dentiste, célibataire, BC:BG, il est dynamique et sympa, il est sentimental, il voudrait faire connaissance d'une J.F. tendre en vue de relations sérieuses et durables.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The Least You Need to Know**

- There is no 's in French. To show possession use the following formula: thing possessed + de + possessor.
- To show possession using an adjective, the adjective must agree with the person or thing possessed, not with the possessor.
- *Avoir* is an important irregular verb that expresses not only physical conditions, but also luck, intention, and opportunity.
- Adjectives agree in number and gender with the nouns they describe.
- Many adjectives follow the same rules for gender and plural formation as nouns.
- Irregularities must be memorized.
Chapter 10
Finally, You're at the Airport

In This Chapter

- What you need to know about airplanes and airports
- All about aller (to go)
- Giving and receiving directions
- What to say if you don't understand something

Congratulations! You've planned a trip, you've gotten on the plane, and you've had a very pleasant conversation with the person sitting next to you. You've gotten the names of some good restaurants, places you want to be sure to visit, and perhaps the phone number of someone to call who will show you around town.

Your plane hasn't even landed yet, but you are mentally preparing for all the things you'll have to do before you even start off for your hotel: you must get your bags, go through customs, change some money, and find a means of transportation to get to your hotel. By the end of this chapter, you'll have accomplished these things and more.
The Plain Plane

A plane ride is often long and tedious. Sometimes you might experience some minor inconveniences or delays. During your trip, you might want to see about changing your seat, or perhaps you have some questions for the flight crew. Maybe they’ve stuck you in the smoking section, and you’re a militant nonsmoker; or your traveling companion is seated a few rows in front of you, and you’d like to join him or her; or perhaps you’d simply like to ask the crew about takeoff and landing. The words and phrases in Table 10.1 will help you get information and solve simple problems you may encounter on board.

### Cultural Tidbits

When your flight finally does arrive at the airport, you’ll see the sign **Bienvenue (Welcome)**. If a friend or relative is there to greet you, expect to hear them wish you welcome by saying *Bienvenue*. A more formal greeting is:

- **Soyez le bienvenue** (addressed to one male)
- **Soyez la bienvenue** (addressed to one female)
- **Soyez les bienvenus** (addressed to more than one male or a mixed group of males and females)
- **Soyez les bienvenues** (addressed to more than one female)

### Table 10.1 Inside the Plane

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>airline</td>
<td>la ligne aérienne</td>
<td><em>lah lee-nyuh ahy-ryehn</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airline terminal</td>
<td>l'aérogare (f.), le terminal</td>
<td><em>lahy-roh-gahr, luh tehr-mee-nahl</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airplane</td>
<td>l'avion (m.)</td>
<td><em>lah-vyohN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airport</td>
<td>l'aéroport</td>
<td><em>lahy-roh-pohr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aisle</td>
<td>le couloir</td>
<td><em>luh kool-wahr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the aisle</td>
<td>côté couloir</td>
<td><em>koh-tay kool-wahr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>board, embark</td>
<td>embarquer</td>
<td><em>ahN-bahr-kay</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crew</td>
<td>l'équipage (m.)</td>
<td><em>lay-kee-pahzh</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deboard, disembark, exit</td>
<td>débarquer</td>
<td><em>day-bahr-kay</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emergency exit</td>
<td>la sortie (l'issue) de secours</td>
<td><em>lah sohr-tee (lee-sew) duh suh-koor</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gate</td>
<td>la porte</td>
<td><em>lah pohrt</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(*table continued on next page*)
Airline Advice

If you've flown before, you know that airlines always have instructions about boarding, safety, and emergency procedures. Once on board, you will find an emergency card in your seat pocket, and your flight attendant will demonstrate any number of devices, from seat belts to oxygen masks. Read the following information to see if you can decipher the information the airline is trying to convey:

En cabine…

Pour votre confort et votre sécurité, n'emportez avec vous qu'un seul bagage de cabine.

N'y placez pas d'objets considérés comme dangereux (armes, couteaux, ciseaux, etc.). Ils seront retirés lors des contrôles de sécurité.

What advice are they giving about your bags?

En soute… (In the hold…)

Choisissez des bagages solides, fermant à clé. Fixez à l'intérieur et à l'extérieur une étiquette d'identification. Évitez les articles suivants: médicaments, devises (securities), chèques, papiers d'affaires ou importants, bijoux et autres objets de valeur. Conservez-les avec vous en cabine.

On the Inside

There is a lot to do after you are inside the airport, but don't worry—there will be plenty of signs to point you in the right direction. Sometimes it's hard to judge where to go first. My first stop is usually the bathroom. After that, I slowly progress from one area to the next, taking care of all my business at a slow and steady pace. Table 10.2 will give you all the words you'll need to know after you're in the airport as well as outside on the way to your first destination!
Table 10.2 Inside the Airport

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arrival</td>
<td>l'arrivée</td>
<td>lah-ree-vay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baggage claim area</td>
<td>la bande, les bagages (m.)</td>
<td>lah bahnde, lay bah-gahzh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bathrooms</td>
<td>les toilettes (f.)</td>
<td>lay twah-leht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bus stop</td>
<td>l'arrêt de bus</td>
<td>lah-reh duh bews</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>car rental</td>
<td>la location de voitures</td>
<td>lah loh-kah-syohN duh vwah-tewr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry-on luggage</td>
<td>les bagages à main</td>
<td>lay-bah-gahzh ah maN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cart</td>
<td>le chariot</td>
<td>luh shah-ryoh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>departure</td>
<td>le départ</td>
<td>luh day-pahr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>destination</td>
<td>la destination</td>
<td>lah dehs-tee-nah-syohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elevators</td>
<td>les ascenseurs (m.)</td>
<td>lay-zah-sahN-suhr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entrance</td>
<td>l'entrée</td>
<td>lahn-tray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exit</td>
<td>la sortie</td>
<td>luh-sohr-tee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flight</td>
<td>le vol</td>
<td>luh vohl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>information</td>
<td>les renseignements (m.)</td>
<td>lay rahN-seh-nyuh-mahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lost and found</td>
<td>les objets trouvés</td>
<td>lay zohb-zheh troo-vay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miss the flight</td>
<td>manquer (rater) le vol</td>
<td>mahn-kay (rah-tay) luh vohl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money exchange</td>
<td>le bureau de change</td>
<td>luh bew-ro duh shahNzh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passport control</td>
<td>le contrôle des passeports</td>
<td>luh kohN-trohl day pahs-pohr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>porter</td>
<td>le porteur</td>
<td>luh pohr-tuhr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>security check</td>
<td>le contrôle de sécurité</td>
<td>luh kohN-trohl duh say-kew-ree-tay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop-over</td>
<td>l'escale</td>
<td>lehs-kahl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suitcase</td>
<td>la valise</td>
<td>luh vah-leez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taxis</td>
<td>les taxis</td>
<td>lay tahk-see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ticket</td>
<td>le billet, le ticket</td>
<td>luh bee-ye, luh tee-keh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Signs Everywhere**

With airport security at a maximum today due to terrorist threats and bomb scares, you can be sure that you will see many signs indicating the rules and procedures that must be followed. It is very important that you understand what you may and may not do. Even if you break a rule unintentionally, it can be scary to be approached by a *gendarme* speaking...
a language in which you have limited fluency. Following are the signs you can expect to see in Charles de Gaulle airport. Read them carefully and then match each sign with the information it gives you:

Which sign is telling you that:

1. If you leave something behind, it might be destroyed
2. All of your baggage will be checked, even carry-ons
3. You can be searched for hidden weapons
4. You may carry a weapon if you declare it
5. You can only use the baggage cart within the airport
6. You shouldn't carry a suitcase for someone else
**Going, Going, Gone**

It's easy to get lost in sprawling international airports. To get yourself back on track, you'll need to know how to ask the right questions. One of the verbs you'll use a lot is *aller* (to go), an irregular verb that must be memorized (see Table 10.3 for conjugation).

**Table 10.3 The Verb aller (to go)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I go</td>
<td>je vais</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you go</td>
<td>tu vas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he, she, one goes</td>
<td>il, elle, on va</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we go</td>
<td>nous allons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you go</td>
<td>vous allez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they go</td>
<td>ils, elles vont</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Can You Tell Me How to Get to…?**

If the airport is unfamiliar to you, you may need to ask for directions. This is relatively easy to do. There are two different ways of asking:

- **Où est le comptoir?**
  - Le comptoir, s'il vous plaît.  
  - *luh kohN-twahr seel voo pleh.*
  - The counter, please.

- **Où sont les bagages?**
  - Les bagages, s'il vous plaît.  
  - *lay bah-gahzh seel voo pleh.*
  - The baggage claim, please.

**So That's Where It Is**

Sometimes, the place you are trying to find is right in front of you. For instance, suppose that you're trying to locate the ticket counter. With all the noise and confusion, you lose your bearings, and you don't realize that you are standing near the very place you are trying to find. When you ask the gentlemen next to you for directions, he may reply:
Voici le comptoir.
vwah-see luh kohN-twahr.
Here is the counter.

Voilà le comptoir.
vwah-lah luh kohN-twahr.
There is the counter.
**Giving and Receiving More Complicated Directions**

If the place you want to get to is not within pointing distance, you'll need other directions. The verbs in Table 10.4 will be very helpful in getting you where you want to go or perhaps in helping someone else who is lost.

**Table 10.4 Verbs Giving Directions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aller</td>
<td>ah-lay</td>
<td>to go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continuer</td>
<td>kohn-tee-new-ay</td>
<td>to continue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>descendre</td>
<td>day-sahNdr</td>
<td>to go down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marcher</td>
<td>mahr-shay</td>
<td>to walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monter</td>
<td>mohN-tay</td>
<td>to go up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passer</td>
<td>pah-say</td>
<td>to pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prendre</td>
<td>prahNdr</td>
<td>to take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tourner</td>
<td>toor-nay</td>
<td>to turn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traverser</td>
<td>trah-vehr-say</td>
<td>to cross</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**As a Rule**

For er verbs only, drop the final s from the tu form in all commands.

When someone directs you to a location, that person is giving you a command. The subject of a command is understood to be you since you are being told where to go or what to do. Because there are two ways to say you in French (the familiar tu and the polite, and always plural, vous), there are two different command forms. Choose the form that best suits the situation. To form commands, simply drop the tu or vous subject pronoun:

**Pitfall**

Two verbs that have very irregular command forms are être and avoir. Although they are used infrequently, you should memorize them:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tu form</th>
<th>être</th>
<th>avoir</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sois</td>
<td>Aie!</td>
<td>aye!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swah</td>
<td>ay</td>
<td>have!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vous form</th>
<th>Söylez!</th>
<th>Ayez.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>swal-yay</td>
<td>aiy-yay</td>
<td>have!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Using Commands

Imagine for a moment that, in Orly Airport, a Hungarian tourist approaches and asks you for directions. He doesn't speak English and you don't know a word of Hungarian. Fortunately, you both bought Idiot's Guides and know a little French. Help the poor lost Hungarian man by practicing your
commands. Complete Table 10.5 by filling in the missing command forms and their meanings.

**Table 10.5 Command Forms**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Tu</th>
<th>Vous</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aller</td>
<td>Va!</td>
<td>Allez!</td>
<td>Go!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continuer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>descendre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marcher</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prendre (Chapter 11)</td>
<td>Prends!</td>
<td>Prenez!</td>
<td>Take!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tourner</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traverser</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Prepositions**

As a Rule

To be very polite, use veuillez + infinitive to say please:

*Veuillez entrer.* (vuhy-ay ahN-tray.) Please enter.

Prepositions are used to show the relation of a noun to another word in a sentence. Refresh your memory with the idiomatic expressions for direction and location in Chapter 4 that are, in fact, prepositional phrases. Then add these simple prepositions in Table 10.6 that might also be useful for giving or receiving directions.

**Table 10.6 Prepositions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>à</td>
<td>ah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>après</td>
<td>ah-preh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avant</td>
<td>ah-vahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chez</td>
<td>shay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contre</td>
<td>kohNtr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dans</td>
<td>dahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de</td>
<td>duh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>derrière</td>
<td>deh-ryehr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devant</td>
<td>duh-vahN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(table continued on next page)
Contractions

In certain cases, contractions form with the prepositions à and de, whether they are used alone or as part of a longer expression:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Le</th>
<th>Les</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>à</td>
<td>au</td>
<td>aux</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de</td>
<td>du</td>
<td>des</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Allez à la douane.  
La porte est à côté de la douane.

Allez à l'entrée.  
La porte est à côté de l'entrée.

BUT

Allez au bureau de change.  
La porte est à côté du bureau de change.

Allez aux bagages.  
La porte est à côté des bagages.

As a Rule
There are no contractions with la and l’. 
Are You Dazed and Confused?

What if someone gives you directions, and you don't understand? Perhaps the person to whom you are speaking is mumbling, speaking too fast, has a strong accent, or uses words you don't know. Don't be embarrassed. Ask for help in a kind, polite manner. You'll find the phrases in Table 10.7 to be an invaluable aid if you need to have something repeated or if you need more information.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Excusez (Excuse)-moi</td>
<td>ehk-skew-zay (ehk-skewz) mwah</td>
<td>Excuse me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pardon</td>
<td>pahr-dohN</td>
<td>Pardon me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Je ne comprends pas</td>
<td>zhuh nuh kohN-prahN pah</td>
<td>I don't understand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Je ne vous (t') ai pas entendu.</td>
<td>zhuh nuh voo zay (tay) pah zahN-tahN-dew</td>
<td>I didn't hear you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Répétez (Rèpète), s'il vous (te) plaÎt</td>
<td>ray-pay-tay (ray-peht)seel voo (tuh) pleh</td>
<td>Please repeat it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parlez (Parle) plus lentement.</td>
<td>pahr-lay (pahrl) plew lahNt-mahN</td>
<td>Speak more slowly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qu'est-ce que vous avez (tu as) dit?</td>
<td>kehs-kuh voo zah-vay (tew ah) dee?</td>
<td>What did you say?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Cultural Tidbits**

It always pays to know the word for *thank you!* After getting directions from a French-speaking person, you may respond with a simple *merci* (mehr-see), which means *thank you*. If you are feeling profoundly grateful, you may wish to say *merci beaucoup*, meaning *thank you very much*. In either case, the person will likely respond *Je vous en prie* (zhuh voo zahN pree), which means *not at all*. (This phrase may also mean *Please* or *Please do*). Another possible reply is *De rien* (daht ryaN), which simply means *You're welcome*.

**Get There!**

You've been invited to spend your vacation in Canada at a friend's house. You've got all your bags and you're ready to leave the airport now. You take out the directions he gave you to his house and realize they are in French! Trace the correct route and then put an X on the map where his house should be.

The Least You Need to Know

• The irregular verb aller is used to give directions and to speak about health and well-being.

• There are a few verbs that are tremendously useful in giving and taking directions: aller (to go), continuer, descendre, marcher, monter, passer, prendre (to take), tourner, and traverser (to cross).

• Leave out the subject (tu or vous) when you give a command.
You'll probably find that it's far less painful and far more time-consuming than you thought to get through customs, find your bags, and change some money into francs. If you're lucky, you will have transfers (transportation provided as part of your travel package) to your hotel and someone waiting to whisk you away. If not, then you must figure out on your own how you are going to get to the hotel. This chapter discusses your options.
Planes, Trains, and Automobiles

From the airport, there are several different means of transportation that can get you to your hotel: bus, subway, train, taxi, or car. To make the decision that is right for you, keep the following considerations in mind: Do you really want to carry your bags on a bus or the subway? (Remember what you packed!) Although taxis are fast and efficient, they are costly. Do you feel up to renting a car in a foreign country where you are unfamiliar with the traffic laws and street signs? Think carefully before you make a choice.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>l'auto (f.)</td>
<td>lo-to</td>
<td>car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la voiture</td>
<td>lah vwaht-tewr</td>
<td>car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le taxi</td>
<td>le tahk-see</td>
<td>taxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le bus (l'autobus)</td>
<td>le bews (loh-toh-bews)</td>
<td>bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le train</td>
<td>luh traN</td>
<td>train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le métro</td>
<td>luh may-tro</td>
<td>subway</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Taking the Best Means of Transportation

However you decide to get where you are going, you will need to use the irregular verb prendre (prahNdr) (to take) to express which mode of transportation you have chosen. Prendre is a tricky verb: all singular forms end in a nasal sound, but the third person plural, ils/elles, is pronounced quite differently. The double ns eliminate the need for an initial nasal sound and give the first e a more open sound. Pay close attention to Table 11.1.
Table 11.1 The Verb prendre (to take)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je pren</td>
<td>zhuh prahN</td>
<td>I take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu pren</td>
<td>tew prahN</td>
<td>you take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on pren</td>
<td>eel (ehl) (ohN) prahN</td>
<td>he, she, one takes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous prenons</td>
<td>noo pruh-nohN</td>
<td>we take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous prenez</td>
<td>voo pruh-nay</td>
<td>you take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles prennent</td>
<td>eel (ehl) prehn</td>
<td>they take</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you've done your homework well, you should be able to tell someone which means of transportation you use to get to the following places: work and/or school, the supermarket, the nearest department store, downtown, a neighboring city.

**Something New**

Travelers interested in visiting from England and Belgium may now make use of the Chunnel. Although you can't drive through these new tunnels, *Le Shuttle* carries freight and cars with passengers (up to 180 vehicles) between Folkestone, England and Calais, France. Just drive a car onto a train at one end and drive off at the other—in just 35 minutes. Service is available 24 hours a day, and at peak times, trains depart every 15 minutes. No reservations are accepted, so drivers will be accommodated on a first-come, first-served basis. Drivers pay a charge per car, regardless of the number of occupants.

The other Chunnel service, *Eurostar*, carries only passengers (each train carries 800 people) and provides through service from London to Paris and London to Brussels.

**Which Do You Prefer?**

When you ask questions about the mode of transportation you've chosen, you'll use the interrogative adjective *quel* (which, what). Just like all adjectives, *which* agrees with the noun it modifies. Table 11.2 shows you how easy it is to make a match between the correct form of *quel* (keeping gender and number in mind) and the noun that follows it.

Table 11.2 The Possessive Adjective quel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>quel</td>
<td>quelle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>quels</td>
<td>quelles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
As a Rule
The only verb that may separate quel from its noun is the verb être:

Quel est votre (ton) nom?
kehl ih vohtr (tohN) nohn?
What's your name?

Quelle est votre (ton) adresse?
kehl ih vohtr (tohN) ah-ah-drehs?
What's your address?

Be prepared for questions like these:

Quel bus est-ce que vous prenez (tu prends)?

kehl bews ehs-kuh vous pruh-nay (tew prahN)

Which bus are you taking?

Quelle marque de voiture est-ce vous louez (tu loues)?

kehl mahrk duh vwah-tewr ehs-kuh voo loo-ay (tew loo)

What make of car are you renting?

Using quel

Did you ever have a conversation with a friend who rambles on and on about a fabulous film she's just seen, but never mentions the title? You're about ready to explode from frustration when she finally decides to come up for air. You grab your chance and quickly interject: Which film? Here are some typical answers that don't give enough information. Pursue your line of questioning by using quel:

J'aime le film. Quel film?

Je prends le train. Je loue une voiture.

Je aime la couleur. Je cherche de bonnes cassettes.

J'achète(buy) les jolies blouses. Je regarde le match.

Je lis (read) de bons journaux. Je prépare des plats délicieux.

Fill 'er Up

If you are adventurous, you might want to rent a car at une location de voitures. Check out rates of a few car rentals before you make a decision because rates vary from agency to agency. Keep in mind that gasoline is very expensive in most foreign countries, usually more than double the price Americans generally pay. Familiarize yourself with all driving and traffic laws. The following phrases are very useful when renting a car:
Je voudrais louer une (give make of car).

I would like to rent a ________.
Je préfère la transmission automatique.
zhuh pray-fehr lah tranhz-mee-syoN o-toh-mah-teek.
I prefer automatic transmission.

Quel est le tarif à la journée (à la semaine) (au kilomètre)?
kehl eh luh tah-ref ah lah zhoor-nay (ah la suh-mehN) (o kee-lo-mehtr)?
How much does it cost per day (per week) (per kilometer)?

Quel est le montant de l'assurance?
kehl eh luh mohn-tahN duh lah-sew-rahNs?
How much is the insurance?

Le carburant est compris?
luh kahr-bew-rahN eh kohN-pree?
Is the gas included?

Acceptez-vous des cartes de crédit? Lesquelles?
akh-sehp-tay voo day kahrt duh kray-dee? lay-kehl?
Do you accept credit cards? Which ones?

If you've decided to rent a car, take a tip from me: Carefully inspect the car—inside and out—because you never know what might go wrong after you're on the road. Make sure there is un cric (uhN kreek) a jack and un pneu de secours (uhN pnuh duh suh-koor) a spare tire in the trunk.

**Outside the Car**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>la batterie</td>
<td>la bah-tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la poignée</td>
<td>la pwah-nyay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le carburateur</td>
<td>luh kahr-bew-rah-tuhr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le coffre</td>
<td>luh kohfr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le phare</td>
<td>luh fahr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le moteur</td>
<td>luh moh-tuhr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le pare-choc</td>
<td>luh pahr-shohk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'essuie-glace (m.)</td>
<td>leh-swee glahs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le capot</td>
<td>luh kah-po</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le radiateur</td>
<td>luh rahd-yah-tuhr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le feu arrière</td>
<td>luh fuh ah-ryehr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la transmission</td>
<td>lah trahNz-mee-syoN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le ventilateur</td>
<td>luh vahN-tee-lah-tuhr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le réservoir à essence</td>
<td>luh ray-sehr-vwahr ah eh-sahNs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
l'aile
le fender
la plaque d'immatriculation
license plate
le pneu
tire
la roue
wheel

**Inside the Car**

l'accélérateur (m.)
accelerator
le clignotant
directional signal
le changement de vitesses
gear shift
le klaxon
horn
l'allumage
ignition
la radio
radio
le volant
steering wheel
les freins (m.)
brakes
la pédale d'embrayage
clutch pedal
la boîte à gants
glove compartment
le frein à main
hand brake
le coussin (sac) gonflable
air bag
le freinage anti-blocage
antilock brake system

In Europe, distance is measured by kilometers. Refer to Table 11.4 for the approximate equivalents.

**Table 11.4 Distance Measures (Approximate)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Miles</th>
<th>Kilometers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Point Me in the Right Direction

By all means, learn those road signs—some of them are not as obvious as they should be. It took a one-week vacation and a near accident in Saint-Martin for me to figure out that the sign with a horizontal line through it meant NO ENTRY. Here are some road signs you need to be familiar with before you venture out on your own in a car.

My husband and I were driving along when all of a sudden we came to a fork in the road. I screamed, “Quick, go this way!” Unfortunately, he went “that” way. Maybe next time I’ll remember to tell him whether to go east or west, north or south. If you plan on driving, make sure to know your compass directions. They’re all masculine.

au nord

à l’est

au sud

à l’ouest

o nohr

ah lehst

o sewd

ah lwehst

to the north

to the east

to the south

to the west
How Much Is It?

Table 11.5 Cardinal Numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zéro</td>
<td>zay-ro</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>un</td>
<td>uhN</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deux</td>
<td>duh</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trois</td>
<td>trwah</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quatre</td>
<td>kahrtr</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cinq</td>
<td>saNk</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>six</td>
<td>sees</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sept</td>
<td>seht</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huit</td>
<td>weet</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neuf</td>
<td>nuhf</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dix</td>
<td>dees</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onze</td>
<td>ohNz</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>douze</td>
<td>dooz</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>treize</td>
<td>trehz</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quatorze</td>
<td>kahr-tohrz</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quinze</td>
<td>kaNz</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seize</td>
<td>sehz</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dix-sept</td>
<td>dee-seht</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dix-huit</td>
<td>dee-zweet</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dix-neuf</td>
<td>dee-znuhf</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vingt</td>
<td>vaN</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vingt et un</td>
<td>vaN tav uhN</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vingt-deux</td>
<td>vaN-duh</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trente</td>
<td>trahNt</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(table continued on next page)*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quarante</td>
<td>kah-rahNt</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cinquante</td>
<td>saN-kahNt</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soixante</td>
<td>swah-sahNt</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soixante-dix</td>
<td>swah-sahNt-dees</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soixante et onze</td>
<td>swah-sahNt ay ohNz</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soixante-douze</td>
<td>swah-sahNt-dooz</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soixante-treize</td>
<td>swah-sahNt-trehz</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soixante-quatorze</td>
<td>swah-sahNt-kah-tohrz</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soixante-quinze</td>
<td>swah-sahNt-kaNz</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soixante-seize</td>
<td>swah-sahNt-sehz</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soixante-dix-sept</td>
<td>swah-sahNt-dee-seht</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soixante-dix-huit</td>
<td>swah-sahNt-dee-zweet</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soixante-dix-neuf</td>
<td>swah-sahNt-dee-znuf</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quatre-vingts</td>
<td>kahr-vaN</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quatre-vingt-un</td>
<td>kahr-vaN-uhN</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quatre-vingt-deux</td>
<td>kahr-vaN-duh</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quatre-vingt-dix</td>
<td>kahr-vaN-dees</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quatre-vingt-onze</td>
<td>kahr-vaN-onze</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quatre-vingt-douze</td>
<td>kahr-vaN-dooz</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cent</td>
<td>sahN</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cent un</td>
<td>sahN uhN</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deux cents</td>
<td>duh sahN</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deux cent un</td>
<td>duh sahN uhN</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mille</td>
<td>meel</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deux mille</td>
<td>duh meel</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>un million</td>
<td>uhN meel-yohN</td>
<td>1,000,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deux millions</td>
<td>duh meel-yohN</td>
<td>2,000,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>un milliard</td>
<td>uhN meel-yahr</td>
<td>1,000,000,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deux milliards</td>
<td>duh meel-yahr</td>
<td>2,000,000,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When numbers are used before plural nouns beginning with a vowel, the pronunciation of the numbers changes to allow for elision:
### Before a Consonant

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>deux jours (duh zhoor)</td>
<td>deux oncles (duh zohNkl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trois cartes (trwah kahrt)</td>
<td>trois opinions (trwah zoh-pee-nyohN)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quatre valises (kaht vah-leez)</td>
<td>quatre hôtels (kaht ro-tehl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cinq dollars (saN doh-lahr)</td>
<td>cinq années (saN kah-nay)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>six femmes (see fahm)</td>
<td>six hommes (see zohm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sept francs (seht frahN)</td>
<td>sept heures (seh tuhr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huit mois (wee mwah)</td>
<td>huit enfants (wee tahN-fahN)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neuf billets (nuhf bee-yeh)</td>
<td>neuf artistes (nuh fahr-teest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dix personnes (dee pehr-sohn)</td>
<td>dix ans (dee zahN)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Cultural Tidbits

The French write the number one with a little hook on top. In order to distinguish a 1 from the number 7, they put a line through the 7 when they write it: 7.

In numerals and decimals, where we use commas the French use periods and vice versa:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>1.000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.25</td>
<td>0,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$9.95</td>
<td>$9,95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

French numbers are a little tricky until you get used to them. Look carefully at Table 11.5 and pay special attention to the following:

- The conjunction *et* (and) is used only for the numbers 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, and 71. Use a hyphen in all other compound numbers through 99.

- *Un* becomes *une* before a feminine noun:

  *vingt et un hommes et vingt et une femmes*

- To form 71–79, use 60 + 11, 12, 13, and so on.

- To form 91–99, use 80 (4 20s) + 11, 12, 13, and so on.
• 80 (quatre-vingts) and the plural of cent for any number over 199 drop the s before another number, but not before a noun:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quatre-vingts dollars</td>
<td>80 dollars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quatre-vingt-trois</td>
<td>83 dollars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deus cents dollars</td>
<td>200 dollars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deus cent cinquante</td>
<td>250 dollars</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• Do not use un (one) before cent and mille.

• Mille doesn't change in the plural.

**What's Your Number?**

Parisian phone numbers consist of eight numbers grouped in pairs of two. The regional code for Paris is (1). You must dial this number before the phone number when calling from outside the city. How would you ask the operator for these numbers?

```
45 67 89 77   48 21 15 51    46 16 98 13   43 11 72 94   41 34 80 61  42 85 59 02
```

**What Time Is It?**

Now that you are familiar with French numbers, it will be relatively easy to learn how to tell time, as explained in Table 11.6. A question that you will probably ask or hear asked very often is:

Quelle heure est-il?

*kehl uhr eh-teel?*

What time is it?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time in French (11.6)</th>
<th>French Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Il est une heure.</td>
<td>eel eh tewn nuhr</td>
<td>It is 1:00.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il est deux heures cinq.</td>
<td>eel eh duh zuhr saNk</td>
<td>It is 2:05.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il est trois heures dix.</td>
<td>eel eh trwah zuhr dees</td>
<td>It is 3:10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il est quatre heures et quart.</td>
<td>eel eh kahr uhr ay kahr</td>
<td>It is 4:15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il est cinq heures vingt.</td>
<td>eel eh saN kuhr vaN</td>
<td>It is 5:20.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il est six heures vingt-cinq</td>
<td>eel eh see zuhr vaN-saNk</td>
<td>It is 6:25.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(table continued on next page)*
Il est sept heures et demie.
It is 7:30.

Il est huit heures moins vingt-cinq.
It is 7:35 (25 minutes to eight).

Il est neuf heures moins vingt.
It is 8:40 (20 minutes to nine).

Il est dix heures moins le quart.
It is 9:45 (a quarter to ten).

Il est onze heures moins dix.
It is 10:50 (10 minutes to eleven).

Il est midi moins cinq.
It is 11:55 (5 minutes to noon).

Il est minuit.
It is midnight.

• To express the time after the hour, the number of minutes is simply added; use et only with quart et demi(e).

• To express time before the hour, use moins le (before, less, minus).

• To express half past noon or midnight, use the following:

  Il est midi et demi.

  Il est minuit et demi.

• With all other hours, demie is used to express half past.

It's not just enough to know how to say what time it is—you might want to know at what time an activity is planned or whether it is taking place in the morning, afternoon, or evening. Imagine that you asked someone at what time a play was being presented, and he responded. “Il y a deux heures.” You might mistake this as meaning “at two o’clock” or “there are two hours” which, to you, means you have two hours before the play begins. In fact, you've missed the play because it started two hours ago. The expressions in Table 11.7 will help you deal with time.

Table 11.7 Time Expressions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>une seconde</td>
<td>ewn suh-gohNd</td>
<td>a second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>une minute</td>
<td>ewn mee-newt</td>
<td>a minute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>une heure</td>
<td>ewn nuhr</td>
<td>an hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du matin</td>
<td>dew mah-taN</td>
<td>in the morning (A.M.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(table continued on next page)
The Least You Need to Know

- The irregular verb *prendre* is used when taking transportation.
- *Quel* is an adjective expressing *which*.
- If you plan on renting a car, you'll need to know French numbers and the metric system.
- Tell time easily by giving the hour and the number of minutes past the hour.
Chapter 12
Hooray, You've Made It to the Hotel!

You've successfully chosen a suitable means of transportation to get you where you want to go. Now, as you ride along, you try to get a feel for your new environment. You can hardly wait to get to your hotel so you can unpack and start your glorious vacation. Just as your patience is wearing thin, you catch a glimpse of your hotel in the distance. Your first impression reassures you that you've chosen wisely.

Are you a traveler who is happy with the bare minimum in accommodations? Do you feel that because you won't be spending much time in your room, you'd be wasting money on something that you wouldn't truly enjoy? Perhaps you'd rather spend more money on consumables: food, drink, side trips, and souvenirs. Or, on the other hand, are you someone who prefers the creature comforts of home at the very least and, at most, outright luxury. Do you want it all and expect to be treated royally? In this chapter, you will learn how to get the room and the services you expect from your hotel.
What a Hotel! Does It Have…?

Before leaving home, you will probably want to check with your travel agent or the hotel management to be sure that the hotel you've chosen has the amenities you desire. Depending upon your requirements, you will need to know the words for everything from bathroom to swimming pool. In the 1970s, my husband and I backpacked around Europe with a copy of Arthur Frommer's *Europe on $5 a Day* under our arms. We hadn't made any reservations, so most nights we had to take whatever room we could get. In Paris, we wound up in a small room in the red-light district. The room didn't have its own bathroom, and we were not thrilled with having to share the W.C. down the hall—sometimes the wait was unbearable. Even with reservations, you may end up with some surprises—but it never hurts to ask questions when you are making your arrangements. See Table 12.1 for a basic list of hotel amenities.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hotel Facilities</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bar</td>
<td>le bar</td>
<td><em>luh bahr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>business center</td>
<td>le centre d'affaires</td>
<td><em>luh sahNtr dah-kehr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cashier</td>
<td>la caisse</td>
<td><em>lah kehs</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concierge (caretaker)</td>
<td>le (la) concierge</td>
<td><em>luh (lah) kohN-syehrz</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doorman</td>
<td>le portier</td>
<td><em>luh pohr-tyay</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elevator</td>
<td>l'ascenseur (m.)</td>
<td><em>lah-sahn-suhr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fitness center</td>
<td>le club santé</td>
<td><em>luh klewb sahN-tay</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gift shop</td>
<td>la boutique</td>
<td><em>lah boo-teek</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laundry and dry cleaning service</td>
<td>la blanchisserie</td>
<td><em>lah blahN-shees-ree</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maid service</td>
<td>la gouvernante</td>
<td><em>lah goo-vehr-nahNt</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restaurant</td>
<td>le restaurant</td>
<td><em>luh rehs-toh-rahN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swimming pool</td>
<td>la piscine</td>
<td><em>lah pee-seen</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>valet parking</td>
<td>l'attendance (f.) du garage</td>
<td><em>lah-tahn-dahNs dew gah-rahzh</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When I was planning a trip to Martinique, my travel agent told me about a terrific hotel whose best rooms had balconies facing the ocean. She described the views as breathtaking. Unfortunately, we were not able to confirm a room with a balcony at the time of the reservation, but I figured I’d give it a shot after we arrived. As fate would have it, a travel agent and her large family arrived just as we did. She, too, was eager to trade up to a room with a view. Unfortunately, she was not able to make herself understood to the French-speaking staff. My husband and I, however, were rewarded for our fluency—we got a spectacular room overlooking the ocean! Study Table 12.2 to get a jump on the others, just as we did.

*Table 12.2 Getting What You Want Nicely Furnished*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Description</th>
<th>French Description</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a single (double) room</td>
<td>une chambre à un (deux) lits</td>
<td><em>ewn shahNbr ah uhN (duh) lee</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>air conditioning</td>
<td>la climatisation</td>
<td><em>lah klee-mah-tee-zah-syohN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alarm clock</td>
<td>le réveil</td>
<td><em>luh ray-vehy</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>balcony</td>
<td>le balcon</td>
<td><em>luh bahl-kohN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bathroom (private)</td>
<td>la salle de bains (privée)</td>
<td><em>lah sahl duh baN (pree-vay)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key</td>
<td>la clé (cléf)</td>
<td><em>lah klay (klay)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the courtyard</td>
<td>côté cour</td>
<td><em>koh-tay koor</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the garden</td>
<td>côté jardin</td>
<td><em>koh-tay zhahr-daN</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(table continued on next page)*
Don't you just hate it when your hotel skimps on towels? They often give four small bath towels and expect them to be enough for a couple with two kids. I alone could use three just for myself: hair, top half, and bottom half. Imagine how the rest of my family feels when they're left with my soggy remains! If you need something for your room to make your stay more enjoyable, the following phrases may help you:

- **Je voudrais**  
  *zhuh voo-dreh*  
  I would like

- **Il me faut un (une)(des)**  
  *eel muh foh tuhN (tewn) (day)*  
  I need a (some)

- **J'ai besoin d'un (une)**  
  *zhay buh-zwaN duhN (ewn)*  
  I need a (for plural use de + noun)

Okay. You're all checked in, you've even unpacked, and now you're ready for a nice hot bath. But wait! The housekeeper has forgotten to provide you with any towels at all! Rather than making your sheets do double duty, call the front desk and ask for towels. The management, after all, is there to make sure that your stay is enjoyable. Table 12.3 lists a few things you might need.
Table 12.3 Necessities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>une serviette</td>
<td>a towel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>un drap de bain</td>
<td>a beach towel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>une savonnette</td>
<td>a bar of soap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>des cintres (m.)</td>
<td>hangers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>un oreiller</td>
<td>a pillow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>une couverture</td>
<td>a blanket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>des glaçons (m.)</td>
<td>ice cubes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>un cendrier</td>
<td>an ashtray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de l'eau minérale</td>
<td>mineral water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>un rouleau de papier hygiénique</td>
<td>a roll of toilet paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>des mouchoirs en papier</td>
<td>tissues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>un transformateur</td>
<td>a transformer (an electric adaptor)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Just in Case*

When you check into a hotel room there is usually a sign or two tacked onto the inside of the entry door. These notices often give important information to guests. Read a copy of the sign that I copied off the back of my hotel room door the last time I was in Paris. What did it tell everyone to do?

---

**CONDUITE À TENIR EN CAS D’INCENDIE**

En cas d’incendie dans votre chambre si vous ne pouvez pas maîtriser le feu :
-- Gagnez la sortie en fermant bien la porte de votre chambre et en suivant le balisage (flour lights).
-- Prévenez la réception

En cas d'audition du signal d'alarme :
-- Gagnez la sortie en fermant bien la porte de votre chambre et en suivant le balisage.
-- Si la fumée rend le couloir ou l'escalier impraticable :
Restez dans votre chambre;
Manifestez votre présence à la fenêtre, en attendant l’arrivée des sapeurs-pompiers.
Going to the Top

We've all had an elevator experience where we've felt like a large sardine in a small can. When you're pushed to the back or squished to the side, you have to hope that a kind and gentle soul will wiggle a hand free and ask: *Quel étage, s'il vous plaît* (kehl ay-tahzh see voo pleh)? You will need the ordinal numbers in Table 12.4 to give a correct answer: *Le deuxième étage, s'il vous plaît* (luh duh-zyehm ay-tahzh see voo pleh).

### Table 12.4 Ordinal Numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ordinal Numbers</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English (coinciding with French)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>premier (premire)</td>
<td>pruh-myay (pruh-myehr)</td>
<td>1st</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deuxième (second[e])</td>
<td>duh-zyehm (suh-gohN[d])</td>
<td>2nd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>troisième</td>
<td>trwah-zyehm</td>
<td>3rd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quatrième</td>
<td>kah-tree-yehm</td>
<td>4th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cinquième</td>
<td>saN-kyehm</td>
<td>5th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sixième</td>
<td>see-zyehm</td>
<td>6th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septième</td>
<td>seh-tyehm</td>
<td>7th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huitième</td>
<td>wee-tyehm</td>
<td>8th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neuvième</td>
<td>nuh-vyehm</td>
<td>9th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dixième</td>
<td>dee-zyehm</td>
<td>10th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onzième</td>
<td>ohN-zyehm</td>
<td>11th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>douzième</td>
<td>doo-zyehm</td>
<td>12th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vingtième</td>
<td>vaN-tyehm</td>
<td>20th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vingt et un (e)ième</td>
<td>vaN-tay-uhN (ewn)-nyehm</td>
<td>21st</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soixante-douzième</td>
<td>swah-sahNi doo-zyehm</td>
<td>72nd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>centième</td>
<td>saN-tyehm</td>
<td>100th</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**As a Rule**

The French ordinal numbers are abbreviated as follows:

- premier 1<sup>er</sup> (premire 1<sup>e</sup>)
- deuxième 2<sup>nd</sup>
- cinquante 50<sup>th</sup>

- *Premier* and *second* are the only ordinal numbers that must agree in gender (masculine or feminine) with the noun they describe. All other ordinal numbers must agree in number with the noun:
son premier fils: his (her) first son
sa première fille: his (her) first daughter
Les dixièmes anniversaries: Tenth wedding anniversaries
de mariage sont spéciaux: are special.
• Except for premier and second, ième is added to all cardinal numbers to form the ordinal number. Drop the silent e before ième.

• Note that u was added in cinquième, and v replaced f in neuvième.

• Second(e) is generally used in a series that does not go beyond two.

• There is no elision with huitième and onzième. The definite article le or la does not drop its vowel:

  le huitième jour  the eighth day
  la onzième personne  the eleventh person

• In French, cardinal numbers precede ordinal numbers:

  les deux premières fois  the first two times

I'm Afraid There'll Have to Be a Change

Imagine that you want to sample a famous French delicacy, eat in a special restaurant, pay with your credit card, or buy a special gift. Naturally, you'll want some recommendation and will probably get opinions from everyone from the concierge to the chambermaid. In the course of your conversations, you'll have to use many verbs to get the information you seek. There are a few categories of regular er verbs whose endings require spelling changes in certain forms. In some instances, this is necessary to maintain the proper sound of the verb. In other instances, it's just one of the idiosyncrasies of the language. You should familiarize yourself with some of these verbs in each group because they are high-frequency words that you will use and see quite often.
These verbs are referred to as *shoe verbs* because the rules of conjugation work as if you put the subject pronouns that follow one set of rules within the shoe, and the others, outside the shoe. To make that more clear, look at the pronouns that go in and out of the shoe:
In other words, for all verbs in these categories, *je, tu, il, elle, on, ils,* and *elles* will follow one set of rules, while *nous* and generally, but not always, *vous* will follow a different set of rules. Now let's look at the different categories.

### cer Verbs

For *cer* verbs, the *nous* form needs ç to maintain the soft sound of the c (s). This cedilla is added before the vowels *a, o,* and *u.*

**placer (to place, set)**

- je place
- tu places
- il, elle, on place
- nous plaçons
- vous placez
- ils, elles placent

Other verbs conjugated just like *placer* include:

- **annoncer**  
  *ah-nohN-say*  
  to announce

- **avancer**  
  *ah-vahN-say*  
  to advance (be fast—clocks and watches)

- **commencer (à)**  
  *koh-mahN-say (ah)*  
  to begin

- **menacer**  
  *muh-nah-say*  
  to threaten

- **remplacer**  
  *rahN-plah-say*  
  to replace

- **renoncer à**  
  *ruh-nohN-say ah*  
  to give up, renounce

### Using cer Verbs

You should find *cer* verbs quite easy since there is really only one small change involved. Practice vocabulary and conversation by completing the sentence with the correct form of the appropriate verb from the list in the preceding section:

1. Le spectacle (*commencer*)__________ à neuf heures.
2. Nous (*renoncer à*)__________ à faire des projets.
3. Tu (*remplacer*)__________ ta valise?
4. Ma montre (*avancer*)__________.
5. Ils (*annoncer*)__________ le départ du train.
**ger Verbs**

For *ger* verbs, the *nous* form needs an extra *e* to maintain the soft sound of the *g* (zh). This extra *e* is always added after *g* before the vowels *a*, *o*, and *u*.

**manger (to eat)**

je mange  
nous mangeons  
tu manges  
vous mangez  
il, elle, on mange  
ils, elles mangent

Other verbs that are conjugated just like *manger* are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arranger</td>
<td><em>ah-rahn-zhay</em></td>
<td>to arrange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>changer</td>
<td><em>shahN-zhay</em></td>
<td>to change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corriger</td>
<td><em>koh-ree-zhay</em></td>
<td>to correct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>déranger</td>
<td><em>day-rahN-zhay</em></td>
<td>to disturb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diriger</td>
<td><em>dee-ree-zhay</em></td>
<td>to direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nager</td>
<td><em>nah-zhay</em></td>
<td>to swim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obliger</td>
<td><em>oh-blee-zhay</em></td>
<td>to oblige</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partager</td>
<td><em>pahr-tah-zhay</em></td>
<td>to share, divide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ranger</td>
<td><em>rahN-zhay</em></td>
<td>to tidy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Using ger Verbs**

Like *cer* verbs, *ger* verbs have only one change to memorize. Giving the correct form of the verb in each sentence should prove to be a snap:

1. La fille de chambre/(ranger)________ la chambre.
2. Tu/(déran**ger**)________ les autres clients.
3. Nous/(partage**r**)________ notre sandwich parce qu'il est très grand.
4. Vous/(nage**r**)________ bien.
5. Ils/(arrange**r**)________ tout.
yer Verbs

In yer verbs, the y is retained in the nous and vous forms. Within the shoe, an i is used instead of the y:

employer (to use)

j'emploie vous employez

il, elle, on emploie ils, elles emploient

Other verbs that are conjugated just like employer are:

ennuyer

envoyer

nettoyer

As a Rule

Verbs ending in ayer may or may not change y to i in the forms in the shoe:

essayer (de)

eh-yay-yay (duh)

to try (to)

payer

peh-yay

to pay, to pay for

payer (to use)

je paie nous payons

tu paies vous payez

il, elle, on paie ils, elles paient

essayer (to try)

j'essaie nous essayons

tu essaies vous essayez

il, elle, on essaie ils, elles essaient

essayer (to try)

j'essaie nous essayons

tu essaies vous essayez

il, elle, on essaie ils, elles essaient

(payent)
Using yer Verbs

Do you feel confident with yer verbs? Keep the shoe image in your mind and remember that y changes to i. Now have a go at conjugating the verbs below.

1. Tu (payer) _____ trop.

2. Il (employer) _________ un plan de la ville.

3. Vous (ennuyer) ________ les autres.
4. La fille de chambre (nettoyer)_________ bien.

5. J' (essayer)_________ de parler français.

e+consonant+er Verbs

Verbs with a silent e in the syllable before the er infinitive ending (acheter: to buy; peser: to weigh) change the silent e to è for all forms in the shoe. Within the shoe, all the endings of the verbs are silent.

acheter (to buy)(

j'achè (ah-sheht) nous achetons (ahsh-tohN)
tu achètes (ah-sheht) vous achetez (ahsh-tay)
il, elle, on achète (ah-sheht) ils, elles achètent (ah-sheht)

As a Rule
Because all of the endings within the shoe are silent, adding an accent grave (e) to the silent e before the ending gives sound to that silent e. This prevents having two syllables, one right after the other, with a silent e. (Two silent es would make the word virtually impossible to pronounce. Imagine having to say f'achète if both es were silent!)

Notice the difference in pronunciation of the verb inside and outside the shoe. Within the shoe, the first e has an accent grave, and è is pronounced. Outside the shoe, the first e is unpronounced.

Other verbs that are conjugated just like acheter are:

achever ahsh-vay to finish, complete
amener ahm-nay to bring, lead to
emmener ahNm-nay to take, lead away
enlever ahN-lvay to take off, remove
peser puh-zay to weigh
promener prohm-nay to walk

Two verbs with silent e that double the consonant before the er infinitive ending, instead of adding the accent grave, are:
appeler (to call)

j'appelle (ah-pehl)          nous appelons (ah-plohN)
tu appelles (ah-pehl)        vous appelez (ah-play)
il, elle, on appelle (ah-pehl) ils, elles appellent (ah-pehl)
jeter (to throw)

je jette (*zheht*)

nous jetons (*zhuh-tohN*)

tu jettes (*zheht*)

vous jetez (*zhuh-tay*)

il, elle, on jette (*zheht*)

ils, elles jettent (*zheht*)

Using e+consonant+er Verbs

It's very important to practice the correct spelling of e + consonant + er verbs—and not because spelling is so important. Let's face it, you're probably not going to be writing many letters in French. Why spend time on this? Because if you understand that accents give sounds to silent letters, then you'll be much more successful at perfecting your pronunciation. Take this opportunity to read and write at the same time:

1. (walk) Il__________son chien.
2. (call) Vous__________votre ami.
3. (take) J'__________mon chapeau.
4. (throw) On__________les papiers dans la poubelle.
5. (bring) Nous__________nos enfants au cinéma.

é+consonant+er Verbs

Verbs with é in the syllable before the infinitive ending change é to è in the shoe, where the endings to the conjugated verb forms are all silent:

préférer (to prefer)

je préfère (*pray-fehr*)

nous préférons (*pray-feh-rohN*)

tu préfères (*pray-fehr*)

vous préférez (*pray-feh-ray*)

il, elle, on préfère (*pray-fehr*)

ils, elles préfèrent (*pray-fehr*)

Other verbs that are conjugated just like préférer are:

célébrer

say-lay-bray

to celebrate

espérer

ehs-pay-ray

to hope

posséder

poh-say-day

to own, possess

protéger

proh-tay-zhay

to protect

répéter

ray-pay-tay

to repeat
Using é+consonant+er Verbs

Once again, using accents correctly will ensure that you're speaking properly. You can practice vocabulary, spelling, and pronunciation all in one fell swoop by completing the following sentences:

1. (celebrate) Je__________ mon anniversaire demain.
2. (Repeat)_________ la phrase, s'il vous plaît.
3. (protect)Nous________ nos amis.
4. (hope) Ils________ voyager.
5. (owns) Elle________ une jolie voiture.

The Least You Need to Know

• To be happy in your hotel, learn the vocabulary for facilities and furnishings in order to ask for what you want and need.

• Ordinal numbers (except for premier: first) are formed by adding ième to the cardinal number.

• “Shoe verbs” follow a pattern of conjugation that resembles the outline of a shoe. Remember the shoe, and you'll remember how to conjugate the verb.
PART 3
FUN AND GAMES

13 What's the Weather? 149
14 Let's Sightsee 161
15 I Wanna Shop Till I Drop 173
16 Finally, A Home-Cooked Meal 187
17 Let's Eat Out 205
18 Let's Have Fun 227
Chapter 13
What's the Weather?

In This Chapter
- The weather
- Days of the week
- Months of the year
- Seasons
- Keeping a date
- All about faire (to make, do)

Your hotel is fabulous. Your room suits you to a T and has all the creature comforts, and then some. But it is time to get up and out. Before you head to the lobby, you glance out the window and notice that the sky is overcast, and you want to be prepared in case it rains. By the way, what are you going to do if that happens?

If you were at home, you'd probably tune into the weather channel to get the latest forecast. You could give this approach a shot, but remember, in a French-speaking country, all the announcers will be speaking French—and when it comes to weather, your knowledge of cognates won't take you too far. In this chapter, you'll tackle the weather report, and you'll also learn what you need to know to find out the hours at museums, movie theatres, and other places that may beckon on a rainy day.
It's 20 Degrees, but They're Wearing Shorts!

Let's say that you've turned on the television and manage to understand the weatherman when he reports that it is 20 degrees. But it's summer—how can this be? Is it possible that \( \text{La météo} \) (the forecast) is wrong? Perhaps it's time to consult the friendly \textit{concierge} (care-taker/manager) at the front desk. The phrases in Table 13.1 will help you talk about the weather.

Table 13.1 Weather Expressions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Expression</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Quel temps fait-il?</td>
<td>( \text{kehr tahn feh-teel} )</td>
<td>What's the weather?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il fait beau.</td>
<td>( \text{eel feh bo} )</td>
<td>It's beautiful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il fait chaud.</td>
<td>( \text{eel feh sho} )</td>
<td>It's hot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il fait du soleil.</td>
<td>( \text{eel feh dew soh-lehy} )</td>
<td>It's sunny.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il fait mauvais.</td>
<td>( \text{eel feh moh-veh} )</td>
<td>It's nasty (bad).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il fait froid.</td>
<td>( \text{eel feh frwah} )</td>
<td>It's cold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il fait frais.</td>
<td>( \text{eel feh freh} )</td>
<td>It's cool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il fait du vent.</td>
<td>( \text{eel feh dew vahN} )</td>
<td>It's windy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il fait des éclairs (m.)</td>
<td>( \text{eel feh day zay-klehr} )</td>
<td>It's lightning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il fait du tonnerre.</td>
<td>( \text{eel feh dew toh-nehr} )</td>
<td>It's thunders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il fait du brouillard.</td>
<td>( \text{eel feh dew broo-yahr} )</td>
<td>It's foggy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il y a du brouillard.</td>
<td>( \text{eel yah dew broo-yahr} )</td>
<td>It's foggy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il fait humide.</td>
<td>( \text{eel feh tew-meed} )</td>
<td>It's humid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il y a de l'humidité.</td>
<td>( \text{eel yah duh lew-mee-dee-tay} )</td>
<td>It's humid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il y a des nuages.</td>
<td>( \text{eel yah day new-ahzh} )</td>
<td>It's cloudy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Le ciel est nuageux.</td>
<td>( \text{luh syehl eh new-ah-zuh} )</td>
<td>It's cloudy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Le ciel est couvert.</td>
<td>( \text{luh syehl eh koo-vehr} )</td>
<td>It's overcast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il pleut.</td>
<td>( \text{eel pluh} )</td>
<td>It's raining.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il pleut à verse.</td>
<td>( \text{eel pluh ah vehrs} )</td>
<td>It's pouring.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il neige.</td>
<td>( \text{eel nehz} )</td>
<td>It's snowing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il y a des rafales (f.).</td>
<td>( \text{eel yah day rah-fahl} )</td>
<td>There are gusts of wind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il y a de la grêle.</td>
<td>( \text{eel yah duh lah grehl} )</td>
<td>There's hail.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il y a des giboulées (f.)</td>
<td>( \text{eel yah day zhee-boo-lay} )</td>
<td>There are sudden showers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Before you get to the réception (or concierge's desk), you suddenly remember that the French use Celsius (centigrade) rather than Fahrenheit. This means that when it is 20 degrees Celsius—it's a pleasant 68 degrees Fahrenheit.

To convert Fahrenheit to Centigrade, subtract 32 from the Fahrenheit temperature and multiply the remaining number by $\frac{5}{9}$. This will give you the temperature in degrees Centigrade.

To convert Centigrade to Fahrenheit, multiply the Centigrade temperature by $\frac{9}{5}$, then add 32. This will give you the temperature in degrees Fahrenheit.

What's the Temperature?

You never were that great in math, but you're determined to have a pretty good idea of what the temperature is. You arm yourself with a mini-solar calculator and ask the concierge:

Il fait quelle temperature?

eel feh kehl tahN-pay-rah-tewR?

What's the temperature?

If someone asks you what the temperature is (and you happen to know!), respond with the phrase il fait followed by the number of degrees. If it is below zero, throw a moins (minus) before the number.

Il fait moins dix. Il fait zéro. Il fait soixante.

eel feh mwaN dees eel feh zay-ro eel feh swah-sahNt

It's 10 below. It's zero. It's sixty degrees.

But It Says in the Paper…

French newspapers, like American newspapers, contain weather information, complete with maps and symbols. Take a look at the following map to see if you can decipher the symbols. If you have trouble, consult the guide for help.
brouillards  
broo-yahr  fog
fraîcheur  
freh-shuhr  chilly
soleil  
soh-ley  sun
ciel clair  
syehl klehr  clear sky
couvert  
kooy-vehr  cloudy
neige  
nehzh  snow
peu nuageux  
puh new-ah-zhuh  slightly cloudy
pluies  
plwee  rain
verglas  
vehr-glah  sleet
variable  
vah-ree-yahbl  changeable
bruines  
brween  drizzle


The Forecast

You're undecided about what to do today. So, you open the newspaper to the weather page to get a better idea of what plans would be appropriate. According to the headline, what weather is predicted for this day?

You're intrigued by the French weather map you see and decide to bone up on your forecast reading abilities. Give the temperature and the weather for the following cities in France at 1 p.m.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lille</th>
<th>Strasbourg</th>
<th>Tours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reims</td>
<td>Paris</td>
<td>Nice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What Day Is It?

If you're anything like me, the day your vacation starts is the day your watch comes off. You get so involved in having a good time that you lose all track of time. Every day seems like Saturday or Sunday, and you frequently have to ask: "What day is it, anyway?" If you're on a sightseeing vacation, you really have to keep track of the days of the week so that you don't wind up at the attraction you were dying to see on the day that it's closed. That can happen very easily in Paris, where schedules differ from museum to museum. When you study the days of the week in Table 13.2, you'll notice that they all end in *di*, except for Sunday, which begins with *di*. 

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>orages</th>
<th>oh-rahzh</th>
<th>storms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>très nuageux</td>
<td><em>treh new-ah-zhu</em></td>
<td>very cloudy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>averses</td>
<td><em>ah-vehrs</em></td>
<td>showers (heavy rain)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brumeux</td>
<td><em>brew-muh</em></td>
<td>hazy, foggy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vent</td>
<td><em>svaN</em></td>
<td>winds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faibles</td>
<td><em>fehbl</em></td>
<td>weak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modérés</td>
<td><em>moh-day-ray</em></td>
<td>moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fort</td>
<td><em>fohr</em></td>
<td>strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tempête</td>
<td><em>tahN-peht</em></td>
<td>storm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 13.2 Days of the Week

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lundi</td>
<td><em>luhN-dee</em></td>
<td>Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mardi</td>
<td><em>mahr-dee</em></td>
<td>Tuesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mercredi</td>
<td><em>mehr-kruh-dee</em></td>
<td>Wednesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jeudi</td>
<td><em>zhuh-dee</em></td>
<td>Thursday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vendredi</td>
<td><em>vahN-druh-dee</em></td>
<td>Friday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>samedi</td>
<td><em>sahm-dee</em></td>
<td>Saturday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dimanche</td>
<td><em>dee-mahNsh</em></td>
<td>Sunday</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To express *on* when talking about a certain day, the French use the indefinite article *le*:

Le lundi je vais en ville.

*luh luhN-dee zhuh veh zahN veel.*

On Monday(s) I go downtown.

On what days do you go to the movies; go to the supermarket; do laundry; go out with friends; eat out; work hard?

This Is the Best Time of the Month

It's August and you want to go to Nice. Disappointment sets in when your travel agent says, “Sorry. There's nothing available.” So, you book your own trip to Paris during this same time period. When you get there, the city is empty. Where is everyone? In France, many stores and businesses are closed during the month of August, when everyone seems to head south to La Côte d'Azur (the Riviera) for a vacation. Table 13.3 gives you the months of the year. Thus, when you glance through all those glossy vacation brochures, you can figure out the best time to take your trip.
Table 13.3 Months of the Year

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>janvier</td>
<td>zhahN-vyay</td>
<td>January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>février</td>
<td>fay-vree-yay</td>
<td>February</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mars</td>
<td>mohrs</td>
<td>March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avril</td>
<td>ah-vreel</td>
<td>April</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(table continued on next page)*
To make clear that something is expected to happen in a certain month, use the preposition *en*. For example:

Je vais en France en avril.

*zhuh veh zahN frahNs ahN nah-vreet*

I am going to France in April.

Practice this usage with everyday information. In which month does your birthday fall? When do you usually take a vacation? During which month do you watch the most TV or play your favorite sport?

**The Four Seasons**

Some seasons are better for traveling in certain countries than in others. Make sure to plan a trip when the weather will be great so you don't have to worry about hurricanes, storms, or other adverse conditions. Maybe you're not a traveler, but enjoy doing cross-word puzzles where clues often call for “season (fr.)." Perhaps you'd like to know what sports and activities are performed in each season. Whatever your reason, Table 13.4 gives you the names of the seasons:

**Table 13.4 The Seasons**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>l'hiver</td>
<td><em>lee-vehr</em></td>
<td>winter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le printemps</td>
<td><em>luh praN-tahN</em></td>
<td>spring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'été</td>
<td><em>lay-tay</em></td>
<td>summer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'automne</td>
<td><em>lo-tohn</em></td>
<td>autumn, fall</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(sections continued from previous page)
To express *in* with the seasons, the French use the preposition *en* for all the seasons, except the spring, when *au* is used:

Je vais en France en hiver (en été, en automne, au printemps).

*zuh veh zahN frahNs ahN nee-vehr (ahN nay-tay, ahN o-tohn, o praN-tahN)*

I'm going to France in the winter (summer, fall, spring).

In which season do you go to the beach; watch a football game; go on outdoor picnics; watch the leaves turn colors?

**You Have a Date for What Date?**

As a Rule
The word for *year*, *an*, is used with cardinal numbers one, two, three, and so on, unless an adjective is used to describe the word *year*. In that case, the word *année* is used. Sometimes, either word is acceptable.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>un an</td>
<td>one year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>une année</td>
<td>a year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deux bonnes années</td>
<td>two good years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quelques années</td>
<td>some years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l’an dernier</td>
<td>last year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l’année dernière</td>
<td>last year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Do you also lose track of the date while you're away from home or work? The date is something people tend to forget on a fairly regular basis, especially when they're on vacation. (I finally broke down and bought a minicomputer so that I can always have a calendar on hand.) A few words you will need to know when making plans are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>un jour</td>
<td>a day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>une semaine</td>
<td>a week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>un mois</td>
<td>a month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>un an</td>
<td>a year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>une année</td>
<td>a year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You've decided to take the plunge and get a new French coif. Perhaps you're on a business trip and have to arrange for an important meeting. Or maybe you've decided to make unexpected travel plans. Whatever the reason, you'll have to know how to express the date for your appointment.

- Dates in French are expressed as follows:
(le) day of week + (le) (cardinal) number + month + year

lundi onze juillet 1996
lundi le onze juillet 1996
le lundi onze juillet 1996
• The first day of each month is expressed by *premier*. Cardinal numbers are used for all other days:

le premier janvier January 1st

le deux janvier January 2nd

• Just as in English, years are usually expressed in hundreds. When the word for *thousand* is written in dates only, *mil* is often used instead of *mille*:

1996 dix-neuf cent quatre-vingt seize

mil neuf cent quatre-vingt seize

• In order to get information about the date, you need to ask the following questions:

Quelle est la date d'aujourd'hui? Quel jour est-ce aujourd'hui?

*kehl eh lah daht doh-zhoor-dwee? kehl zhoor ehs oh-zhoor-dwee?*

What is today's date? What day is today?

OR

**Pitfall**

When the French write the date in numbers, the sequence is day + month + year. In the U.S., we tend to lead with the month, followed by the day, and then the year. Notice how different this looks:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>le 22 avril 1977</td>
<td>April 22, 1977</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.4.77</td>
<td>4/22/77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le trois mai 1995</td>
<td>May 3, 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.95</td>
<td>5/3/95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Quel jour sommes-nous aujourd'hui?

*kehl zhoor sohm noo oh-zhoor-dwee?*

What day is today?

The answer to your questions would be one of the following:
Heaven help those of us who forget important dates. It's not done intentionally, but it often creates problems. Practice what you've learned by giving the day and dates for these important events of the year:

your birthday, the birthday of a friend, Thanksgiving, New Year's, Mother's Day, Valentine's Day, Father's Day, Memorial Day

When you have to make plans and schedule your time wisely, you'll need certain time-related words and expressions. Keep the expressions in Table 13.5 in mind when time is of the essence.
Table 13.5 Time Expressions

dans_____          dahN          in
il y a_____         eel yah       ago
par_____            pahr          per
pendant_____        pahN-dahN     during
prochain(e)         proh-shahN (proh-shehn) next
dernier (dernière)  dehr-nyah (dehr-nyehr) last
passé(e)            pah-say       last
la veille           la vehy       eve
avant-hier          ah-vahN yehr  day before yesterday
hier                yehr          yesterday
aujourd'hui          oh-zhoor-dwee today
demain              duh-maN       tomorrow
après-demain        ah-preh duh-maN day after tomorrow
le lendemain        lah lahN-duh-maN next day
dès____             deh           from
d'aujourd'hui en huit doh-zhoor-dwee ahN weet a week from today
de demain en quinze  duh duh-maN ahN kaNz two weeks from tomorrow

What's the Date?

Yesterday? Tomorrow? Two weeks from today? What if you don't have a calendar on you and you need the exact date? Practice your understanding of the phrases above. If today were le sept août, give the date for the following:

avant-hier          de demain en huit   d'aujourd'hui en quinze
demain              la veille            il y a sept jours

What Do You Make of This?

A French friend has phoned and says to you, “Il fait si beau aujourd'hui. On fait du golf?” We've already seen that, in speaking about the weather, we can use the irregular verb faire, in an impersonal way: il fait + the weather condition. The verb faire, shown in Table 13.6, means to make or to do, and is often used to speak about household chores. Faire can
also be used to speak about playing a sport, even though it translates poorly into English. So, will you be playing
golf with your friend today?

Table 13.6 The Verb faire (to make, to do)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je fais</td>
<td>I make, do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu fais</td>
<td>you make, do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on fait</td>
<td>he (she, one) makes, does</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous faisons</td>
<td>we make, do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous faites</td>
<td>you make, do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles font</td>
<td>they make, do</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Expressions with faire

Let's say you don't want to talk about sports or the weather. How else can you use the verb faire to your best
advantage? There are many useful idioms with the verb faire. If your host asked you, “Voudriez-vous faire une
partie de tennis?” would you think he was inviting you to a tennis party? Common sense and a knowledge of
cognates would trick you into thinking so. In reality, he'd only be inviting you to play in a match. Similarly, if he
told you, “Je l'ai fait exprès” would you think he did something in a rush? Again, your knowledge of English
would make you think so. Actually, whatever he did, he did it on purpose. You can see why it is very important to
study the idiomatic expressions with faire in Table 13.7.

Table 13.7 More Idioms with faire

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>faire attention à</td>
<td>fahr ah-tahN-syohN ah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire des achats (emplettes)</td>
<td>fahr day zah-shah (ahN-pleht)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire des courses</td>
<td>fahr day koors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire exprès</td>
<td>fahr ehks-preh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire la connaissance de</td>
<td>fehr lah koh-neh-sahn duh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire la queue</td>
<td>fehr lah kuh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire une partie de</td>
<td>fehr ewn pahr-tee duh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire une promenade</td>
<td>fehr ewn prohm-nahd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire un voyage</td>
<td>fehr uhn vwah-yahzh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire venir</td>
<td>fehr vuh-neer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Make sure to conjugate the verb when you use it in context:

Je fais les courses le lundi. I go on errands on Mondays.
Ils font un voyage en France. They are taking a trip to France.
Faites venir le médecin. Send for the doctor.

Using faire

Because the verb faire has so many different uses, it's quite important to practice it thoroughly. After you feel confident with the conjugation of faire and have learned its various idioms, complete the following sentences:

1. (to take a trip) Ils__________
2. (to wait on line) Vous__________
3. (to send for) Tu__________le docteur.
4. (to take a walk) Nous__________
5. (to meet) Elle_______________M. Renaud.
6. (to go shopping) Je______________.
7. (to pay attention) On__________au directeur.
8. (to play a game of) Elles__________golf.

The Least You Need to Know

• Use “il fait” to express weather conditions and the temperature.
• To express the date, use the day of the week + the number of the day + the month + the year.
• The irregular verb faire is used to discuss sports and household chores and in some very useful idiomatic expressions.
The weather in today's paper is calling for a mild and sunshiny day. It's perfect weather to have a café au lait at a sidewalk café, visit Notre Dame, and finally take a stroll down the Champs-Elysées. You've checked your guidebook to see what's open and at what times. Now it's time to take out your metro or bus map and plan your day so that you can leisurely enjoy the sights you long to see.

In this chapter you will be given a choice of things to do and interesting places to visit. You will become proficient in making suggestions and giving your opinions about things. And if you should decide to travel far and wide, you will be able to get there—in French.
**Where Do You Want to Go?**

There's so much to do and so much to see in all of the French-speaking countries. Are you in the mood for sightseeing or relaxing? Do you want to pack your day with activity or do you prefer to proceed at a leisurely pace? The brochures you've picked up at your hotel or at the tourist office offer many suggestions. Table 14.1 gives you the words and phrases you need to talk about your choices.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Le Lieu (luh lyuh)</th>
<th>L'Activité (lahk-tee-vee-tay)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>l'aquarium (lah-kwah-ryuhm)</td>
<td>voir les poissons/see the fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'église (lay gleez)</td>
<td>voir l'architecture /see the architecture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la boîte de nuit (lah bwaht duh nwee), le cabaret (luh kah-bah-reh)</td>
<td>voir un spectacle/see a show</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la cathédrale (lah kah-tay-drahl)</td>
<td>voir les vitraux /see the stained glass windows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la foire (lah fwahr)</td>
<td>regarder les expositions/look at the exhibits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la fontaine (lah fohn-tehn)</td>
<td>regarder les jets d'eau/look at the spray of water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la place (lah plahs)</td>
<td>voir la statue/see the statue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le carnaval (luh kahr-nah-vahl)</td>
<td>regarder le défilé, les chars/look at the parade, floats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le château (luh shah-to)</td>
<td>voir les salles/see the room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le cirque (luh seerk)</td>
<td>voir les spectacles/see the shows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le jardin (luh zhahr-daN)</td>
<td>voir les fleurs/see the flowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le jardin zoologique, le zoo (luh zhahr-daN zoh-oh-loh-geek, luh zo)</td>
<td>voir les animaux/see the animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le marché aux puces (luh mahr-shay o pews)</td>
<td>regarder la marchandise /look at the merchandise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le musée (luh mew-say)</td>
<td>voir les tableaux, les sculptures/see the paintings, sculptures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le parc d'attractions (luh pahrk dah-trahk-syohN)</td>
<td>monter sur les manèges/go on the rides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le quai (luh kay)</td>
<td>faire une croisière/take a cruise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What Do You Want to See?

So will it be the exquisite painting and sculptures of a particular museum, the stained glass windows of a cathedral, the luxurious rooms of a château, or perhaps a famous monument? To express what you would like to see or are going to see, you will need the irregular verb *voir* (to see) that is presented in Table 14.2. *Voir* is similar to a shoe verb in that the *nous* and *vous* forms change. These forms do not, however, look like the infinitive. In this case, the forms inside the shoe do! Consider *voir* a reverse shoe verb.

**Table 14.2 The Verb voir (to see)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je vois</td>
<td>zhuh vwah</td>
<td>I see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu vois</td>
<td>tew vwah</td>
<td>you see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on voit</td>
<td>eel, (ehl, ohN) vwah</td>
<td>he, she, one sees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous voyons</td>
<td>noo vwah-yohN</td>
<td>we see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous voyez</td>
<td>voo vwah-yay</td>
<td>you see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles voient</td>
<td>eel (ehl) vwah</td>
<td>they see</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I See…

You've visited the Tuileries Gardens and walked along the banks of the Seine. You're having a wonderful time taking in all the sights. You're so captivated by everything around you that you feel you must express what you see: a parade, a fountain, animals, stained glass windows, a garden, flowers.
Making Suggestions in More Ways Than One

You've always had your heart set on seeing the Folies Bergères. The glamorous ads, posters, and pictures you've seen have enticed you and piqued your curiosity. You don't know, however, how the others in your group feel about accompanying you. Live it up! Make the suggestion. There are two options in French that you'll find quite simple.

You may use the pronoun on + the conjugated form of the verb that explains what it is you want to do:

Ohn va aux Folies Bergères?  On fait une croisière?

On fait une croisière?

Another way to propose an activity is to use the command form that has nous as its understood subject:

Allons aux Folies Bergères!  Faisons une croisière!

Faisons une croisière!

Other Phrases You Might Find Useful

If you're feeling rather confident with the language at this point, you might want to take a more sophisticated approach. There are a number of phrases you can use, all of which are followed by the infinitive of the verb (The familiar forms [tu] are in parenthesis.):

Making Suggestions

Other Phrases You Might Find Useful
Ça vous (te) dit de…  
Did you want to…

Ça vous (t’)intéresse de…  
Are you interested in…

Ça vous (te) plairait de…  
Would it please you to…

Vous voulez (Tu veux…)  
Do you want to…
Ça vous (te) dit (d')
Ça vous (t') intéresse de (d') aller au cinéma?
Ça vous (te) plairait de (d') faire une croisière?

Vous voulez (Tu veux)

Any of the phrases listed above can be made negative by using *ne...pas*:

Ça *ne* te dit *pas* de (d')
(Don't you want to…?)
Ça *ne* t’intéresse *pas* de (d') aller au cinéma?
(Aren't you interested in…) (going to the movies?)
Ça *ne* te plairait *pas* de (d') faire une croisière?
(Wouldn't it please you to…) (go on a cruise?)

Tu *ne* veux *pas*
(Don't you want to…?)

*As a Rule*
Remember to use *d'* instead of *de* before a vowel.

Only petulant teenagers give abrupt yes or no answers to questions. Most of the rest of us say “yes, but…” or “no, because….” If you'd like to elaborate on your answer, here's what you'll have to do: change the pronoun *vous* or *te* (t') from the question to *me* (m') in your answer.

*As a Rule*
When answering a negative question yes, *si* is used instead of *oui*. When answering in the negative *un*, *une*, and *des* become *de*.

Oui (Si), ça me dit (d')
Oui (Si), ça m'intéresse de (d') aller au cinéma.
Oui (Si), ça me plairait de (d') faire une croisière.
Oui (Si), je veux
Non, ça ne me dit pas de (d')
Non, ça ne m'intéresse pas de (d') aller au cinéma.
Non ça ne me plairait pas de (d') faire de croisière.
Non, je ne veux pas
What Do You Think?

How do you feel about a suggestion that was made to you? Does the activity appeal to you? If so, then you would say:


When you do something or go somewhere new, different, exotic, out of the ordinary, you're bound to have an opinion on whether you liked it or not. Was it fun? You had a good time? You were amused? Give your positive opinion by saying:

C'est (seh)...  super (sew-pehr)!  extra (ehks-trah)!

chouette (shoo-eht)! great  formidable! great  génial (zhay-nyahl)! fantastic

superbe (sew-pehrb)!  sensationnel (sahN-sah-syoh-nehl)!  magnifique (mah-nyee-feek)!

merveilleux (mehr-veh-yuh)!

Perhaps you don't like the suggestion presented. Maybe the activity bores you. To express your dislikes you might say:

Je n'aime pas  zhuh nehm pah  I don't like

Je déteste  zhuh day-tehst  I hate

Je ne suis pas fana de  zhuh nuh swee pah fah-nah duh  I'm not a fan of

Je n'aime pas la musique classique.

Je déteste l'opéra.

Je ne suis pas fana de ballet.

Just to be a good sport, you tried it anyway. It was just as you thought: not your cup of tea. To give your negative opinion about an activity you could say:

C'est...

la barbe (lah bahrb)  boring
désagréable (day-zah-gray-ahbl)  frightful, horrible
affreux (ah-fruh)  horrible (oh-reebl)!
dégoûtant (day-goo-tahN)  disgusting
ennuyeux (ahN-nwee-yuh)  boring
embêtant (ahN-beh-tahN)  boring

ridicule (ree-dee-kewl)  ridiculous

**Beyond the Blue Horizon**

Years ago, when my husband and I backpacked throughout Europe, we used our French in every single country we visited (except England, naturally). Since France borders Belgium, Luxembourg, Germany, Switzerland, Italy, and Spain, it is easily understood why French would be spoken and understood in all of those countries, and why the people in France are familiar with those languages as well. Furthermore, due to France's importance in the European Economic Community (formerly, the Common Market), French is spoken in all other European countries too. Your travels may take you to many different places where French is spoken. It would prove quite helpful to learn the French names of the countries in Tables 14.4 and 14.5, especially those countries in Europe.

Table 14.4 Feminine Countries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>l'Algérie</td>
<td>lahl-zhay-ree</td>
<td>Algeria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'Allemagne</td>
<td>lahl-mah-nyuh</td>
<td>Germany</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'Angleterre</td>
<td>lahN-gluh-tehr</td>
<td>England</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'Autriche</td>
<td>lo-treesh</td>
<td>Austria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la Belgique</td>
<td>lah behl-zheek</td>
<td>Belgium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la Chine</td>
<td>lah sheen</td>
<td>China</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'Égypte</td>
<td>lay-zheep</td>
<td>Egypt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La Langue</td>
<td>Prononciation (Français)</td>
<td>Traduction (Anglais)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'Espagne</td>
<td>lehs-pah-nyuh</td>
<td>Spain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la France</td>
<td>lah frahnS</td>
<td>France</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la Grèce</td>
<td>lah grehs</td>
<td>Greece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haïti</td>
<td>ah-ee-tee</td>
<td>Haiti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'Italie</td>
<td>lee-tah-lee</td>
<td>Italy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la Pologne</td>
<td>lah poh-loh-nyuh</td>
<td>Poland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la Roumanie</td>
<td>lah roo-mah-nee</td>
<td>Rumania</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la Russie</td>
<td>lah rew-see</td>
<td>Russia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la Suisse</td>
<td>lah swees</td>
<td>Switzerland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la Tunisie</td>
<td>lah tew-nee-zee</td>
<td>Tunisia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 14.5 Masculine Countries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>le Canada</td>
<td>luh kah-nah-dah</td>
<td>Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le Cambodge</td>
<td>luh kahN-bohdzh</td>
<td>Cambodia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>les États-Unis</td>
<td>lay zay-tah-zew-nee</td>
<td>United States</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Israël</td>
<td>eez-rah-ehl</td>
<td>Israel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le Japon</td>
<td>luh zhah-pohN</td>
<td>Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le Liban</td>
<td>luh lee-bahN</td>
<td>Lebanon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le Maroc</td>
<td>luh mah-rohk</td>
<td>Morocco</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le Mexique</td>
<td>luh mehk-seek</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le Zaïre</td>
<td>luh zah-eer</td>
<td>Zaire</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Do your travels take you far and wide? Are you fortunate enough to be able to plan a trip to another continent? The names of the seven continents in Table 14.6 are also feminine.

Table 14.6 The Continents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Continent</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>l'Afrique</td>
<td>lah-freek</td>
<td>Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'Amérique du Nord</td>
<td>lah-may-reek dew nohr</td>
<td>North America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'Amérique du Sud</td>
<td>lah-may-reek dew sewd</td>
<td>South America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'Antarctique</td>
<td>lahn-tahrk-teek</td>
<td>Antarctica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'Asie</td>
<td>lah-zee</td>
<td>Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'Australie</td>
<td>loh-strah-lee</td>
<td>Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'Europe</td>
<td>lew-rohp</td>
<td>Europe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Going to Stay?

As a Rule
Three masculine countries are exceptions to the rule and end in e. Israel does not use the definite article l'.

On your next trip to Europe, will you be going to Italy? Will you be staying with your relatives in Spain or in Portugal? To express that you are going to or staying in another country use the preposition en to express to, and also to express in before the names of feminine countries, continents, provinces, islands, and states and before masculine countries starting with a vowel:
I am going to Italy.
Je vais en Italie.
zhuh veh zahN nee-tah-lee

I'm staying in Spain.
Je reste en Espagne.
zhuh rehst ahN nehs-pah-nyuh
I am going to travel to (in) Israel.
Je vais voyager en Israël.
zhuh veh vwaH-yah-zaHay ahN neez-raH-ehl

The preposition _au_ (aux for plurals) is used to express _to, in_ before the names of some masculine countries, islands, provinces, and states that start with a consonant:

I am going to Japan.
Je vais au Japon.
zhuh veh zo zaHz-pohN

I am staying in the United States.
Je reste aux États-Unis.
zhuh reHz o zay-tah-zeHz-nee

Use _dans le_ to express _to, in_ before geographical names that are modified by an adjective:

Je vais dans le Dakota du Nord.
J'habite dans l'État de New Jersey.

_Coming_

Every traveler has an accent, albeit sometimes almost imperceptible, that alerts native speakers to the fact that he (or she) is from another region or country. My French nasal sounds give me away as a New Yorker. My consultant Roger's “th” that comes out “zh,” is typically French. And the fact that my friend Carlos drops his final “s” is a dead give-away that he's a native Hispanic. If your accent reveals your identity and you want to say that you are from (or that you are coming from) a country, use the preposition _de_ to express _from_ before the names of feminine countries, continents, provinces, islands, and states and before masculine countries starting with a vowel:

I am from France.
Je suis de France.
zhuh sweHz duHz fraHzNs

I am from Israel.
Je suis d'Israël.
zhuh sweHz deHz-raH-ehl

The preposition _de_ + the definite article (_le, l', les_) is used to express _from_ before masculine countries and geographical names that are modified by an adjective:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am from Canada.</td>
<td>Je suis du Canada.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am from the United States.</td>
<td>Je suis des États-Unis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am from beautiful France.</td>
<td>Je suis de la belle France.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhuh swee dew kah-nah-dah</td>
<td>zhuh swee day-zay-tah-zew-nee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhuh swee duh lah behl frahns</td>
<td>zhuh swee duh lah-may-reek dew nohr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Where Are You Going?

Start your sentence with *Je vais* (I'm going) and tell what country you are going to if you plan to see: a bullfight, the Great Wall, Mexican jumping beans, the Moscow circus, the leaning Tower of Pisa, Big Ben, the pyramids, the Eiffel Tower, home.

Y Gads!

**Pitfall**

Never use *y* to refer to people. *Y* only refers to places, things, or ideas.

You probably looked at this section and thought: “Oops, the author spelled the title wrong.” Or perhaps you're gloating because you found a typographical mistake in the book—even authors and editors are human. Everyone who looks at *Y Gads!* wants to take out a red pen and correct it. It's obvious to me that they didn't study their French well enough to see that I'm just trying to be cute. You see, *y* (ee) is a French pronoun that generally refers to or replaces previously mentioned places or locations and may also refer to things or ideas. The pronoun *y* usually replaces the preposition *à* (*au, a l', à la, aux*) or other prepositions of location, shown in Table 14.7 + a noun.

**Table 14.7 Prepositions of Location**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chez</td>
<td><em>shay</em></td>
<td>at the house (business) of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contre</td>
<td><em>kohNtr</em></td>
<td>against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dans</td>
<td><em>dahN</em></td>
<td>in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>derrière</td>
<td><em>deh-ryehr</em></td>
<td>behind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devant</td>
<td><em>duh-vahN</em></td>
<td>in front of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en</td>
<td><em>ahN</em></td>
<td>in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entre</td>
<td><em>ahNtr</em></td>
<td>between</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sous</td>
<td><em>soo</em></td>
<td>under</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sur</td>
<td><em>sewr</em></td>
<td>on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vers</td>
<td><em>vehr</em></td>
<td>toward</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You received a letter today from your French friend. I, of course, would never open your mail, but I sure am curious about that letter. Is it on your desk? Are you going to answer it
immediately? Are you going to go to France to visit your friend? Are you going to stay at your friend's house? Will your family say, “Go there and have a good time”? All of these questions can be answered in French by using the pronoun *y*.

**As a Rule**

*Y* is only used to replace *de* + noun when *de* is part of a prepositional phrase showing location:

- *La douane est à côté des bagages.*  
  *La douane y est.*

*Y* means *there* when the place has already been mentioned, and can also mean it, them, in it/them, to it/them, or on it/them.

- *Il va à Paris.*  
  *Mon billet est dans ma poche.*  
  *Je réponds à la lettre.*

- *Il y va.*  
  *Mon billet y est.*

- *Je réponds à la lettre.*

*Y* means *there* when the place has already been mentioned, and can also mean it, them, in it/them, to it/them, or on it/them.

- *Il va à Paris.*  
  *Mon billet est dans ma poche.*  
  *Je réponds à la lettre.*

- *Il y va.*  
  *Mon billet y est.*

- *Je réponds à la lettre.*

Sometimes *y* is used in French and is not translated into English:

- *La valise est sur la table?*  
  *Oui, elle y est.*

*Y* is placed before the verb to which its meaning is tied. When there are two verbs, *y* is placed before the infinitive:

- *J'y vais.*  
  *Je n'y vais pas.*

- *Je désire y aller.*  
  *N'y va pas.*

- *I am going there.*  
  *I'm not going there.*

- *I want to go there.*  
  *Don't go there.*

In an affirmative command *y* changes position and is placed immediately after the verb and is joined to it by a hyphen:

- *Vas-y! (vah zee)*  
  *Allez-y! (ah-lay zee)*

  - *Go (there)! (Familiar)*
  - *Go (there)! (Polite)*

**Using y**

Word has gotten out that you'll be going to Europe this summer. Your nosy next door neighbor has heard the rumor and can't wait to pump you for information. Use *y* to efficiently answer her questions and make a rapid getaway:

1. *Vous allez en France?*
2. Vous restez à Paris?
3. Vous passez vos vacances chez votre famille?
4. Vous allez descendre en ville?
5. Vous allez dîner dans des restaurants élégants?
6. Vous allez penser à votre travail?

Make a Suggestion

As a Rule
The familiar command forms of *er* verbs (regular and irregular) retain the final *s* before *y*. This is to prevent the clash of two vowel sounds together. Remember to put a liaison (linking) between the final consonant and *y*.

Let's say you are planning a trip with a group of friends. Your friends are spirited and lively—and none are shy about expressing an opinion about where the group should go. It's your turn to react to the various suggestions:

Example: aller en Italie
   Allons-y!
   N'y allons pas!

voyager en Grèce
aller à l'aquarium
rester dans un hôtel chic
passer la journée au carnaval
assister à une exposition d'art moderne

The Least You Need to Know

- To suggest an activity use *on* + the conjugated verb or the *nous* form conjugated without *nous*.
- Simple phrases can express your likes (C'est super!) and dislikes (C'est la barbe!).
- Countries that end in *e* are usually feminine. The rest are masculine.
- The pronoun *y* can be substituted for a preposition + a location. *Y* means *there*. 
Chapter 15
I Wanna Shop Till I Drop

You've visited just about everything on your "Must See" list, compiled with the help of your friends. For the time being you've had your fill of sightseeing. Now you would like to pick up some souvenirs of your trip, or those gifts you promised family and friends at home.

Are you particular about what you buy? Is it important to you to pick out the "perfect" gift or memento? Do you spend time agonizing over the right color, size, material, design? Or is shopping a chore and you choose almost anything you feel will be appropriate? This chapter will help you make the decisions that are best for you. Read and study all the information before you "shop till you drop."
Now That's My Kinda Store!

Today has been designated as a shopping day. Do you prefer to browse in a small boutique or are you attracted by a large, elegant mall (un centre commercial—uhN sahNtr koh-mehr-syahl) such as le Forum des Halles in Paris or the underground Place Bonaventure in Montreal. Table 15.1 will point you in the direction of stores that might interest you and the merchandise you can purchase in them.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 15.1 Stores (Les magasins—lay mah-gah-zaN)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>la parfumerie, perfume store lah par-fuhN-ree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la librairie, book store lah lee-breh-ree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le magasin de fleuriste, florist luh mah-gah-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saN duh fluh-reest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la boutique, boutique lah boo-teeK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le grand magasin, department store luh grahN mah-gah-zaN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le bureau de tabac, tobacconist luh bew-ro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duh tah-bah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le kiosk à journaux, newsstand luh kee-ohsk ah zhoor-noh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le magasin de disques, record store luh mah-gah-zaN duh deesk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la bijouterie, jewelry store lah bee-zhoor-tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la maroquinerie, leather goods store lah mah-roh-kaN-ree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le magasin de souvenirs, souvenir shop luh mah-gah-zaN duh soo-vuh-neer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| du parfum, perfume                                    |
| des livres, books                                    |
| des fleurs, flowers                                  |
| des vêtements, clothing                             |
| presque tout, almost everything                      |
| du tabac, tobacco, des cigarettes (f.), cigarettes, |
| des pipes (f.), pipes, des cigares (f.), cigars,     |
| des allumettes (f.), matches, des briquets (m.),    |
| lighters                                            |
| des journaux (m.), newspapers, des revues (f.),     |
| des magazines (m.), magazines                       |
| des disques (m.), records, des cassettes (f.),      |
| cassettes, des C.D. (m.), compact disks             |
| des bijoux (m.), jewels, des bagues (f.), rings,    |
| des bracelets (m.), bracelet, des montres (f.),    |
| watches, des boucles (f.) d'oreille, earrings, des |
| colliers (m.), necklaces                            |
| des portefeuilles (m.), wallets, des sacs (m.),    |
| pocket books, des valises (f.), suitcases, des     |
| serviettes (f.), briefcases                         |
| des tee-shirt (m.), T-shirts, des posters (m.),     |
| posters, des monuments en miniature (m.),          |
| miniature monuments, des tableaux (m.),            |
| paintings                                           |
Know Your Jewels

Cultural Tidbits

Do you want to bring home something that is inexpensive (what could be cheaper than a $20 T-shirt!), elegant, typically French, and appropriate to both genders? For as little as $10 you can purchase an original watercolor painted by an artist in Montmartre, along the banks of the Seine, or in front of a wide variety of tourist attractions.

As a Rule

If you want to say that you are going to a store or that you'll be at a store, remember to use à (to, at) + the definite article (au, à la, à l’): au grand magasin, à la parfumerie.

Some people feel, and rightfully so, that they can get a very good bargain when they purchase jewelry in a foreign country because they can avoid certain taxes and duties. Here's the living proof of that. In honor of our wedding anniversary my husband purchased a beautiful watch for me during a trip to Saint Martin (French side, of course). The exact watch, a well-known brand name, was double the price in a popular stateside store, reputed far and wide to give the best deals on jewelry. He really got an incredible deal. If you know your prices and are a good shopper, or if you're simply in the mood to buy some jewelry, you can use Table 15.2 to get exactly what you want.

Table 15.2 Jewels (les bijoux—lay bee-zhoo)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Word</th>
<th>English Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amethyst</td>
<td>une améthyste</td>
<td>ewn ah-may-teest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aquamarine</td>
<td>une aigue-marine</td>
<td>ewn ehg mah-reen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diamond</td>
<td>un diamant</td>
<td>uhN dee-ah-mahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emerald</td>
<td>une émeraude</td>
<td>ewn aym-rod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ivory</td>
<td>un ivoire</td>
<td>uhN nee-vwahr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jade</td>
<td>un jade</td>
<td>uhN zhahd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onyx</td>
<td>un onyx</td>
<td>uhN noh-neeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pearls</td>
<td>des perles (f.)</td>
<td>day pehrl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruby</td>
<td>un rubis</td>
<td>uhN rew-bee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sapphire</td>
<td>un saphir</td>
<td>uhN sah-feer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>topaz</td>
<td>une topaze</td>
<td>ewn toh-pahz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turquoise</td>
<td>une turquoise</td>
<td>ewn twr-kwahz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you are buying jewelry you might want to ask:

Est-ce en or?  
*ehs ahN nohr*  
Is it gold?

Est-ce en argent?  
*ehs ahN nahr-zahN*  
Is it silver?

**Clothing**

It's simply impossible to take a trip to France, the fashion capital of the world, and not come home with at least one article of clothing. You want to have one French label so that you can brag that you are *dans le vent (dahN luH vahN)*, in fashion. Table 15.3 will help you in your quest for something *au courant*.

**Table 15.3 Clothing (les vêtements—lay veht-mahN)**

**For One and All**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bathing suit</td>
<td>le maillot</td>
<td><em>luh mah-yo</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bikini</td>
<td>le bikini</td>
<td><em>luh bee-kee-nee</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>string bikini</td>
<td>la ficelle</td>
<td><em>lah fee-sehl</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belt</td>
<td>la ceinture</td>
<td><em>lah saN-rewr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bikini briefs</td>
<td>le slip</td>
<td><em>luh sleep</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boots</td>
<td>les bottes (f.)</td>
<td><em>lay boht</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gloves</td>
<td>les gants (m.)</td>
<td><em>lay gahN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>handkerchief</td>
<td>le mouchoir</td>
<td><em>luh moo-shwahr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hat</td>
<td>le chapeau</td>
<td><em>luh shah-po</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jacket</td>
<td>la veste</td>
<td><em>lah vehst</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outer jacket</td>
<td>le blouson</td>
<td><em>luh bloo-zohN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jeans</td>
<td>le jean</td>
<td><em>luh zheen</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jogging suit</td>
<td>le survêt, le jogging</td>
<td><em>luh sewr-veh, luH zhoh-geeng</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overcoat</td>
<td>le manteau</td>
<td><em>luh mahN-to</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pants</td>
<td>le pantalon</td>
<td><em>luh pahN-tah-lohN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pullover</td>
<td>le pull</td>
<td><em>luh pewl</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pajamas</td>
<td>le pyjama</td>
<td><em>luh pee-zhah-mah</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raincoat</td>
<td>l'imperméable (m.)</td>
<td><em>laN-pehr-may-ahbl</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>robe</td>
<td>la robe de chambre</td>
<td><em>lah rohb duh shahnbr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sandals (f.)</td>
<td>les sandales</td>
<td><em>lay sahN-dahl</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(table continued on next page)*
For One and All

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>French (Masculine)</th>
<th>French (Feminine)</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>scarf</td>
<td>l'écharpe (f.), le foulard</td>
<td>lay-shahrp, luh foo-lahr</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shirt (man-tailored)</td>
<td>la chemise</td>
<td>luh shuh-meez</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoes</td>
<td>les chaussures (f.), les souliers (m.)</td>
<td>lay sho-sewr, lay sool-lyay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shorts</td>
<td>le short</td>
<td>luh shohrt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sneakers</td>
<td>les tennis</td>
<td>lay tuh-nees</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>socks</td>
<td>les chaussettes (f.)</td>
<td>lay sho-seht</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T-shirt</td>
<td>le tee-shirt</td>
<td>luh tee-shehrt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>umbrella</td>
<td>le parapluiue</td>
<td>luh pah-rah-plwee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>underwear</td>
<td>les sous-vêtements (m.)</td>
<td>lay soo-veht-mahN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vest</td>
<td>le gilet</td>
<td>luh zhee-leh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You want to make sure that you get your right size. Tell the salesperson:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Je porte du...</td>
<td>I wear...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>petit</td>
<td>small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moyen</td>
<td>medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grand</td>
<td>large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ma taille est...</td>
<td>My size is...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>petite</td>
<td>small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moyenne</td>
<td>medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grande</td>
<td>large</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For shoes you would say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Je chausse du...</td>
<td>I wear shoe size...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>petite</td>
<td>small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moyenne</td>
<td>medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grande</td>
<td>large</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Cultural Tidbits**

All products in France (except medicine, food, and books) have a T.V.A. (taxe à la valeur ajoutée), a value-added tax added on to the price of the item. This tax varies depending on the purchase. Visitors from outside the European Economic Community (E.E.C.) may receive a reimbursement of the tax if they spend above a certain amount (often 13 percent on a minimum purchase of 2,000F). Visitors from within the E.E.C. must spend more to receive the discount. So always save your sales receipts and present them at the T.V.A. desk at the airport.
Colors

**As a Rule**
To describe a color as light add the word clair.

To describe a color as dark add the word foncé.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Light blue</th>
<th>bleu clair</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dark green</td>
<td>vert foncé</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

My friend Vivian, an *artiste*, has taught her four-year-old daughter to describe things as chartreuse, teal, aubergine, and tangerine. I, on the other hand, see the world in primary colors. Whether you go for the *exotique* or the *ordinaire*, Table 15.4 will help you with the basic colors that will get you by.

**Table 15.4 Colors (les couleurs—lay koo-luhr)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beige</td>
<td>beige</td>
<td>behzh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>black</td>
<td>noir(e)</td>
<td>nwahr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blue</td>
<td>bleu(e)</td>
<td>bluh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brown</td>
<td>brun(e)</td>
<td>bruhN (brawn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purple</td>
<td>mauve</td>
<td>mov</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>rouge</td>
<td>roozh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gray</td>
<td>gris(e)</td>
<td>gree(z)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>green</td>
<td>vert(e)</td>
<td>vehr(t)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orange</td>
<td>orange</td>
<td>oh-rahNzh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pink</td>
<td>rose</td>
<td>roz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>white</td>
<td>blanc(he)</td>
<td>blahN(sh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>jaune</td>
<td>zhon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Materials**

While travelling, you might be tempted to make a clothing purchase. Do you find linen sexy? Do you love the feel of silk? Do you crave the coolness of cotton? Is leather a turn-on? Are you into wrinkle-free? We choose or reject different fabrics for a wide variety of reasons. Table 15.5 will help you pick the material you prefer for your special purchases:

**As a Rule**
Colors are adjectives and must agree with the noun they are describing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>un chemisier blanc</td>
<td>a white blouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>une chemise blanche</td>
<td>a white shirt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>des chemisiers blancs</td>
<td>white blouses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>des chemises blanches</td>
<td>white shirts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Table 15.5 Materials (Les tissus—lay tee-sew)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cashmere</td>
<td>en cachemire</td>
<td>ahN kahsh-meer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corduroy</td>
<td>en velours</td>
<td>ahN vuh-loor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>côtelée</td>
<td>koht-lay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cotton</td>
<td>en coton</td>
<td>ahN koh-tohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>denim</td>
<td>en jean</td>
<td>ahN zheen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flannel</td>
<td>en flannel</td>
<td>ahN flah-nehl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gabardine</td>
<td>en gabardine</td>
<td>ahN gah-bahr-deen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knit</td>
<td>en tricot</td>
<td>ahN tree-ko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leather</td>
<td>en cuir</td>
<td>ahN kweer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linen</td>
<td>en lin</td>
<td>ahN laN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(table continued on next page)*
Read the Labels

Have you ever accidentally washed a “dry clean only” shirt? Or, have you ever washed a 100% cotton pair of jeans that could never be worn again? Make sure to read all labels carefully for the following information:

- non-rétrécissable
- lavable
- en tissu infroissable

You're Putting Me On

Now that your wardrobe is full, you will have to decide what to put on. The verb *mettre* in Table 15.7 will help you express this concept. Because it is an irregular verb, you should probably commit its forms to memory.

**Table 15.7 The Verb mettre (to put [on])**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je mets</td>
<td><em>zhuh meh</em></td>
<td>I put (on)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu mets</td>
<td><em>tew meh</em></td>
<td>you put (on)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on met</td>
<td><em>eel (ehl, ohN) meh</em></td>
<td>he, she, one puts (on)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous mettons</td>
<td><em>noo meh-tohN</em></td>
<td>we put (on)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous mettez</td>
<td><em>voo meh-tay</em></td>
<td>you put (on)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles mettent</td>
<td><em>eel (ehl) meht</em></td>
<td>they put (on)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What Do You Put On?

Does your life style demand an extensive wardrobe or are you strictly a jeans and T-shirt kind of person? Imagine that you've found yourself in the following situations. Describe in detail (including jewelry) what you put on to go to: work, the beach, a formal dinner party, your friend's house, skiing.
What's the Object?

I have an absolutely fabulous red dress. Imagine that I was telling you about it and said: “I put on my red dress to go to parties. I love my red dress. I wear my red dress very often.” How tedious and boring! It sounds much better to say: “I put my red dress on to go to parties. I love it and I wear it often.”

What did I do to improve my conversation? I stopped repeating my red dress (a direct object noun) and replaced it with it (a direct object pronoun). Just what exactly are direct objects? Let's take a closer look:

Direct objects (which can be nouns or pronouns) answer the question whom or what the subject is acting upon and may refer to people, places, things, or ideas:

I see the boy.  I see him.
I like the dress.  I like it.
He pays John and me.  He pays us.

Indirect object nouns can be replaced by indirect object pronouns. Take the story of my friend Georgette who is crazy about her new boyfriend, Paul. This is what she told me: “I write to Paul. Then I read my love letters to Paul. I buy presents for Paul. I make cakes for Paul. I cook dinners for Paul.” To get to the point more efficiently, all she had to say was: I write to Paul and then I read him (to him) my love letters. I buy him (for him) presents. I make him (for him) cakes and I cook him (for him) dinners.”

How do indirect objects differ from direct objects? We'll need a closer look:

Indirect objects answer the question to whom the subject is doing something or for whom the subject is acting. Indirect objects only refer to people.

I speak to the boys.  I speak to them.
I buy a gift for Mary.  I buy a gift for her. (I buy her a gift.)
He gives (to) me a tie every Christmas.
We use direct and indirect pronouns automatically in English all the time to prevent the constant, monotonous repetition of a word and to allow our conversation to flow naturally. Direct and indirect object nouns in French may be replaced by the pronouns in Table 15.8.
### Table 15.8 Object Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direct Object Pronouns</th>
<th>Indirect Object Pronouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>me (m')</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te (t')</td>
<td>te (t')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le (l')</td>
<td>lui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la (l')</td>
<td>lui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous</td>
<td>nous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous</td>
<td>vous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>les</td>
<td>leur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m'</td>
<td>m'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuh</td>
<td>lui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'</td>
<td>lui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noo</td>
<td>noo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voo</td>
<td>voo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lay</td>
<td>luhr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(familiar)</td>
<td>(to him)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(familiar)</td>
<td>(to her)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to us)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you (polite)</td>
<td>to (you)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pitfall**

Be careful! Some verbs like écouter (to listen to), chercher (to look for), payer (to pay for), and regarder (to look at) take direct objects in French.

The clue to the correct usage of an indirect object is the French preposition à (au, à la, à l', aux) followed by the name of or reference to a person. Some verbs like répondre (à), téléphoner (à), and ressembler (à) are always followed by à + person and will, therefore, always take an indirect object pronoun.

As you can see, you should have little problem using the direct or indirect object pronouns for me (to me), you, (to you), or us (to us) because these pronouns are all exactly the same. You must be careful, however, when expressing him, her, or to/for him, her, and them, or to/for them because there are now two sets of pronouns. Sometimes this does get a bit tricky. Remember to choose the pronoun that reflects the number and gender of the noun to which you are referring:

- Elle met *le* pantalon noir.  
  Il met *la* chemise blanche.  
  Je mets *mes* gants bruns.

- Elle *le* met.  
  Il *la* met.  
  Je *les* mets.

- Il téléphone à Marie.  
  Il téléphone à Marie et à Luc.

- II lui téléphone.  
  Il leur téléphone.

### Position of Object Pronouns

Although we can automatically place object pronouns in their proper place in English, correct placement in French does not follow English rules and requires some practice. Let's take a closer look.
Object pronouns are placed before the verb to which their meaning is tied (usually the conjugated verb). When there are two verbs, object pronouns are placed before the infinitive:

- Je la mets.
- Je ne la mets pas.
- Je vais la mettre.
- Ne la mets pas!

- Je lui parle.
- Je ne lui parle pas.
- Je ne vais pas lui parler.
- Ne lui parle pas!

In an affirmative command, object pronouns change position and are placed immediately after the verb and are joined to it by a hyphen. *Me* becomes *moi* when it follows the verb:

- Mets-la!
- Mettez-la!
- Parle-lui!
- Parlez-lui!
- Donnez-moi la robe!

**Using Direct Object Pronouns**

Imagine that you are on a shopping spree in the Samaritaine department store in Paris and your arms are loaded with all your “finds.” Your friend joins you and questions your choices. Answer all his or her questions efficiently by using a direct object pronoun:

1. Aimez-vous le pantalon bleu?
2. Prenez-vous les gants noirs?
3. Choisissez-vous la cravate rouge?
4. Regardez-vous les chaussures brunes?
5. Achetez-vous la chemise blanche?
6. Adorez-vous le blouson beige?

**Using Indirect Object Pronouns**

Your friend doesn't know what to buy her friends and family members as gifts. Offer suggestions, following the examples:

- Example: Paul/une radio
  Offre-lui une radio.

- 1. Robert/une montre
- 2. ses parents/un tableau
- 3. Luc et Michel/des cravates
- 4. ses soeurs/des robes
- 5. son amie/un bracelet
- 6. sa grand-mère/un pull

**Asking for What You Want**

Sometimes you just want to browse and resent having a salesperson hover over you waiting to make a sale. At other times, you have specific wants and needs and require assistance. Here are some phrases to help you deal with most common situations.
Upon entering a store an employee might ask you:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Est-ce que je peux vous aider?</td>
<td>May I help you?</td>
<td>Puis-je vous aider?</td>
<td>pweezh voo zeh-day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ehs-kuh zhuh puh voo zeh-day</td>
<td></td>
<td>Vous désirez?</td>
<td>voo day-zee-ray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May I help you?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you are just browsing, you would answer:

Non, merci, je regarde (tout simplement).

No, thank you, I am (just) looking.

If you want to see or buy something, you would answer:

Oui, je voudrais voir…s’il vous plaÎt.

Yes, I would like to see…please.

Je cherche…

I'm looking for…

And of course, if you're a shopper like I am, you'd want to know:

Y a-t-il des soldes?

Are there any sales?

Avez-vous cassé les prix?

Have you slashed your prices?

What Do You Prefer?

To be of proper assistance to you and to help you make the decision that's right for you the salesperson has to understand your preferences. Here are a few questions you may hear:

Quel pull est-ce que vous préférez?

Which pullover do you prefer?

If you are deciding between two different items, the salesperson would ask which one(s) you preferred by using one of the interrogative adjectives in Table 15.9.

Table 15.9 Interrogative Adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>lequel (luh-kehrl)</td>
<td>laquelle (lah-kehrl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>lesquels (lay-kehrl)</td>
<td>les quelles (lay-kehrl)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
These interrogative adjectives must agree with the nouns to which they refer:

Lequel de ces pulls est-ce que vous préférez?
luh-kehl duh say pewl ehs-kuh voo pray-fay-ray
Which one of these pullovers do you prefer?

Lesquelles de ces robes est-ce que vous prenez?
lay-kehl duh say rohb ehs-kuh voo pruh-nay
Which ones of these dresses are you taking?

To express your preference (to say the ... one or the ... ones), simply use the appropriate definite article plus an adjective that agrees. When speaking about the pullover you might say:

Je préfère le bleu clair.
zhuh pray-fehr luh bluh klehr
I prefer the light blue one.

Je préfère le grand.
zhuh pray-fehr luh grahN
I prefer the big one.

When speaking about the dresses you might say:

Je prends les petites.
zhuh prahN lay puh-teet
I am taking the small ones.

Je prends la rouge et la bleue.
zhuh prahN lah roozh ay lah bluh
I am taking the red one and the blue one.

Expressing Opinions

That shirt is you. You just love those pants. What a perfect jacket! If you are happy with an item you will want to express your pleasure by saying one of the following:

Ça me plaît.           sah mahu pluh       I like it.
Ça me va.             sah mahu vah       It suits (fits) me.
C'est agréable.       seh tah-gray-abbl  It's nice.
C'est élégant(e).      seh tay-lay-gahN  It's elegant.
C'est pratique.       seh prah-teek      It's practical.
If you are unhappy with what you see, you might use:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Expression</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ça ne me plaît pas.</td>
<td>sah nuh muh pleh pah</td>
<td>I don't like it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ça ne me va pas.</td>
<td>sah nuh muh vah pah</td>
<td>It doesn't suit (fit) me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il (elle) est abominable.</td>
<td>eel (ehl) eh tah-boh-mee-nahbl</td>
<td>It's horrible.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Il (elle) est trop petit(e).  
**eel (ehl) eh tro puh-tee(t)** It's too small.

Il (elle) est trop serré(e).  
**eel (ehl) eh tro suh-ray** It's too tight.

Il (elle) est trop court(e).  
**eel (ehl) eh tro koor(t)** It's too short.

Il (elle) est trop long(ue).  
**eel (ehl) eh tro lohN(g)** It's too long.

Il (Elle) est trop criard(e).  
**eel (ehl) eh tro kree-ahr** It's too loud.

Il (Elle) est trop étroit(e).  
**eel (ehl) eh tro pay-trwaht** It's too narrow.

---

**Pitfall**  
Remember to change verbs and adjectives to accommodate plural subjects:  
Il(s) sont trop étroits.  
Elles sont trop étroites.

---

If you're not satisfied and want something else:

Je cherche quelque chose de plus (moins) + adjective  
zhuh shehrsh kehl kuh shooz duh plew (mwaN)  
I'm looking for something more (less)…

**I'll Take This, That, One of These, and Some of Those**

While considering a purchase, it's not uncommon to ask a friend or salesperson for an opinion of this suit, that shirt, these shoes, or those ties. A demonstrative adjective points out someone or thing being referred to and allows you to be specific by expressing this, that, these, and those as shown in Table 15.10.

**Table 15.10 Demonstrative Adjectives: This, That, These, Those**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>used before masculine singular nouns beginning with a consonant</th>
<th>used before masculine singular nouns beginning with a vowel</th>
<th>used before all feminine singular nouns</th>
<th>used before all plural nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ce (suh)</td>
<td>cet (seht)</td>
<td>cette (seht)</td>
<td>ces (say)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce sac</td>
<td>cet imperméable</td>
<td>cette écharpe</td>
<td>ces sacs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cette robe</td>
<td>ces écharpes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Demonstrative adjectives precede the nouns they modify and agree with them in number and gender. The special masculine form *cet* is used to prevent a clash of two vowel sounds together.

- Demonstrative adjectives are repeated before each noun:

  Ce pantalon-là est trop grand.

  *That pair of pants is too big.*

### The Least You Need to Know

- To shop successfully in a French-speaking country you must use the metric system.

- To make your conversation more fluid, use object pronouns to replace object nouns.

- If you know how to ask for what you want, you'll probably get it.

- Demonstrative adjectives (*ce, cet, cette, ces*) agree in number and gender with the nouns they describe.
Chapter 16
Finally, A Home-Cooked Meal

In the last chapter you learned to shop for souvenirs, gifts, and some everyday odds and ends. You also picked out some fabulous French fashions and even managed, despite the metric system, to get the right size. Shopping is hard work and you've really worked up an appetite. It's a bit early for dinner. What should you do next?

Your best bet is to stop in one of the local food stores to pick up a snack to tide you over until your next meal. You can grab a sandwich (un sandwich—uhN sahNd-weesh) made on a long loaf of French bread (une baguette—ewn bah-geht), a pastry (une pâtisserie—ewn pah-tees-ree), or just a large chunk of cheese (du fromage—dew froh-mahzh). This chapter will provide you with many alternatives, and assure that you get the right quantities. In the end, there's a special treat.
Shopping Around

I loved going on a class trip to Paris in 1990 with my younger son, Michael. Like his mother, he's an incorrigible junk food addict and truly appreciates the sweet things in life. It seems that there are pastry shops on every corner in Paris and he and I enjoyed many an éclair together. Are you like us? Do you like to keep snacks in your hotel room, just in case you get the midnight munchies? Or have you rented a condo or an apartment and prefer to do your own cooking? In any French-speaking country you will be able to enjoy the culinary delights in the shops listed in Table 16.1.

Table 16.1 Food Shops and Provisions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>l'épicerie</td>
<td>grocery (vegetable) store</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>les légumes (m.)</td>
<td>lay lay-gewn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>les provisions (f.)</td>
<td>lay proh-vee-zyohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la boucherie</td>
<td>lah boosh-ree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la viande</td>
<td>lah vyahNd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la boulangerie</td>
<td>lah boo-lahNzh-ree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>les desserts</td>
<td>lay duh-sehr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la charuterie</td>
<td>lah shahr-keww-tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>les viandes froides</td>
<td>lay vyahNd frwahd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la confiserie</td>
<td>lah kohN-feez-ree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>les bonbons (m.)</td>
<td>lay bohN-bohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la crèmerie</td>
<td>lah kraym-ree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>les produits (m.) laitiers</td>
<td>lay proh-dwee leh-tyay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la fruiterie</td>
<td>la frwee-tree</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(table continued on next page)
Where Are You Going?

**As a Rule**
Many of the types of stores that you will frequent end in *er*e. Drop this ending and add *ier* (ièr) to get the name of the male (female) person who works in the store.

- l’ *épicer* • the grocer
- l’ *épicière* • the woman grocer

You've scouted out the shops in the area where you are staying and now you're ready to venture out on your own and do some serious shopping. When it's time to stock up and you're ready to leave, use the verb *aller* and the preposition *à* + the appropriate definite article (*au, à la, à l’*) to indicate the store to which you are going:

Je vais à l'épicerie. I'm going to the grocery store.

Je vais à la boulangerie. I'm going to the bakery.

It is very common to use the preposition *chez* (to [at] the house [business] of) + the *person* to express where you are going:

- Je vais chez l' *épicer* (épicière).
- Je vais chez le (la) boulanger (boulangère).

Write where you would go to buy: vegetables, pastry, meat, fruits, fish, wine, candy, and milk.
The delectable displays of food in the windows of various food stores across France just beckon you to enter and try something new and exotic. What foods (aliments m.) are among your favorites: fruits? vegetables? pastries? cheeses? Are you interested in trying different meat, poultry, game, or fish? Perhaps there’s a wine that has caught your fancy? Tables 16.2–16.9 will help you enjoy the culinary experience of your choice.

Table 16.2 At the Grocery Store

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vegetables</th>
<th>Les Légumes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>asparagus</td>
<td>les asperges (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broccoli</td>
<td>le brocoli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carrot</td>
<td>la carotte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corn</td>
<td>le maïs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eggplant</td>
<td>l’aubergine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lettuce</td>
<td>la laitue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mushroom</td>
<td>le champignon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onion</td>
<td>l’oignon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pepper</td>
<td>le piment, le poivron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potato</td>
<td>la pomme de terre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rice</td>
<td>le riz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shallot</td>
<td>l’échalote (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spinach</td>
<td>les épinards (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweet potato</td>
<td>la patate douce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomato</td>
<td>la tomate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The delectable displays of food in the windows of various food stores across France just beckon you to enter and try something new and exotic. What foods (aliments m.) are among your favorites: fruits? vegetables? pastries? cheeses? Are you interested in trying different meat, poultry, game, or fish? Perhaps there’s a wine that has caught your fancy? Tables 16.2–16.9 will help you enjoy the culinary experience of your choice.

Table 16.2 At the Grocery Store

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vegetables</th>
<th>Les Légumes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>asparagus</td>
<td>les asperges (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broccoli</td>
<td>le brocoli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carrot</td>
<td>la carotte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corn</td>
<td>le maïs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eggplant</td>
<td>l’aubergine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lettuce</td>
<td>la laitue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mushroom</td>
<td>le champignon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onion</td>
<td>l’oignon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pepper</td>
<td>le piment, le poivron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potato</td>
<td>la pomme de terre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rice</td>
<td>le riz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shallot</td>
<td>l’échalote (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spinach</td>
<td>les épinards (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweet potato</td>
<td>la patate douce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomato</td>
<td>la tomate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Les Fruits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apple</td>
<td>la pomme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apricot</td>
<td>l'abricot (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banana</td>
<td>la banane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blueberry</td>
<td>la myrtille</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cherry</td>
<td>la cerise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td>la datte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fig</td>
<td>la figue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grape</td>
<td>le raisin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grapefruit</td>
<td>le pamplemousse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lemon</td>
<td>le citron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>melon</td>
<td>le melon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orange</td>
<td>l'orange(f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peach</td>
<td>la pêche</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pear</td>
<td>la poire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pineapple</td>
<td>l'ananas (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prune</td>
<td>le pruneau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raisin</td>
<td>le raisin sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raspberry</td>
<td>la framboise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strawberry</td>
<td>la fraise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nuts</th>
<th>Les Noix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>almond</td>
<td>l'amande</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chestnut</td>
<td>le marron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hazelnut</td>
<td>la noisette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walnut</td>
<td>la noix</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 16.4 At the Butcher or Delicatessen

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meats</th>
<th>Les Viandes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bacon</td>
<td>le lard, le bacon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beef</td>
<td>le boeuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blood pudding</td>
<td>le boudin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bologna</td>
<td>la mortadelle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brains</td>
<td>les cervelles (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chopped meat</td>
<td>la viande hachée</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goat</td>
<td>la chèvre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ham</td>
<td>le jambon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lamb</td>
<td>l'agneau (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liver</td>
<td>le foie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pâté</td>
<td>le pâté</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pork</td>
<td>le porc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roast beef</td>
<td>le rosbif</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sausage</td>
<td>les saucisses (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spareribs</td>
<td>les basses côtes (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweetbreads</td>
<td>les ris de veau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tongue</td>
<td>la langue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veal</td>
<td>le veau</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>La Volaille et le Gibier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chicken</td>
<td>le poulet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duck</td>
<td>le canard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goose</td>
<td>l'oie (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pheasant</td>
<td>le faisan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pigeon</td>
<td>le pigeon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quail</td>
<td>la caille</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rabbit</td>
<td>le lapin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turkey</td>
<td>la dinde</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Cultural Tidbits

Pâté is a paste (thicker than our traditional meat loaf), usually made with goose liver, but it may also be prepared with duck, pork, or chicken. Wine is added to the ground meat mixture and then it is baked in a loaf. The pâté is then allowed to cool and is served cold, often with bread or crackers. At times, pâté is baked in a decorated pastry crust (en croûte—ahN kroot), making it even more flavorful.

---

**Table 16.5 At the Fish Store**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fish and Seafood</th>
<th>Le Poisson et les Fruits de Mer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clam</td>
<td>la palourde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crab</td>
<td>le crabe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crawfish</td>
<td>les écrevisses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flounder</td>
<td>le carrelet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frogs' legs</td>
<td>les cuisses de grenouille (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>halibut</td>
<td>le flétan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>herring</td>
<td>le hareng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lobster</td>
<td>le homard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mussel</td>
<td>la moule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oyster</td>
<td>l'huître</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red snapper</td>
<td>la perche rouge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salmon</td>
<td>le saumon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sardine</td>
<td>la sardine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scallops</td>
<td>les coquilles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sea bass</td>
<td>le bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shrimp</td>
<td>la crevette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snail</td>
<td>l'escargot (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sole</td>
<td>la sole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>squid</td>
<td>le calmar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swordfish</td>
<td>l'espadon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trout</td>
<td>la truite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuna</td>
<td>le thon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 16.6 At the Dairy

Dairy Products Produits Laitiers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>butter</td>
<td>le beurre</td>
<td><em>luh buhr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheese</td>
<td>le fromage</td>
<td><em>luh froh-mahzh</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cream</td>
<td>la crème</td>
<td><em>lah krehm</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eggs</td>
<td>des œufs (m.)</td>
<td><em>day zuh</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yogurt</td>
<td>le yaourt</td>
<td><em>luh yah-oort</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As a Rule
One egg, *un œuf* is pronounced *uhN nuh*; and more than one, *des œufs*, is pronounced *day zuh*.

Table 16.7 At the Bakery and Pastry Shop

Breads and Desserts Pains et Desserts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apple turnover</td>
<td>le chausson aux pommes</td>
<td><em>luh shoo-sohN o pohm</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bread</td>
<td>le pain</td>
<td><em>luh paN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brioche</td>
<td>la brioche</td>
<td><em>lah bree-ohsh</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cake</td>
<td>le gâteau</td>
<td><em>luh gah-to</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chocolate croissant</td>
<td>le pain au chocolat</td>
<td><em>luh paN o shoh-koh-lah</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cookie</td>
<td>le biscuit</td>
<td><em>luh bees-kwee</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cream puffs</td>
<td>les choux à la crème (m.)</td>
<td><em>lay shoo ah lah krehm</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crescent roll</td>
<td>le croissant</td>
<td><em>luh krwah-sahN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>danish</td>
<td>la danoise</td>
<td><em>lah dah-nwahz</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doughnut</td>
<td>le beignet</td>
<td><em>luh beh-nyeh</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loaf of French bread</td>
<td>la baguette</td>
<td><em>lah bah-geht</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pie</td>
<td>la tarte</td>
<td><em>lah tahrt</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
roll  le petit pain  luh puh-tee paN
### Cultural Tidbits

If you are interested in maintaining a nutritious, healthy diet you might want to look for *une maison de régime* (*ewn meh-zohn dahn ray-zheem*)—a health foods store, also referred to as *une diététique* (*ewn day-tay-teek*). Since product advertising is not as widespread in France as it is here in the U.S., the French rely on the professional advice of the store owner when it comes to purchasing products. Teas (especially herbal teas), vitamins, and breads are the most popular items sold in a French health foods store.

---

### Table 16.8 At the Candy Store

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sweets</th>
<th>Les Sucreries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>candy</td>
<td>les bonbons (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chocolate</td>
<td>le chocolat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 16.9 At the Supermarket

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drinks</th>
<th>Les Boissons</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beer</td>
<td>la bière</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>champagne</td>
<td>le champagne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cider</td>
<td>le cidre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coffee</td>
<td>le café</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>juice</td>
<td>le jus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hot chocolate (cocoa)</td>
<td>le chocolat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lemonade</td>
<td>le citron pressé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>milk</td>
<td>le lait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mineral water</td>
<td>l'eau minérale (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carbonated</td>
<td>gazeuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-carbonated</td>
<td>plate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orangeade</td>
<td>l'orangeade (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soda</td>
<td>le soda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tea</td>
<td>le thé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wine</td>
<td>le vin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What's That Wine?

Have you ever looked at a wine label and wondered what all the information meant? We've come to the rescue with a convenient key that will help you make sense of wine labels. Both French and American governments have strict rules concerning wine and labeling, but in a nutshell, this is what you should know:

- The region where the wine was produced, such as Bourgogne (Burgundy), Bordeaux, Champagne
- Product of France
- The *appellation* of the wine (trademark), indicates the region in which the wine was produced and affirms that the grapes were grown, picked, fermented, and bottled according to strict government controls. Only better quality wines are marked with an *appellation*. Table wine is clearly marked as such, and has no *appellation* since it is of a lesser quality. A champagne label merely states: “Champagne.”
- The quality of the wine (from the lowest to the highest):
  - *vin de table*
    - village wine (no vineyard is mentioned, probably meaning that the wine is made from a variety of grapes from different vineyards)
  - premier cru and grand cru: Premier and grand cru indicate that the grapes used to produce the wine were of a superior quality because they were grown on the most fertile land, under the best climatic conditions. Although premier cru is considered the ultimate, many *connaisseurs* prefer the taste of grand cru. The ordinary palate would not be able to distinguish between the two.
    - premier grand cru
- The town where the wine was bottled
- The name and origin of the shipper (for champagne, the champagne house is usually the shipper)
- The net contents

---

**Cultural Tidbits**

Would you love to snack on a peanut-butter-and-jelly sandwich? You’re out of luck. Peanut butter (*le beurre de cacahuètes, luh buhr duh kah-kah-weht*) is not sold in France!
• The percentage of alcohol by volume
• The name and address of the importer

Information that may or may not be included on the label is:
• The vintage (the year the wine was bottled)
• The brand or château name
• Whether the wine was “estate” or “château” bottled

Cultural Tidbits

The only true champagne comes from the Champagne province in the northwest of France. All others are merely imitation sparkling wines. Here’s why. French winegrowers patiently and carefully work all year to grow and harvest the most perfect grapes possible. These grapes are then separated according to their types, the villages they come from, and the date when they were picked. They are then pressed, and their juice is fermented in different vats. In the spring, the wine is bottled. According to French law and tradition, the wine then ferments a second time in the bottle (creating the bubbles) and ages in cellars for three, four, or five years in order to reach perfect maturity.

It's the Quantity That Counts

You've decided to go on a picnic with a friend in the French countryside and have stopped by a charcuterie to purchase some sandwich meat. You figure that a half pound ought to be sufficient. But when you get to the counter to order, you find that no one understands how much you want. Why are you having this problem and how will you get the right amount of meat? In France the metric system is used for measuring quantities of food: liquids are measured in liters and solids are measured in kilograms or fractions thereof. Since most of us are used to dealing with ounces, pounds, pints, quarts, and gallons, I've included a conversion chart to help you out until the metric system becomes second nature.
Table 16.10 Measuring Quantities of Food

**Approximate Solid Measures**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Measure</th>
<th>Grams</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 oz.</td>
<td>28 grams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/4 lb.</td>
<td>375 grams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/4 lb.</td>
<td>125 grams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 lb.</td>
<td>500 grams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/2 lb.</td>
<td>250 grams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 lb.</td>
<td>1000 grams (1 kilogram)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Approximate Liquid Measures**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Measure</th>
<th>Milliliters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 oz.</td>
<td>30 milliliters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 oz. (1 pint)</td>
<td>475 milliliters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32 oz. (1 quart)</td>
<td>950 milliliters (approximately 1 liter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 gallon</td>
<td>3.75 liters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Not having been brought up on the metric system myself, I can understand that you might still be a bit confused. So I've made it even easier for you. Sometimes it's just easier to ask for a box, bag, jar, etc., and to commit to memory the amounts we're accustomed to: a pound, a quart, etc. Consult Table 16.11 to easily get the amount you want or need.

**Table 16.11 Getting the Right Amount**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Measure</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 pounds of</td>
<td>un kilo de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a bag of</td>
<td>un sac de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a bar of</td>
<td>une tablette de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a bottle of</td>
<td>une bouteille de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a box of</td>
<td>une boîte de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a can of</td>
<td>une boîte de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a dozen</td>
<td>une douzaine de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a half pound of</td>
<td>deux cent cinquante grammes de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a jar of</td>
<td>un bocal de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a package of</td>
<td>un paquet de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a pound of</td>
<td>un demi-kilo de, cinq cents grammes de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a quart of</td>
<td>un litre de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a slice of</td>
<td>une tranche de</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You're on a diet but you must have “just a taste” of the chocolate mousse that your French host spent hours preparing for you. He starts filling your bowl and you try to motion: “enough.” Too bad, he just keeps heaping it on. Now there's really a lot of mousse on your plate. Finally, there's just too much. Don't allow yourself to get into this bind. Here are some expressions that will help you limit the quantity you receive:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a little</td>
<td>un peu de</td>
<td><em>uhN puh duh</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a lot of</td>
<td>beaucoup de</td>
<td><em>bo-koo duh</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enough</td>
<td>assez de</td>
<td><em>ah-say duh</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>too much</td>
<td>trop de</td>
<td><em>tro duh</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*What's in the Fridge?*

When you arrive at the check-in desk at your hotel in Saint Martin, you are delighted to find out that your room has been upgraded and there's a refrigerator at your disposal. You look out the window and there's a convenience store in walking distance. What snacks would you purchase for that occasional craving?

*Cultural Tidbits*

Be advised: it is not customary to receive a shopping bag in individual neighborhood stores. French shoppers usually bring along *un filet* (*uhN fee-leh*), a net bag where they stow their purchases. This bag is re-usable and is, therefore, environment-friendly. You may purchase one at a supermarket, drugstore, or variety store.

*Getting What You Want*

*As a Rule*

All of these expressions of quantity include the word *de* (of). Before a vowel *de* becomes *d’*. In all other instances, *de* never changes:

- beaucoup de bonbons
- a lot of candies
- une douzaine d’oeufs
- a dozen eggs

In a small, neighborhood store there will always be someone eager to help you. Be prepared for the questions that you might be asked and the proper way to give an answer that will get you what you want:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vous désirez?</td>
<td><em>Est-ce que je peux vous aider?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voo day-zee-ray</td>
<td><em>ehs-kuh zhuh puh voo zeh-day</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What would you like?</td>
<td>May I help you?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Your answer might begin:

Je voudrais…
zuh voo-dreh
I would like…
Pourriez-vous me donner…?
poo-ryay voo muh doh-nay
Could you give me…?
s'il vous plaÎt
seel voo pleh
please

You might then be asked:

Et avec ça?
ay ah-vehk sah
And with that?
C'est tout?
seh too
Is that all?

An appropriate response would be to either give additional items that you want or to answer:

Oui, c'est tout, merci.
wee seh too mehr-see
Yes, that's all, thank you.

You're on your own. Tell a shopkeeper that you would like the following: a pound of ham, a liter of soda, a chocolate bar, a box of cookies, a bag of candy, a half pound of turkey.

ir Irregularities

Snacking is fine but now you're in the mood for a good dinner. Imagine walking along the port in Martinique and smelling the aromas emanating from the various restaurants. Of course you want to know what type of cuisine is being served. Let's take a closer look at these verbs and some other similar ones. The verb servir (to serve) and a few others that end in ir (dormir—to sleep, partir—to leave, sentir—to feel, smell, and sortir—to go out) do not follow the pattern of present tense conjugation for ir verbs that has already been studied. They drop the consonant before the ir of the infinitive in the singular forms and retain that consonant in the plural forms:

**dormir (to sleep)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>je dors</th>
<th>zhuh dohr</th>
<th>I sleep</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tu dors</td>
<td>tew dohr</td>
<td>you sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on dör</td>
<td>eel (ehl, ohN) dohr</td>
<td>he (she, one) sleeps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous dormons</td>
<td>noo dohr-mohN</td>
<td>we sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous dormez</td>
<td>voo dohr-may</td>
<td>you sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles dormant</td>
<td>eel (ehl) dohrm</td>
<td>they sleep</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(table continued on next page)
### (table continued from previous page)

**partir (to leave)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je</td>
<td><em>zhuh pahr</em></td>
<td>I leave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td><em>tew pahr</em></td>
<td>you leave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on part</td>
<td><em>eel (ehl, ohN) pahr</em></td>
<td>he (she, one) leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous partons</td>
<td><em>noo pahr-tohN</em></td>
<td>we leave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous partez</td>
<td><em>vooh pahr-tay</em></td>
<td>you leave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles partent</td>
<td><em>eel (ehl) pahrt</em></td>
<td>they leave</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**sentir (to smell, feel)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je</td>
<td><em>zhuh sahN</em></td>
<td>I smell, feel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td><em>tew sahN</em></td>
<td>you smell, feel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on sent</td>
<td><em>eel (ehl, ohN) sahN</em></td>
<td>he (she, one) smells, feels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous sentons</td>
<td><em>noo sahN-tohN</em></td>
<td>we smell, feel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous sentez</td>
<td><em>vooh sahN-tay</em></td>
<td>you smell, feel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles sentent</td>
<td><em>eel (ehl) sahNt</em></td>
<td>they smell, feel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**servir (to serve)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je</td>
<td><em>zhuh sehr</em></td>
<td>I serve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td><em>tew sehr</em></td>
<td>you serve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on sert</td>
<td><em>eel (ehl, ohN) sehr</em></td>
<td>he (she, one) serves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous servons</td>
<td><em>noo sehr-voohN</em></td>
<td>we serve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous servez</td>
<td><em>vooh sehr-vay</em></td>
<td>you serve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles servent</td>
<td><em>eel (ehl) sehrv</em></td>
<td>they serve</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**sortir (to go out)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je</td>
<td><em>zhuh sohr</em></td>
<td>I go out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td><em>tew sohr</em></td>
<td>you go out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on sort</td>
<td><em>eel (ehl, ohN) sohr</em></td>
<td>he (she, one) goes out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous sortons</td>
<td><em>noo sohr-tohN</em></td>
<td>we go out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous sortez</td>
<td><em>vooh sohr-tay</em></td>
<td>you go out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles sortent</td>
<td><em>eel (ehl) sohrt</em></td>
<td>they go out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
It's a Puzzle to Me

Do you want to make sure that you have all those verb forms down pat? Practice can make perfect in a fun way. Complete the crossword with the correct forms of all the verbs.
The Treat's on Me

Why not impress your friends with this delicious treat from *Bon Appétit*: frozen chocolate mousse truffles? They are great and easy to prepare. You will need:

- 1/2 cup sugar
- 3 large egg yolks
- 3/4 cup heavy cream
- 8 oz. semisweet chocolate morsels
- 2 tablespoons Chambord or amaretto liqueur
- 3–4 oz. grated semisweet chocolate

Mix sugar and egg yolks in medium bowl until thick. Bring cream to a boil in a heavy saucepan. Add hot cream to the yolk mixture and beat gently until thoroughly mixed. Return mixture to saucepan and stir over medium heat until custard gets thick—about three minutes. **Do not boil.** Remove from heat. Add chocolate to custard mixture. Stir until melted and smooth. Add liqueur. Cover and freeze until firm (4–24 hours). For each truffle use 1 tablespoon of the mixture. Shape into round balls. Roll in grated chocolate. Arrange in a single layer in a container lined with waxed paper. Freeze. Serve frozen. Can be kept up to one month. Enjoy!

The Least You Need to Know

- Use the verb *aller* + *à* + the definite article to express where you are going to.
- Purchasing the correct amount of food in France requires a knowledge of the metric system.
- Ask for a box or a jar of something if you are not familiar with the metric system.
- Certain *ir* verbs follow a different pattern of conjugation and should be committed to memory.
Let's say you're in gay Paris. Alas, it is neither lunch nor dinner time, but using the lessons from the last chapter, you've managed to grab a snack to tide you over until your next real meal. Or maybe you've stocked your hotel room refrigerator, and are lying around your room snacking on biscuits, fromage, and citronnade—your new knowledge of the metric system helped you when ordering the right amount of cheese.

But now you are really hungry, and it is time to head out and find a place for dinner. The French are fanatical about food, and their haute cuisine is considered the finest and most sophisticated in the world. Indeed, when Americans started taking food more seriously, they turned to France for guidance and inspiration (remember, Boston's own Julia Child)
built her reputation around teaching French cooking). With all the French cooking terms that have crept into our culture, there are plenty of places at home to practice gastronomic French—from menus to cookbooks and magazines. By the end of this chapter, you will be a pro at ordering from a French menu, even if you have certain dietary needs or restrictions. And if, perchance, you are dissatisfied with your meal, you will be able to send it back and get what you want.

**Where Should We Go?**

Wherever you decide to eat, France offers a wide variety of eating establishments to suit your hunger and your pocketbook. Are you going out for breakfast (le petit déjeuner, luh puh-tee day-zhuh-nay), lunch (le déjeuner, luh day-zhuh-nay), dinner (le dîner, luh dee-nay), or an early afternoon snack (le goûter, luh goo-tay)? If you're not in the mood for a formal restaurant, why not try:

- une auberge (ewn o-behrzh), an inn
- un bistro (uhN bees-tro), a small informal neighborhood pub or tavern
- une brasserie (ew brahs-ree), a large café serving quick meals
- une cabaret (ewn kah-bah-reh), a nightclub
- un café (uhN kah-fay), a small neighborhood restaurant where residents socialize
- un cafétéria (uhN kah-fay-tay-ryah), a self-service restaurant
- une casse-croûte (ewn kahs-kroot), a restaurant serving sandwiches
- une crêperie (ewn krehp-ree), a stand or restaurant serving crêpes (filled pancakes)
- un fast-food (uhN fahst-food), a fast food chain restaurant
- un self (uhN sehlf), a self-service restaurant

**Which Restaurant?**

You've opened up a tourist magazine where you've found ads for restaurants. Now you have to decide what you feel in the mood for this evening. Explore the ads and determine what you would expect to get in each of these restaurants:

---

**Cultural Tidbits**

What's the typical French breakfast, lunch, or dinner? For breakfast an croissant (uhN kwah-sahn), une brioché (ewn bree-ohsh), or une tartine (ewn tah-teen, a piece of bread with butter or jam) is served with a bowl of hot chocolate.
(un bol de chocolat, uhn bohl duh shoh-koh-lah) or coffee. Eggs are eaten at dinnertime, as omelettes.

Lunch, in many parts of the country, still remains the main meal of the day and is served in many courses—appetizer, soup, entrée (main course), salad, cheese, dessert. Note that the French eat their salad after the main course. In some areas, business establishments still close for two hours at lunchtime to allow for a long, leisurely meal (for those not eating sur le pouce, on the run). This custom, however, is dying, especially with the infiltration of le fast-food. Two popular French lunches are un croque-monsieur (uhn krohk muh-syuh), a toasted ham and cheese sandwich, and un croque-madame (uhn krohk mah-dahm), the same sandwich with an egg on top. You can pick them up at a restaurant or on the run, along with une crêpe (ewn krehp), a pancake filled with cheese, seafood, meat, or a dessert, or une mini-quiche (ewn mee-nee keesh), an egg and cheese pie filled with vegetables, bacon, or ham. Dinner is a lighter meal and is generally served after 7 p.m.

### NOTRE SELECTIONS DE RESTAURANTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noms</th>
<th>Spécialités</th>
<th>N° P</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LE SAINT-NICOLAS</td>
<td>CUISINE FINE TRADITIONNELLE</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LES QUATRE SAISSONS (Abba Hôtel Monaco)</td>
<td>CUISINE FRANCAISE</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LE SAINT-BENOÎT</td>
<td>CUISINE DE LA MER</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIP TOP BAR</td>
<td>SPECIALITÉS ITALIENNES</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLASHMAN’S</td>
<td>RESTAURATION AIACLE</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STARS’N’BARS</td>
<td>CUISINE AMERICaine</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LE METROPOLE PALACE</td>
<td>CUISINE FRANCAISE</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LES AMBASSADEURS (Hôtel Métropole)</td>
<td>SPECIALITÉS LIBANAISES ET FRANCAISE</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LA PORTE D’OR</td>
<td>SPECIALITÉS VIETNAMIENNES ET CHINOISES</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LE CHINA TOWN</td>
<td>SPECIALITÉS VIETNAMIENNES ET CHINOISES</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAFE MOZART</td>
<td>BUFFET CHAUD &amp; FROID, GLACES, PATISSERIES</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESTAURANT DU PORT</td>
<td>POISSONS, SPECIALITÉS ITALIENNES</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LA CANTINELLA</td>
<td>SPECIALITÉS ITALIENNES</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SANS CAFE</td>
<td>PIANO BAR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LE PARADISE</td>
<td>RESTAURANT GLACER</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L’ESCALE</td>
<td>SPECIALITÉS DE POISSONS</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HARRY’S BAR</td>
<td>MENU HOMMES D’AFFAIRES</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you've chosen to dine in a restaurant, it might be necessary to reserve a table. When you call, make sure to include all the pertinent information:

Je voudrais réserver une table…
zhuh voo-dreh ray-sehr-vay ewn tahbl
I would like to reserve a table…

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>For this evening</th>
<th>For tomorrow evening</th>
<th>For Saturday night</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pour ce soir</td>
<td>pour demain soir</td>
<td>pour samedi soir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poor suh swahr</td>
<td>poor duh-maN swahr</td>
<td>poor sahm-dee swahr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

pour deux personnes
poor duh peh-sohn
for two people

à huit heures et demie
ah wee tuhr ay duh-mee
at 8:30 p.m.

sur (à) la terrasse, s'il vous plaÎt.
sewr (ah) lah teh-rahs seel voo pleh
on the terrace, please (outdoors).

We're Eating Out

Practice what you've learned above by reserving a table for Friday evening, at 9:00 p.m., for six people. Also request a table outdoors.

But let's say that you did not reserve a table and show up at a restaurant unannounced. The maitre d' will most certainly ask:

Une table pour combien de personnes?
ewn tahbl poor kohN-byaN duh pehr-sohn?
A table for how many?

Your response should contain all the necessary information:

Une table pour quatre personnes, s'il vous plaÎt.
ewn tahbl poor kahtr pehr-sohn seel voo pleh
A table for four, please.

Let's say that you've now been seated, and you look around and are delighted with the fine china, the crystal, the linen napkins, and the crisp white table cloth. But wait! Madam's place has not been properly set. Table 17.1 gives you the vocabulary you need when asking the waiter for cutlery, as well as other terms that will come in handy.
### Table 17.1 A Table Setting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bowl</td>
<td>le bol</td>
<td>luh bohl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carafe</td>
<td>le carafe</td>
<td>luh kah-rahf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cup</td>
<td>la tasse</td>
<td>luh takss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dinner plate</td>
<td>l'assiette (f.)</td>
<td>lah-syeh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fork</td>
<td>la fourchette</td>
<td>luh foor-sheht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glass</td>
<td>le verre</td>
<td>luh vehr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knife</td>
<td>le couteau</td>
<td>luh koo-to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menu</td>
<td>le menu, la carte</td>
<td>luh muh-new, lah kahrt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>napkin</td>
<td>la serviette</td>
<td>lah sehr-vyeht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pepper shaker</td>
<td>la poivrière</td>
<td>lah pwah-vree-yehr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place setting</td>
<td>le couvert</td>
<td>luh koo-vehr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salt shaker</td>
<td>la salière</td>
<td>luh sahl-yehr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saucer</td>
<td>la soucoupe</td>
<td>luh soo-koop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soup dish</td>
<td>l'assiette à soupe(f.)</td>
<td>luh-syeh ah soop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tablecloth</td>
<td>la nappe</td>
<td>luh nahp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teaspoon</td>
<td>la cuiller</td>
<td>luh kwee-yehr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waiter</td>
<td>le garçon</td>
<td>luh gahr-soHN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waitress</td>
<td>la serveuse</td>
<td>luh sehr-vuhz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wine glass</td>
<td>le verre à vin</td>
<td>luh vehr ah vaN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Cultural Tidbits**

In France, most restaurants offer a **prix fixe** (price fixed) menu or **menu touristique**, which consists of an appetizer, soup, main course, salad, dessert, and drink for a pre-determined price. While your choice of dishes may be restricted, this still offers an excellent value for the money. Ordering **à la carte** is, without exception, a more expensive option.
If you find that something is missing from your table, or if you need to make a request of the staff, the following phrases will help you get what you want.

* Use an indirect object pronoun:

	| French        | Pronunciation | Translation   |
	|---------------|---------------|---------------|
	| Il me faut... | eel muh foh   | I need        |
	| Il lui fait...| eel lui foh   | He/She needs  |
	| Il nous faut...| eel noo foh   | We need       |
	| Il leur faut...| eel leur foh  | They need     |

* Use the expression *avoir besoin de*—to need:

	| French        | Pronunciation | Translation   |
	|---------------|---------------|---------------|
	| J'ai besoin de... | zhay buh-zwaN duh | I need        |
	| Il a besoin de... | eel ah buh-zwaN duh | He needs     |
	| Elle a besoin de... | ehl ah buh-zwaN duh | She needs    |
	| Nous avons besoin de... | noo zah-vohN buh-zwaN duh | We need      |
	| Ils ont besoin de... | eel zohN buh-zwaN duh | They need    |
	| Elles ont besoin de... | ehl zohN buh-zwaN duh | They need    |

Now, use what you've learned to tell your server that you need: a salt shaker, a napkin, a fork, a knife, a plate, or a spoon.

* **Garcçon, What Do You Recommend?**

The waiter has come to give you a menu and see if you'd like a drink before dinner. You may use the following expressions for ordering both your drinks and your food:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I would like...</td>
<td>zhuh voo-dreh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Je voudrais...</td>
<td>zhu voo-dreh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'll have...</td>
<td>zhuh praH-n-dray</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Je prendrai...</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

before-dinner drink: cocktail
un apéritif: un cocktail
\( uhN \ nah-pay-ree-teeF \) un kohk-tehl

Please bring me...
Apportez-moi, s'il vous plaît
\( ah-pohr-tay \ mwah \ seel \ voo \ pleh \)

Nothing for me.
Rien pour moi.
\( ryaN \ poor \ mwah \)

---

**Cultural Tidbits**

It is customary for the French to enjoy \( un \ apéritif \) before dinner. Although these drinks are touted as being an appetite stimulant, a real Frenchman will tell you that having an apéritif is just an excuse for enjoying a before dinner drink. Among the more popular varieties are: Vermouth (a wine made from red or white grapes—Martini and Cinzano are the all-time favorites), Pernod and Ricard (licorice-flavored drinks made from anise), Cynar (made from artichoke hearts), and Dubonnet et Byrrh (wine and brandy flavored with herbs and bitters).
This Menu Is Greek to Me

A French menu can be confusing and overwhelming unless you know certain culinary terms. And if you are a novice to the French language, you might feel that it is too embarrassing or pointless to ask about a dish because you know that you probably won't understand the waiter's explanation! Table 17.2 gives you the terms you need to interpret sauce names and other items on a French menu.

Table 17.2 What's on the Menu?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dishes Served</th>
<th>Contain</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aïoli</td>
<td>mayonnaise flavored with garlic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à la bonne femme</td>
<td>a white wine sauce with vegetables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>béarnaise</td>
<td>a butter-egg sauce flavored with wine, shallots, and tarragon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bercy</td>
<td>a meat or fish sauce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blanquette</td>
<td>a creamy egg and white wine sauce usually served with stew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crécy</td>
<td>carrots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daube</td>
<td>a stew, usually beef, with red wine, onions, and garlic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>farci(e)</td>
<td>a stuffing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>florentine</td>
<td>spinach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forestière</td>
<td>wild mushrooms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hollandaise</td>
<td>an egg yolk, butter sauce with lemon juice or vinegar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jardinière</td>
<td>vegetables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maître d'hôtel</td>
<td>a butter sauce with parsley and lemon juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mornay</td>
<td>a white sauce with cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parmentier</td>
<td>potatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>périgourdine</td>
<td>mushrooms (truffles)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provençale</td>
<td>a vegetable garnish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rémoulade</td>
<td>mayonnaise flavored with mustard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>véronique</td>
<td>grapes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vol-au-vent</td>
<td>puff pastry with creamed meat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Now you should feel somewhat confident to order. Tables 17.3 through 17.5 will help you get from the appetizer through the main course. If you have any problems with the names of various types of meat or fish, refer back to Chapter 16.

**Table 17.3 Appetizers (les hors-d’oeuvre—lay zohr-duhvr)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crudités variées</td>
<td>krew-dee-tay vah-ryay</td>
<td>sliced raw vegetable usually in a vinaigrette sauce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>escargots à la</td>
<td>ehs-kahr-go ah lah boor-gee-nyohn</td>
<td>snails in garlic sauce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bourguignonne</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foie gras</td>
<td>fawah grah</td>
<td>fresh, sometimes uncooked goose liver, served with toasted French bread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pâté</td>
<td>pah-tay</td>
<td>pureed liver or other meat served in a loaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiche lorraine</td>
<td>keesh loh-rehn</td>
<td>egg custard tart served with meat (bacon or ham)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quenelles</td>
<td>kuh-nehl</td>
<td>dumplings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rillettes</td>
<td>ree-yeht</td>
<td>pork mixture served as a spread</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 17.4 Soups (les soupes—lay soop)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>la bisque</td>
<td>lah beesk</td>
<td>creamy soup made with crayfish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la bouillabaisee</td>
<td>lah boo-yah-behs</td>
<td>seafood stew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le consommé</td>
<td>luh kohn-soh-may</td>
<td>clear broth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la petite marmite</td>
<td>lah puh-teet mahr-meet</td>
<td>rich consommé served with vegetables and meat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le potage</td>
<td>luh poh-tahzh</td>
<td>thick soup made of pureed vegetables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la soupe à l'oignon</td>
<td>lah soop ah loh-nyohN</td>
<td>onion soup served with bread and cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velouté</td>
<td>vuh-loo-tay</td>
<td>creamy soup</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 17.5 Meats (les viandes—lay vyahnd)

le bifteck  
luh beef-tehk  
steak

l'entrecôte (f.)  
lahNtr-koht  
sirloin steak

l'escalope (f.)  
leh-skah-lohp  
scallopin, cutlet

là côte de boeuf  
lah koht duh buhf  
prime rib

la poitrine de…  
lah pwah-treen duh  
breast of…

le carré d'agneau  
luh kah-ray dah-nyo  
rack of lamb

le chateaubriand  
luh shah-to-bree-yahN  
a porterhouse steak

le foie  
luh foie  
liver

le gigot d'agneau  
luh zhee-go dah-nyo  
leg of lamb

le pot-au-feu  
luh poh-to-fuh  
boiled beef

le rosbif  
luh rohs-beef  
roastbeef

le tournedos  
luh toor-nuh-do  
small fillets of beef

les côtes de porc (f.)  
lay koht duh pohr  
pork chops

les côtes de veau (f.)  
lay koht duh vo  
veal chops

les médail lons de… (m)  
lay may-dah-yohN duh  
small rounds of

les saucisses (f.)  
lay so-sees  
sausages

le hamburger  
luh ahm-bewr-gehr  
hamburger

That's the Way I Like It

As a Rule
Remember to use the appropriate direct object pronoun to refer to the noun you are using.

Vous recommandez le gigot?
Vous le recommandez?
Vous prenez l'escalope?
Vous la prenez?

Even if you know how to order your hamburger or veal chops, you want to be certain that your entree is cooked to your specifications. The waiter might ask:

Vous le (la, les) voulez comment?

vooh looh (lah, lay) voo-lay koh-mahN
How do you want it (them)?

Table 17.6 will help you to express your wants and needs.
### Table 17.6 How Would You Like It Prepared?

#### Meats and Vegetables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>baked</td>
<td>cuit au four</td>
<td>baked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boiled</td>
<td>bouilli</td>
<td>broiled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breaded</td>
<td>au gratin</td>
<td>rôti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fried</td>
<td>frit</td>
<td>ro-té</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grilled</td>
<td>grillé</td>
<td>haché</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in its natural juices</td>
<td>au jus</td>
<td>sauté</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mashed</td>
<td>en purée</td>
<td>à la vapeur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poached</td>
<td>poché</td>
<td>very rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pureed</td>
<td>en purée</td>
<td>rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roasted</td>
<td>rôti</td>
<td>saignant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with sauce</td>
<td>en sauce</td>
<td>en cocotte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>poached</td>
<td>poché</td>
<td>saignant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pureed</td>
<td>en purée</td>
<td>à point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roasted</td>
<td>rôti</td>
<td>bien cuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with sauce</td>
<td>en sauce</td>
<td>byan kwee</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Eggs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fried</td>
<td>au plat</td>
<td>o plah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard-boiled</td>
<td>durs</td>
<td>dèw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medium-boiled</td>
<td>mollets</td>
<td>moh-leh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poached</td>
<td>pochés</td>
<td>poh-shay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scrambled</td>
<td>brouillés</td>
<td>broo-yay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soft-boiled</td>
<td>à la coque</td>
<td>ah lah kohk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omelette</td>
<td>une omelette</td>
<td>ewn nohm-leht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plain omelette</td>
<td>une omelette nature</td>
<td>ewn nohm-leht nah-tewr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Cultural Tidbits

Keep in mind that French chefs have a different interpretation of the terms rare, medium, and well-done. To him (or her), rare means almost alive, medium is a tiny bit more than our rare, and well-done is a bit more than our medium. What the chef thinks is burned is what we mean by well-done. He may prepare it well-done, but don’t expect a smile when it is served.
**Spice It Up**

The French use a lot of herbs, spices, seasonings, and condiments to flavor their foods. Knowing the words in Table 17.7 will help you determine the ingredients of your dish or enable you to ask for a seasoning you prefer:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 17.7 Herbs, Spices, and Condiments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>basil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bay leaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garlic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ginger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horseradish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jam, jelly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ketchup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maple syrup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mayonnaise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oregano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parsley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pepper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sugar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tarragon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vinegar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Special Diets

If you have certain likes and dislikes, or dietary restrictions that you would like to make known, keep the following phrases handy:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am on a diet.</td>
<td>Je suis au régime.</td>
<td>zhuh swee zo ray-zheem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm a vegetarian.</td>
<td>Je suis végétarien(ne.)</td>
<td>zhuh swee vay-zhay-tah-ryaN (ryen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can't eat anything made with…</td>
<td>Je ne peux rien manger de cuisiné au (à la)…</td>
<td>zhuh nuh puh ryaN mahN-zhay duh kwee-zee-nay o (ah lah)…</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can't have…</td>
<td>Je ne tolère…</td>
<td>zhuh nuh toh-lehr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any dairy products</td>
<td>aucun produit laitier</td>
<td>o-kuhN proh-dwee leh-tyay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any alcohol</td>
<td>aucun produit alcoolique</td>
<td>o-kuhN proh-dwee ahl-koh-leek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any saturated fats</td>
<td>aucune matière grasse animale</td>
<td>o-kewn mah-tyehr grahs ah-nee-mahl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any shellfish</td>
<td>aucun fruit de mer</td>
<td>o-kuhN frweed mehr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm looking for a dish…</td>
<td>Je cherche un plat…</td>
<td>zhuh shehrsh uhN plah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>high in fiber</td>
<td>riche en fibre</td>
<td>reesh ahN feebr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>low in cholesterol</td>
<td>léger en cholestérol</td>
<td>lay-zhay ahN koh-lehs-tay-rohl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>low in fat</td>
<td>léger en matières grasses</td>
<td>lay-zhay ahN mah-tyehr grahs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>low in sodium</td>
<td>léger en sodium</td>
<td>lay-zhay ahN sohd-yuhn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-dairy</td>
<td>non-laitier</td>
<td>nohN-leh-tyay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salt-free</td>
<td>sans sel</td>
<td>sahN sehl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sugar-free</td>
<td>sans sucre</td>
<td>sahN sewkr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>without artificial coloring</td>
<td>sans colorant</td>
<td>sahN koh-loh-rahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>without preservatives</td>
<td>sans conservateurs</td>
<td>sahN kohN-sehr-vah-tuhr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Send It Back Please

Certainly there are times, even in France, when the cooking or table setting is just not up to your standards. Table 17.8 presents some problems you might run into.

Table 17.8 Possible Problems

| ...is cold | ...est froid(e) | \textit{eh frawd} |
| ...is too rare | ...n'est pas assez cuit(e) | \textit{neh pah zah-say kwee(t)} |
| ...is over-cooked | ...est trop cuit(e) | \textit{tro kwee(t)} |
| ...is tough | ...est dur(e) | \textit{eh dewr} |
| ...is burned | ...est brûlé(e) | \textit{eh brew-lay} |
| ...is too salty | ...est trop salé(e) | \textit{eh tro sah-lay} |
| ...is too sweet | ...est trop sucré(e) | \textit{eh tro sew-kray} |
| ...is too spicy | ...est trop épicé(e) | \textit{eh tro ay-pee-say} |
| ...is spoiled | ...est tourné(e) | \textit{eh toor-nay} |
| ...is bitter | ...est aigre | \textit{eh tehgr} |
| ...tastes like... | ...a le goût de... | \textit{ah luh goo duh} |
| ...is dirty | ...est sale | \textit{eh sahl} |

Fancy Endings

In France, it is traditional to have \textit{une salade} (ewn sah-lahd) followed by \textit{des fromages variés} (day froh-mahzh vah-ryay—cheeses). Popular cheeses include: boursin, brie, camembert, chèvre, munster, port-salut, and roquefort. When choosing a cheese you might want to ask:

\begin{tabular}{ccc}
\textbf{Is it...} & \textbf{Est-il...} & \textbf{eh-teel} \\
mild & maigre & \textit{mehgr} \\
sharp & piquant & \textit{pee-kahN} \\
hard & fermenté & \textit{fehr-mahnN-tay} \\
soft & à pâte molle & \textit{ah paht mohl} \\
\end{tabular}

Finally, it's time for dessert, and there are so many French specialties from which to choose. Table 17.9 will help you make a decision.
Table 17.9 Divine Desserts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>une bavaroise</td>
<td><em>ewn bah-vahr-wahz</em></td>
<td>bavarian cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>des beignets</td>
<td><em>day beh-nyeh</em></td>
<td>fruit doughnuts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>une bombe</td>
<td><em>ewn bohNhb</em></td>
<td>ice cream with many flavors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>une charlotte</td>
<td><em>ewn shahr-loht</em></td>
<td>sponge cake and pudding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>une crème caramel</td>
<td><em>ewn krehm kah-rah-mehl</em></td>
<td>egg custard served with caramel sauce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>une gaufre</td>
<td><em>ewn gohfr</em></td>
<td>waffle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>des oeufs à la neige</td>
<td><em>day zuh ah lah nehzh</em></td>
<td>meringues in a custard sauce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>une omelette norvégienne</td>
<td><em>ewn nohm-leht nohr-vay-zhyeh</em></td>
<td>baked Alaska</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>des poires hélène</td>
<td><em>day pwahr ay-lehn</em></td>
<td>poached pears with vanilla ice cream and chocolate sauce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>des profiteroles</td>
<td><em>day proh-fee-trohl</em></td>
<td>cream puffs with chocolate sauce</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you are ordering ice cream, the following terms will help you get the type and flavor (*le parfum*—*luh pahr-fuhN*) you prefer:

- an ice cream: une glace *ewn glahs*
- a yogurt: un yaourt *uhN yah-oort*
- cone: un cornet *uhN kohr-neh*
- cup: une coupe *ewn koop*
- chocolate: au chocolat *o shoh-koh-lah*
- vanilla: à la vanille *ah lah vah-nee-y*
- strawberry: aux fraises *o frehz*

**Drink to Me Only**

The French usually drink wine with dinner. The wines you might order include the following:

- red wine: le vin rouge *luh vaN roozh*
- rosé wine: le vin rosé *luh vaN ro-zay*
white wine  le vin blanc  luh vaN blahN
sparkling wine  le vin mousseux  luh vaN moo-suh
champagne  le champagne  luh shahN-pah-nyuh

Cultural Tidbits

Some popular French after-dinner drinks include: Cognac (brandy), Armagnac (unblended brandy), Bénédictine (a blend of 150 plants and herbs), Chambord (raspberry-flavored liqueur), Cointreau (cognac blended with sweet and bitter orange peels), and Grand Marnier (orange-flavored liqueur). Generally, French men prefer brandies (which are made by distilling wine or fermented fruit mash that has been aged in wooden casks), while French women opt for the sweeter tasting liqueurs (which are made by combining a spirit, such as brandy, with sugar and fruit or mint and other plant extracts).

The French do not lead their drinks with ice cubes (des glaçons—day glah-sohN) the way many Americans do. In fact, “on the rocks” is not even an option in some places. You might even pay extra for ice since it’s a rare commodity.

Perhaps you do not indulge in alcohol or prefer something else to drink with your meal. During the course of a meal, you might even wish to have several different drinks: juice, water, soda, coffee, or tea. Other beverages you might enjoy during or after dinner are presented in Table 17.10.

Table 17.10 Beverages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Beverage</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>coffee</td>
<td>un café</td>
<td>uhn kah-fay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with milk (morning)</td>
<td>au lait</td>
<td>o leh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espresso</td>
<td>-express</td>
<td>ehks-prehs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with cream</td>
<td>-crème</td>
<td>krehm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>black</td>
<td>noir</td>
<td>nwahr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iced</td>
<td>glacé</td>
<td>glah-say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decaffeinated</td>
<td>décaféiné</td>
<td>day-kah-fay-ee-nay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tea</td>
<td>un thé</td>
<td>uhn tay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with lemon</td>
<td>au citron</td>
<td>o see-trohN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(table continued on next page)
I'm Thirsty

You've spent a long and tiring day sightseeing and you feel that it's time to stop and pause for a moment. You'd like to rest your weary feet and you need a quick pick-me up. You see a French café and realize that it's the perfect place to stop, grab a nice cool drink, and people-watch. If you're thirsty, learning the irregular verb *boire* (to drink) in Table 17.11 will help you order what you like. *Boire* is similar to a “shoe verb” in that the nous and vous forms change. They do not, however, look like the infinitive. The forms for the other subject pronouns do.

Table 17.11 The Verb boire (to drink)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject Pronouns</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je bois</td>
<td><em>zhuh bwah</em></td>
<td>I drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu bois</td>
<td><em>tew bwah</em></td>
<td>you drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on boit</td>
<td><em>eel (ehl, ohN) bwah</em></td>
<td>he, she, one drinks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous buvons</td>
<td><em>noo bew-voN</em></td>
<td>we drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous buvez</td>
<td><em>voo bew-vay</em></td>
<td>you drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles boivent</td>
<td><em>eel (ehl) bwahv</em></td>
<td>they drink</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cultural Tidbits

The cost of a drink or meal in a French café depends upon where it is consumed. The same soft drink is cheapest if purchased at the indoor counter (because you have to stand), more expensive at an indoor table (because the scenery isn’t terribly exciting), and most expensive at a table on the outside terrace (where you can take in everything that is going on). Don’t be surprised to pay $3 for a 6 oz. bottle of coke!
You Only Want Some, Not All?

The food is delicious, even better than you expected. Pâtisseries beckon on every corner. Temptations lurk everywhere. You do not, however, want to return from vacation 20 pounds heavier. Don't eat it all, share some with a companion.

The partitive is used in French to express part of a whole, or an indefinite quantity and is equivalent to the English some or any.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Partitive</th>
<th>Used Before</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>du (de + le)</td>
<td>masculine singular nouns beginning with a consonant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de la</td>
<td>feminine singular nouns beginning with a consonant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de l’</td>
<td>any singular noun beginning with a vowel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>des (de + les)</td>
<td>all plural nouns</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Although some or any may be omitted in English, the partitive must always be used in French and must be repeated before each noun:

- Apportez-moi de la mousse et du café, s'il vous plaît.
  
  *ah-pohr-tay-mwah duh lah moos ay dew kah-fay seel voo pleh*

  Bring me some mousse and some coffee, please.

- Avez-vous de l'orangeade?
  
  *ah-vay-voo duh loh-rahN-zhahd*

  Do you have any orangeade?

- Je préfère manger des fruits de mer.
  
  *zhuh pray-fehr mahN-zhay day frweed mehr*
I prefer eating seafood.

In a negative sentence, or before an adjective preceding a plural noun, the partitive is expressed by *de* (no definite article is used).
Nous n'avons pas de ragoût.  

Je ne mange pas de fruits.

Elle prépare de bons gâteaux.

She prepares good cakes.

Room Service

Did you ever just feel like lounging around your hotel room and being lazy, perhaps after several days of intensive work or sightseeing? Why not spend a leisurely morning in your room and order in room service? See how well you do by selecting the breakfast of your choice.

The Pronoun en
Imagine that you've spent the whole day out on the town with a friend and now you'd like to go eat. You reach into your pocket and lo and behold you find that you've exhausted your cash supply. You turn to your companion and ask the logical question: Do you have any money? He wants to answer you in French and say: “Yes, I do.” He can't use the verb faire (to do) because faire can't stand alone. If he said: “Je fais de l'argent.” that would mean that he is making money, not something he'd want to admit to doing.
The way around this predicament is to use the pronoun en, a handy word, that, when used properly, will prove to be extremely helpful.

The pronoun en refers to previously mentioned things or places. En usually replaces de + noun and may mean some or any (of it/them), of it/them, about it/them, from it/them, or from there:

Il veut *des biscuits*.  
Il *en* veut.  
*eel ahN vuh*  
He wants some (of them).

Nous parlons *du restaurant*.  
Nous *en* parlons.  
*noo zahN pahr-lohN*  
We speak about it.

*En* is always expressed in French even though it may have no English equivalent or is not expressed in English:

As-tu *de l'argent*?  
Oui, j'*en* ai.  
*As-tuh duh lahN-yuhnt?*  
*Oyee, zhuh n"en yuhh.*  
Do you have any money?  
Yes, I do.

*En* is used with idiomatic expressions requiring de:

J'ai besoin *d'un couteau*.  
J'*en* ai besoin.  
*IH ay beh-sohn*  
*IH n"en yeh-sohn.*  
I need a knife.  
I need one.

*En* is used to replace a noun (de + noun) after a number or a noun or adverb of quantity:

Il prépare dix *sandwiches*.  
Il *en* prépare dix.  
*IH pruh-pruhd digh*  
*IH n"en pruh-pruhd digh.*  
He is preparing ten sandwiches.  
He is preparing ten (of them).

Il prépare une tasse *de thé*.  
Il *en* prépare une tasse.  
*IH pruh-pruhd ooN tahz de teh*  
*IH n"en pruh-pruhd ooN tahz.*  
He is preparing a cup of tea.  
He is preparing a cup of it.

Il prépare beaucoup *de tartes*.  
Il *en* prépare beaucoup.  
*IH pruh-pruhd beh-coop ahN deh tahrtz*  
*IH n"en pruh-pruhd beh-coop.*  
He is preparing a lot of pies.  
He is preparing a lot (of them).

*En* is placed before the verb to which its meaning is tied, usually before the conjugated verb. When there are two verbs, *en* is placed before the infinitive:

*J'en* prends.  
*Je n'en* prends pas.  
*Je desire en prendre.*  
*N'en* prends pas.  
*IH n"en pruhnds.*  
*IH n"en pruhnds pah.*  
*IH deshayr ehN pruhnds.*  
*N"en pruhnds pah.*  
I take (eat) some.  
I don't take (eat) any.  
I want to take (eat) some.  
Don't take (eat) any.
In an affirmative command *en* changes position and is placed immediately after the verb and is joined to it by a hyphen. The familiar command forms of *er* verbs (regular and
irregular) retain their final s before en. This is to prevent the clash of two vowel sounds together. Remember to put a liaison (linking) between the final consonant and en.

- Prends-en! (prahN zahN)       Take (eat) some! (Familiar)
- Prenez-en! (pruh-nay zahN)     Take (eat) some! (Polite)

**Using en**

We all have our own peculiar eating habits, sometimes choosing things to eat that make others stare at us in disbelief. Here are some questions about your culinary preferences. Answer them by using the pronoun en. Then try changing all your affirmative answers to the negative and vice versa.

1. Vous mangez des légumes?
2. Vous prenez du café?
3. Vous parlez des restaurants français?
4. Vous désirez manger un dessert délicieux?
5. Vous aimez préparer de la mousse au chocolat?
6. Vous allez essayer des plats français?

**Should I or Shouldn't I?**

You've returned from a fabulous trip only to discover that you can't buckle your belt and you ripped your jeans as you bent over. You want to lose weight but temptations abound everywhere. What does your conscience dictate?

Je mange du chocolat? des fruits?

1. Je mange des bonbons? des légumes?
2. Je prépare de la salade? de la mousse?
4. Je choisis de la glace? du yaourt?
5. J'achète de l'eau minérale? du soda?

**It Was Delicious**

I'm interested in your opinion. What did you think of your meal? Was it just average or did you give it rave reviews? If you thought it was truly exceptional, you might want to exclaim your pleasure by using the adjective quel in Table 17.12 to express what a!

**Table 17.12 Quel and Quelle**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>quel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>quels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quelle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quelles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Make sure to put the adjective in its proper position:

Quel repas formidable! Quels desserts délicieux!
kehl ruh-pah fohr-mee-dahbl kahl deh-sehr day-lee-syuh

What a great meal! What delicious desserts!
Quelle mousse excellente! Quelles bonnes omelettes!
kehl moos ehk-seh-lahNt kahl bohn zohm-leht
What an excellent mousse! What good omelettes!

How Was It?
I knew you'd love French food. Now you want to tell me just how much you enjoyed it. Use the correct form of quel to express how you felt about what you ate and drank: soups, steak, wine, salad, cheeses, mousse.

Don't forget to ask for the check at the end of your meal:
L'addition, s'il vous plaÎt.
lah-dee-syohN seel voo pleh
The check please.

Cultural Tidbits
In many restaurants le service est compris—the service is included (usually 15 percent). You might want to leave a little more if your server was excellent. The word for tip is un pourboire (uhN poor-bwahr).

The Least You Need to Know
• You can read a French menu if you know the right terms.
• Use the partitive (de, du, de la, de l', des) to express some.
• The pronoun en expresses some and may replace the partitive.
Chapter 18
Let's Have Fun

You've seen the sights, collected mementos, and purchased souvenirs and designer clothing. You feel much better, too, now that you have eaten. It's time to have fun and enjoy yourself, or simply to take a pause and relax.

Are you off to the sea to engage in water sports, up to the mountains for skiing or hiking, onto the links for a round of golf, or onto the courts for a brisk tennis match? Are you a film buff or a theater-goer? Do you enjoy a lively opera or an elegant ballet? Perhaps the game's the thing and you'll spend some time with a one-armed bandit in a luxurious casino. This chapter will help you do it all, invite someone to accompany you, and describe your abilities.
Are You a Sports Fan?

As a Rule
Use the verb faire
when talking about
engaging in a sport.
Je fais du volleyball. (I play volleyball.)
On fait de la natation? (How about going swimming?)

My husband loves to golf and his clubs have seen nearly as many countries as we have! I adore the beach and like nothing better than to feel the sand between my toes as I gaze out at the ocean. Whether you're a beach lover or a sports fanatic, you'll need some specific phrases and terms to make your preferences known. Table 18.1 provides a list of sports and outdoor activities.

Table 18.1 Sports

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>One Plays</th>
<th>On fait</th>
<th>OhN feh</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aerobics</td>
<td>de l'aérobie (m.)</td>
<td>duh lahy-roh-beek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baseball</td>
<td>du base-ball</td>
<td>dew bays-bohl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basketball</td>
<td>du basket-ball</td>
<td>dew bahs-keht bohl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bicycling</td>
<td>du vélo</td>
<td>dew vay-lo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boating</td>
<td>du canotage</td>
<td>dew kah-noh-tahzh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>canoeing</td>
<td>du canoë</td>
<td>dew kah-noh-ay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cycling</td>
<td>du cyclisme</td>
<td>dew see-kleez-muh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deep-sea fishing</td>
<td>de la pêche sous-marine</td>
<td>duh la pehsh soo-mah-reen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diving</td>
<td>du plongeon</td>
<td>dew plohN-zhoN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fishing</td>
<td>de la pêche</td>
<td>duh lah pehsh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>football</td>
<td>du football américain</td>
<td>dew foot-bohl ah-may-ree-kaN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>golf</td>
<td>du golf</td>
<td>dew gohlf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hockey</td>
<td>du hockey</td>
<td>dew oh-kee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horseback riding</td>
<td>de l'équitation (f.)</td>
<td>duh lay-kee-tah-xyohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hunting</td>
<td>de la chasse</td>
<td>duh lah shahs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jai alai</td>
<td>de la pelote (basque)</td>
<td>duh lah puh-loht (bahsk)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jogging</td>
<td>du jogging</td>
<td>dew zho-geeng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mountain climbing</td>
<td>de l'alpinisme (m.),</td>
<td>duh lahl-pee-neez-muh,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>de l'escalade (f.)</td>
<td>duh lehs-kah- lahld</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(table continued from previous page)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>One Plays</th>
<th>On fait</th>
<th>OhN feh</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>parasailing</td>
<td>du parachutisme</td>
<td><em>dew pah-rah-shew-teez-muh</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ping-pong</td>
<td>du ping-pong</td>
<td><em>dew peeng-pohNg</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sailing</td>
<td>du bateau à voiles</td>
<td><em>dew bah-to ah vwahl</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scuba (skin) diving</td>
<td>de la plongée sous-marine</td>
<td><em>duh lah plohN-zhay soo-mah-reen</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skating</td>
<td>du patin</td>
<td><em>dew pah-taN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ski</td>
<td>du ski</td>
<td><em>dew skee</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soccer</td>
<td>du football</td>
<td><em>dew foot-bohl</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surfing</td>
<td>du surf</td>
<td><em>dew sewrf</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swimming</td>
<td>de la natation</td>
<td><em>duh lah nah-tah-syohN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tennis</td>
<td>du tennis</td>
<td><em>dew teh-nees</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volleyball</td>
<td>du volley-ball</td>
<td><em>dew voh-lee bohl</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waterskiing</td>
<td>du ski nautique</td>
<td><em>dew skee no-teek</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Cultural Tidbits**

Cycling is one of the most popular sports in France. In June and July the longest bicycle race (la course, *lah koons*) in the world, the Tour de France (also known by Frenchmen as La Grande Boucle, *lah grahNd bookl*), captures the attention of sports fans all over France and the world. This spectacular event covers approximately 2,500 kilometers (over 1,500 miles) in 22 laps (*étapes, ay tahp*) over different terrains—mountains as well as flatlands. The competition begins in a different city each year but always finishes in Paris. It is considered a great honor to be chosen as *une ville étape*, a city where a lap ends. Work and school end early so that everyone can go out and watch the arrival of the racers and scramble to receive a free cap (*une casquette, ehn kalis-keh*) distributed by the sponsors of the event. Approximately 100–150 cyclists come from France and other countries to compete for the coveted *maillot jaune* (yellow T-shirt) and the various cash prizes awarded to the winner, the cyclist with the best cumulative time. The race is actually a team effort where helpers, known as *lièvres* (*lee-ehr*), take turns helping their best member pace and push himself to victory.
Would You Like to Join Me?

It really isn't much fun to play alone. Why not ask someone to join you? To extend an invitation you may use the irregular verbs *vouloir* (to want) and *pouvoir* (to be able to) in Tables 18.2 and 18.3. Both verbs have similar conjugations. They are similar to “shoe verbs” in that their nous and vous forms begin like the infinitive, while their other forms undergo a change.

**Table 18.2 The Verb vouloir (to want)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je veux</td>
<td>zhuh vuh</td>
<td>I want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu veux</td>
<td>tew vuh</td>
<td>you want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on veut</td>
<td>eel, (ehl, ohN) vuh</td>
<td>he (she, one) wants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous voulons</td>
<td>noo voo-lohN</td>
<td>we want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous voulez</td>
<td>voo voo-lay</td>
<td>you want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles veulent</td>
<td>eel (ehl) vuhl</td>
<td>they want</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 18.3 The Verb pouvoir (to be able to [can])**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je peux</td>
<td>zhuh puh</td>
<td>I am able to (can)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu peux</td>
<td>tew puh</td>
<td>you are able to (can)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on peut</td>
<td>eel, ehl, ohN puh</td>
<td>he, she, one is able to (can)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous pouvons</td>
<td>noo poo-voohN</td>
<td>we can</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous pouvez</td>
<td>voo poo-vay</td>
<td>you can</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles peuvent</td>
<td>eel, (ehl) puhv</td>
<td>they can</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To invite someone to do something you would ask:

**Vous voulez (Tu veux) + infinitive of the verb (Do you want to…?)**

*Vous voulez (Tu veux) faire du ski? Do you want to go skiing?*

or

**Vous pouvez (Tu peux) + infinitive of the verb (Can you…?)**

*Vous pouvez (Tu peux) aller à la pêche? Can you go fishing?*

Each sport has its own particular playing field or milieu. When you're ready for some exercise refer to Table 18.4 to choose the place where you would go to participate in the sport or activity:
Table 18.4 Where to Go

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beach</td>
<td>la plage</td>
<td>lah plahzh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>course (golf)</td>
<td>le parcours</td>
<td>luh pahr-koor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>court</td>
<td>le court</td>
<td>luh koort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>court (jai alai)</td>
<td>le fronton</td>
<td>luh frohN-tohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>field</td>
<td>le terrain</td>
<td>luh teh-raN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gymnasiu</td>
<td>le gymnase</td>
<td>luh zheem-nahz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mountain</td>
<td>la montagne</td>
<td>lah mohN-tah-nyuh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ocean</td>
<td>l'océan (m.)</td>
<td>loh-see-ahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>park</td>
<td>le parc</td>
<td>luh pahrk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>path</td>
<td>le sentier</td>
<td>luh sahN-tyay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pool</td>
<td>la piscine</td>
<td>luh pee-seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rink</td>
<td>la patinoire</td>
<td>lah pah-tee-nwahr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sea</td>
<td>la mer</td>
<td>lah mehr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slope</td>
<td>la piste</td>
<td>lah peest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stadium</td>
<td>le stade</td>
<td>luh stahd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>track</td>
<td>la piste</td>
<td>luh peest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Extend an Invitation

Tomorrow's forecast is perfect for the sports-minded. Pick up the phone and invite someone to go with you to the proper place so that you can go: hiking, skiing, jogging, skating, mountain-climbing, or diving.

Accepting an Invitation

Whether you've been invited to participate in a sport or an outing, visit a museum, or just stay at someone's home these phrases will allow you to graciously accept any invitation extended to you:

Avec plaisir.  
ah-vehk pleh-zeer  With pleasure.

Bien entendu.  
byaN nahN-tahN-dew  Of course.

Bien sûr.  
byaN sewr  Of course.

C'est une bonne idée.  
seh tewn bohn ee-day  That's a good idea.

Chouette!  
shoo-eht  Great!

D'accord.  
dah-kohr  O.K. (I agree)
Et comment!  
*ay koh-mahN*  
And how! You bet!

Il n'y a pas d'erreur.  
*eel nyah pah deh-ruhr*  
There's no doubt about it.

Pourquoi pas?  
*poor-kwah pah*  
Why not?

Si tu veux (vous voulez)  
*see tew vuh (voo voo-lay)*  
If you want to.

Volontiers!  
*voh-lohN-tyay*  
Gladly.

**Refusing an Invitation—Making Excuses**

What if you really can't go to an event because of some prior engagement or commitment? Or, perhaps you just feel like being alone. You can cordially refuse any invitation without hurting anyone's feelings by expressing your regrets or giving an excuse. You might say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Expression</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C'est impossible.</td>
<td><em>seh taN-poh-seebl</em></td>
<td>It's impossible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encore!</td>
<td><em>ahN-kohr</em></td>
<td>Not again!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Je n'ai pas envie.</td>
<td><em>zhuh nay pah zahN-vee</em></td>
<td>I don't feel like it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Je ne peux pas.</td>
<td><em>zhuh nuh puh pah</em></td>
<td>I can't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Je ne suis pas libre.</td>
<td><em>zhuh nuh swee pah leebr</em></td>
<td>I'm not free.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Je ne veux pas.</td>
<td><em>zhuh nuh vuh pah</em></td>
<td>I don't want to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Je regrette.</td>
<td><em>zhuh ruh-greht</em></td>
<td>I'm sorry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Je suis désolé(e).</td>
<td><em>zhuh swee day-zoh-lay</em></td>
<td>I'm sorry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Je suis fatigué(e).</td>
<td><em>zhuh swee fah-tee-gay</em></td>
<td>I'm tired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Je suis occupé(e).</td>
<td><em>zhuh swee zoh-kew-pay</em></td>
<td>I'm busy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Showing Indecision and Indifference**

We all have our days when we're very wishy-washy. One minute we're gung-ho about an idea, and the next moment we wouldn't even contemplate the same notion. If you can't make up your mind, or if you are indifferent to an idea, you might use one of these phrases:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Expression</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ca dépend.</td>
<td><em>sah day-pahN</em></td>
<td>It depends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ca m'est égal.</td>
<td><em>sah meh tay-gahl</em></td>
<td>It's all the same to me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ce que tu préfères (vous préfèrez).</td>
<td><em>suh kuh tew pray-fehr (voo pray-fay-ray)</em></td>
<td>Whatever you want.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Comme tu veux (vous voulez).

Je n'ai pas de préférence.

Je ne sais pas trop.

Peut-être.

$kohm \ tew \ vuh$ (voo voo-lay)

$zhuh \ nay \ pas \ duh \ pray-fay-rahNs$

$zhuh \ nuh \ seh \ pah \ tro$

$puh-tehtr$

Whatever you want.

I don't have any preference.

I really don't know.

Perhaps. Maybe.

**Let's Do Something Else**

Perhaps sports aren't part of your agenda. There are plenty of other activities you can pursue to have a good time. The phrases in Table 18.5 will give you the tools to make many other intriguing suggestions. Should you delight in going to the opera, ballet, theater, or a concert, don't forget to bring along $les \ jumelles$ (lay zhew-mehl)(f.)—binoculars.

**Table 18.5 Places to Go and Things to Do**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Le Lieu ($luh \ lyuh$), the place</th>
<th>L'Activité ($lahk-tee-vee-tay$), the activity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aller à l'opéra ($oh-pay \ rah$)</td>
<td>écouter les chanteurs/listen to the singers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aller à la plage ($plahzh$)</td>
<td>nager/swim, prendre un bain de soleil/sunbathe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aller à une discothèque ($dees-koh-tehk$)</td>
<td>danser/dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aller au ballet ($bah-leh$)</td>
<td>voir les danseurs/see the dancers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aller au casino ($kah-zee-no$)</td>
<td>jouer/gamble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aller au centre commercial/mall ($sahNtr koh-mehr-syahl$)</td>
<td>faire du lèche-vitrines/go window shopping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aller au cinéma ($see-nay \ mah$)</td>
<td>voir un film/see a film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aller au concert ($kohN-sehr$)</td>
<td>écouter l'orchestre/listen to the orchestra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aller au théâtre ($tay-ahtr$)</td>
<td>voir une pièce/see a play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire une randonnée/hike ($rahN-doh-nay$)</td>
<td>voir les sites pittoresques/see the sights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rester dans sa chambre (à la maison)/stay in one's room, at home</td>
<td>jouer aux cartes/play cards, jouer aux dames/play checkers, jouer aux échecs/play chess, lire un roman/read a novel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Do You Accept or Refuse?

Let's say you've received a ton of invitations; one friend would like you to go window shopping, while another is urging you to go parasailing. You also have conflicting plans for the evening: your husband would like to go to the movies, but your daughter is eager to go to a disco. And if that isn't enough, business colleagues have even asked you to spend the evening at the opera! Fashion a reply to all these invitations using the phrases you've learned so far.

By the Sea

Did you ever arrive at the pool or beach only to realize that you forgot to bring your suntan lotion or some other essential item? Your day could be ruined unnecessarily. Remember to pack these items for a pleasant day in the sun:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beach ball</td>
<td>un ballon de plage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>uhN bah-lohN duh plahzh</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beach chair</td>
<td>une chaise longue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>ewn shehz lohNg</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beach towel</td>
<td>un drap de bain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>uhN drah dbaN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunglasses</td>
<td>des lunettes de soleil (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>day lew-neht duh soh-lehy</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suntan lotion</td>
<td>la lotion solaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>lah loh-syohN soh-lehr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>la creme solaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>lah krehm soh-lehr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suntan oil</td>
<td>l'huile solaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>lweel soh-lehr</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cultural Tidbits

In France and on some of the French islands of the Caribbean, it is not uncommon to see women sunbathing topless, or to see men (and women) in very thin string (*ficelle*) and thong bikinis. Don’t gawk! The French attitude toward sunbathing is much more relaxed than the American—to blend in, you might have to join in.
At the Movies and on T.V.

Do you crave some quiet relaxation? Is the weather bad? Do you feel like getting away from everyone and everything? There's always a movie or T.V. It seems that cable has invaded the planet and can accommodate anyone who needs a few carefree hours in the room. So if you want to be entertained, consult Table 18.6 for the possibilities.

On passe quel genre de film?

Qu'est-ce qu'il y a à la télé?

Table 18.6 Movies and Television Programs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Genre</th>
<th>French Expression</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adventure film</td>
<td>un film d'aventure</td>
<td>uhN feelm dah-vahN-tewr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cartoon</td>
<td>un dessin animé</td>
<td>uhN deh-saN ah-nee-may</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comedy</td>
<td>un film comique</td>
<td>uhN feelm koh-meek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>documentary</td>
<td>un documentaire</td>
<td>uhN doh-kew-mahN-tehr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drama</td>
<td>un drame</td>
<td>uhN drahm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>game show</td>
<td>un jeu</td>
<td>uhN zhuh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horror movie</td>
<td>un film d'horreur</td>
<td>uhN feelm doh-ruhr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love story</td>
<td>un film d'amour</td>
<td>uhN feelm dah-moor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mystery</td>
<td>un mystère.</td>
<td>uhN mees-tehr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>news</td>
<td>les informations (f.)</td>
<td>lay zaN-fohr-mah-syohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>police story</td>
<td>un film policier</td>
<td>uhN feelm poh-lee-say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>science-fiction film</td>
<td>un film de science-fiction</td>
<td>uhN feelm duh see-ahNs-feek-syohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>un feuilleton (mélodramatique)</td>
<td>uhN fuhy-tohN (may-loh-drah-mah-teek)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spy movie</td>
<td>un film d'espionnage</td>
<td>uhN feelm dehs-pee-yoh-nazh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk show</td>
<td>une causerie</td>
<td>ewn koz-ree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weather</td>
<td>la météo</td>
<td>lay may-tay-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>western</td>
<td>un western</td>
<td>uhN wehs-tehr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Expressing Your Opinion

Use the following phrases to express your enjoyment of a film or program.

I love it!  
J'adore!  
zhah-dohr

It's a good movie.  
C'est un bon film.  
seh tuhN bohN feelm

It's amusing!  
C'est amusant!  
seh tah-mew-zahN

It's great!  
C'est génial!  
seh zhay-nyahl

It's moving!  
C'est émouvant!  
seh tay-moo-vahN

It's original!  
C'est original!  
seh toh-ree-zhee-nahl

If you are less than thrilled with the show, try these phrases:

I hate it!  
Je déteste!  
zhuh day-tehst

It's a bad movie!  
C'est un mauvais film.  
seh tuhN mo-veh feelm

It's a loser!  
C'est un navet!  
seh tuhN nah-veh

It's garbage!  
C'est bidon!  
seh bee-dohN

It's the same old thing!  
C'est toujours la même chose!  
seh too-zhoor lah mehm shohz

It's too violent!  
C'est trop violent!  
seh tro vee-oh-lahN
**I Think…**

Using the phrases you've learned, give your opinion of the following types of movies: love story, science fiction, horror, police film, mystery, and animated film.

**At a Concert**

A friend has invited you to the Opéra in Paris, but you feel a little hesitant about going. Although you're familiar with some French composers and their works (*Carmen*, by Bizet is your personal favorite), you're afraid you won't be able to hold up your end of the conversation. The names of the instruments in Table 18.7 should assist you in expressing your ideas.

**Table 18.7 Musical Instruments**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Musical Instrument</th>
<th>French Name</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accordeon</td>
<td>l'accordéon</td>
<td>lah-kohr-day-ohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cello</td>
<td>le violoncelle</td>
<td>luh vee-oh-lohN-sehl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clarinet</td>
<td>la clarinette</td>
<td>lah klah-ree-neht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drum</td>
<td>le tambour</td>
<td>luh tahN-boor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drums</td>
<td>la batterie</td>
<td>lah bah-tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flute</td>
<td>la flûte</td>
<td>lah flewt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guitar</td>
<td>la guitare</td>
<td>lah gee-tahr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harp</td>
<td>la harpe</td>
<td>lah ahrp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horn</td>
<td>le cor</td>
<td>luh kohr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oboe</td>
<td>le hautbois</td>
<td>luh o-bwah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piano</td>
<td>le piano</td>
<td>luh pyah-no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piccolo</td>
<td>le piccolo</td>
<td>luh pee-koh-lo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saxophone</td>
<td>le saxophone</td>
<td>luh sahk-soh-fohn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trombone</td>
<td>le trombone</td>
<td>luh trohN-bohn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trumpet</td>
<td>la trompette</td>
<td>lah trohN-peht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>violin</td>
<td>le violon</td>
<td>luh vee-oh-lohN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Jouer à vs. Jouer de**

In English, we use the verb *to play* whether we are referring to the playing of an instrument or the playing of a sport. The French, however, make a distinction. The verb *jouer*
means to play. When followed by the preposition *de* + definite article (*du, de la, de l’, des*) *jouer* refers to the playing of musical instruments:

Il joue du piano.  
*eel zhoo dew pyah-no*
He plays the piano.

Elle joue de la clarinette.  
*ehl zhoo duh lah klah-ree-neht*
She plays the clarinet.

When referring to sports or to games (such as card or board games) *jouer* is followed by *à* + definite article (*au, à la, à l’, aux*):

Ils jouent au tennis.  
*eel zhoo o teh-nees*
They play tennis.

Elles jouent aux cartes.  
*ehl zhoo o kahrt*
They play cards.

**How Well Do You Do Things?**

Adverbs are often used to describe how well you do something, such as “he plays the cello beautifully” (in English most adverbs end in *ly*). In French, adverbs are used for the same purpose, and they generally end in *ment*.

Adverbs are formed by adding *ment* to the masculine, singular form of adjectives that end in a vowel. If the masculine form of the adjective ends in a consonant, first change it to the feminine form and then add *ment*. This works quite well as long as you look for the proper letter at the end of the adjective and remember the feminine forms. Tables 18.8 and 18.9 show you just how easy this is.

**Table 18.8 Adverbs Formed from Masculine Adjectives**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine—Adj.</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>facile (<em>fah-seel</em>)</td>
<td>facilement (<em>fah-seel-mahN</em>)</td>
<td>easily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passionné (<em>pah-syoh-nay</em>)</td>
<td>passionnément (<em>pah-syoh-nay-mahN</em>)</td>
<td>enthusiastically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>probable (<em>proh-bahbl</em>)</td>
<td>probablement (<em>proh-bahbl-mahN</em>)</td>
<td>probably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rapide (<em>rah-peed</em>)</td>
<td>rapidement (<em>rah-peed-mahN</em>)</td>
<td>rapidly, quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sincère (<em>saN-sehr</em>)</td>
<td>sincèremment (<em>saN-sehr-mahN</em>)</td>
<td>sincerely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vrai (<em>vreh</em>)</td>
<td>vraiment (<em>vreh-mahN</em>)</td>
<td>truly, really</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 18.9 Adverbs Formed from Feminine Adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine—Adj.</th>
<th>Feminine—Adj.</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lent (lahN)</td>
<td>lente (lahNt)</td>
<td>lentement (lahNt-mahN)</td>
<td>slowly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certain (sehr-taN)</td>
<td>certaine (sehr-tehn)</td>
<td>certainement (sehr-tehn-mahN)</td>
<td>certainly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seul (suhl)</td>
<td>seule (suhl)</td>
<td>seulement (suhl-mahN)</td>
<td>only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actif (ahk-teeft)</td>
<td>active (ahk-teev)</td>
<td>activement (ahk-teev-mahN)</td>
<td>actively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complet (kohN-pleh)</td>
<td>complète (kohN-pleht)</td>
<td>complètement (kohN-pleht-mahN)</td>
<td>completely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continuel (kohN-tee-new-ehl)</td>
<td>continuelle (kohN-tee-new-ehl)</td>
<td>continuellement (kohN-tee-new-ehl-mahN)</td>
<td>continuously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doux (doo)</td>
<td>douce (doos)</td>
<td>doucement (doos-mahN)</td>
<td>gently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fier (fyehr)</td>
<td>fière (fyehr)</td>
<td>fièrement (fyehr-mahN)</td>
<td>proudly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>franc (frahN)</td>
<td>franche (frahNsh)</td>
<td>franchement (frahNsh-mahN)</td>
<td>frankly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sérieux (say-ree-yuh)</td>
<td>sérieuse (say-ree-uhz)</td>
<td>sérieusement (say-ree-uhz-mahN)</td>
<td>seriously</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Two irregular formations are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine—Adj.</th>
<th>Feminine—Adj.</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bref (brehf)</td>
<td>brève (brehv)</td>
<td>brièvement (bree-ehv-mahN)</td>
<td>briefly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gentil (zhahN-tee)</td>
<td>gentille (zhahN-tee)</td>
<td>gentiment (zhahN-tee-mahN)</td>
<td>gently</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exceptions to the Rule

Life would be so easy if there were no exceptions to the rules. This, however, is not the case with French adverbs. Fortunately, the irregularities are easy to understand and should present no difficulties in adverb formation.

Some adverbs are formed by changing a silent e from the adjective to é before the adverbial ment ending:

- enorme (ay-nohrm) → énormément (ay-nohr-may-mahN)  enormously
- intense (aN-tahNs) → intensément (aN-tahN-say-mahN)  intensely
- précis (pray-see) → précisément (pray-see-zay-mahN)  precisely
- profond (proh-fohN) → profondément (proh-fohN-day-mahN)  profoundly

Adjectives ending in ant and ent have adverbs ending in amment and emment respectively:

- constant (kohN-stahN) → constamment (kohN-stah-mahN)  constantly
- courant (koo-rahN) → couramment (koo-rah-mahN)  fluently
- différent (dee-fay-rahN) → différemment (dee-fay-reh-mahN)  differently
- évident (ay-vee-dahN) → évidemment (ay-vee-deh-mahN)  evidently
- récent (ray-sahN) → récemment (ray-seh-mahN)  recently

Be careful with these adverbs that have distinct forms from adjectives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bon (bohN)/good</td>
<td>bien (byaN)/well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mauvais (moh-veh)/bad</td>
<td>mal (mahl)/badly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meilleur (meh-yuhr)/better</td>
<td>mieux (myuh)/better</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>petit (puh-tee)/little</td>
<td>peu (puh)/little</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pitfall

Watch out for irregular adjectives!

Elle travaille intensément.
Évidemment, il parle français couramment.

Elle est petite et elle mange peu.
She is little and she eats little.

Ils sont de bons musiciens et ils jouent bien de la guitare.

They are good musicians and they play the guitar well.
Some adverbs and adverbial expressions are not formed from adjectives at all and, therefore, do not end in *ment*. Table 18.10 gives the most common adverbs that follow this rule. These familiar, high-frequency words are extremely useful in everyday conversation.

**Table 18.10 Adverbs and Adverbial Expressions not Formed from Adjectives**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>alors</td>
<td><em>ah-lohrs</em></td>
<td>then</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>après</td>
<td><em>ah-preh</em></td>
<td>afterward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aussi</td>
<td><em>o-see</em></td>
<td>also, too</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beaucoup</td>
<td><em>bo-koo</em></td>
<td>much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bientôt</td>
<td><em>byaN-to</em></td>
<td>soon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comme</td>
<td><em>kohm</em></td>
<td>as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d'habitude</td>
<td><em>dah-bee-tewd</em></td>
<td>usually, generally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>déjà</td>
<td><em>day-zhah</em></td>
<td>already</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encore</td>
<td><em>ahN-kohr</em></td>
<td>still, yet, again</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enfin</td>
<td><em>ahN-faN</em></td>
<td>finally, at last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ensemble</td>
<td><em>ahN-sahNbl</em></td>
<td>together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ensuite</td>
<td><em>ahN-sweet</em></td>
<td>then, afterwards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ici</td>
<td><em>ee-see</em></td>
<td>here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>là</td>
<td><em>lah</em></td>
<td>there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loin</td>
<td><em>lwaN</em></td>
<td>far</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>longtemps</td>
<td><em>lohn-tahN</em></td>
<td>a long time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maintenant</td>
<td><em>maNt-nahN</em></td>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>même</td>
<td><em>mehm</em></td>
<td>even</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moins</td>
<td><em>mwaN</em></td>
<td>less</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parfois</td>
<td><em>pahr-fwah</em></td>
<td>sometimes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plus</td>
<td><em>plew</em></td>
<td>more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>près</td>
<td><em>preh</em></td>
<td>near</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>presque</td>
<td><em>prehsk</em></td>
<td>almost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puis</td>
<td><em>pwee</em></td>
<td>then</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quelquefois</td>
<td><em>kehl-kuh-fwah</em></td>
<td>sometimes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>si</td>
<td><em>see</em></td>
<td>so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>souvent</td>
<td><em>soo-vahN</em></td>
<td>often</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(table continued on next page)*
Position of Adverbs

Adverbs are generally placed after the verb they modify. Sometimes, however, the position of the adverb is variable and is usually placed where we would logically put an English adverb.

D'habitude il joue bien au football. Il joue très bien au football.

Usually he play soccer well. He plays soccer very well.

How Well Do You Do?

How's your cooking? Can you carry a tune? Are you light on your feet or do you stomp on your partner's toes on the dance floor? We each perform according to our own individual abilities. Express how you feel you fare at these activities by using adverbs:

Example: parler anglais Je parle anglais couramment.

parler français
jouer du piano
jouer au golf
cuisiner (cook)
penser (think)
travailler
The Least You Need to Know

• The verb *faire* is used to express participation in a sport.

• *Vouloir* and *pouvoir* + a verb infinitive can be used to propose, accept, and refuse invitations.

• Adverbs are formed by adding *ment* to many adjectives ending in a vowel.
PART 4
PROBLEMS

19 Dealing with a Bad Hair Day and Getting Other Personal Services  247

20 Is There a Doctor in the House?  263

21Oops, I Forgot…  275

22 I Have to Make an Important Phone Call  287

23 Where's the Nearest Post Office?  295
You've been traveling and having a wonderful time. All of a sudden there is a problem that just can't wait: your roots have surfaced in record time, you've spilled mustard on your new white silk shirt, your contact lens has torn, you've broken a heel on your shoe, or your five-year-old has dropped your camera, smashing the lens. You're not home, and you're very hesitant about what to do. Ask the concierge of your hotel or consult *les pages jaunes* (*lay pahzh zhon*), the yellow pages. Don't worry, the French have competent, expert technicians, and all you have to do is know what to say to get the job done. This chapter will make that task easy.
My Hair Needs Help, Now!

You're on vacation, you're feeling quite carefree and the sky's the limit. You pass by a salon and you're struck by a sudden whim to return home with a brand new look. Why not be daring? You're in Paris, the world-famous center of haute couture (high style and fashion). You want a more tantalizing “you” and this is the place to get it.

In the past, men went chez le coiffeur (to the barber's) while women were accustomed to going au salon de beauté (to the beauty parlor). Today these establishments have become more or less unisex with men and women demanding more or less the same services. To get what you want simply ask:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Could you give me…</th>
<th>I would like…</th>
<th>please</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pourriez-vous me donner…</td>
<td>Je voudrais…</td>
<td>s'il vous plaÎt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>poo-ryay voo muh doh-nay</em></td>
<td><em>zhuh voo-dreh</em></td>
<td><em>seel voo pleh</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Today's salons provide the services listed in Table 19.1

### Table 19.1 Hair Care

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service</th>
<th>French Description</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a blunt cut</td>
<td>une coupe en carré</td>
<td>ewn koop ahN kah-ray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a coloring (vegetable)</td>
<td>une teinture (végétale)</td>
<td>ewn taN-tewr (vay-zhay-tahl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a facial</td>
<td>un massage facial</td>
<td>uhN mah-sahzh fah-syahl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a haircut</td>
<td>une coupe de cheveux</td>
<td>ewn koop dah shuh-vuh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a manicure</td>
<td>une manucure</td>
<td>ewn mah-new-kewr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a pedicure</td>
<td>une pédicurie</td>
<td>ewn pay-dee-kew-ree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a permanent</td>
<td>une permanente</td>
<td>ewn pehr-mah-nahNt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a set</td>
<td>une mise en plis</td>
<td>ewn mee-zohN plee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a shampoo</td>
<td>un shampooing</td>
<td>uhN shahN-pwaN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a trim</td>
<td>une coupe</td>
<td>ewn koop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a waxing</td>
<td>une épilation</td>
<td>ewn ay-pee-lah-syohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>highlights</td>
<td>des reflets</td>
<td>day ruh-fleh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>layers</td>
<td>une coupe dégradée</td>
<td>ewn koop day-grah-day</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 19.2 gives you the phrases you need to get other services. Use the following phrase to preface your request:

Could you please…?
Pourriez-vous…s'il vous plaÎt?
*poo-ryay voo...seel voo pleh*
Table 19.2 Other Services

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service</th>
<th>French Description</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blow dry my hair</td>
<td>me donner un brushing</td>
<td>muh doh-nay uhN bruh-sheeng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curl my hair</td>
<td>me friser les cheveux</td>
<td>muh free-zay lay shuh-vuh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shave my beard (my mustache)</td>
<td>me raser la barbe (la moustache)</td>
<td>muh rah-zay lah bahr (lah moo-stahsh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>straighten my hair</td>
<td>me défriser les cheveux</td>
<td>muh day-free-zay lay shuh-vuh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trim my bangs</td>
<td>me rafraîchir la frange</td>
<td>muh rah-freh-sheer lah frahNzh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trim my beard (mustache, sideburns)</td>
<td>me rafraîchir la barbe (la moustache, les pattes)</td>
<td>muh rah-freh-sheer lah bahr (lah moo-stahsh, lay paht)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Expressing Your Preferences

It is hard enough getting the haircut and style you want when there is no language barrier—imagine the disasters that could befall your poor head in a foreign country? The following phrases will help you make your styling and coloring preferences clear.

Je préfère mes cheveux…

zhuh pray-fehr may shuh-vuh

I prefer my hair…

long          | longs          | lohN |
medium        | mi-long      | mee-lohN |
short         | courts        | koor |
wavy          | frisés        | free-zay |
curly         | bouclés       | boo-klay |
straight      | raides (lissés) | rehd (lee-say) |
auburn        | auburn, châtain clair | oh-bewrn, shah-taN klehr |
black         | noir          | nwahr |
blond         | blond         | blohN |
brunette      | brun          | bruhN |
chestnut brown | châtain     | shah-taN |
red           | roux          | roo |
a darker color      | une teinte plus foncée | ewn taNt plew fohN-say |
a lighter color
une teinte plus claire  
*ewn taNt plew klehr*

the same color
la même couleur  
*lah mehm koo-luhr*

Are you allergic to any products or specific chemicals? Are you sensitive to smells? Do you hate it when your hair feels like cardboard? If you don't like certain hair care products, don't be shy, tell the hairdresser:

*Ne mettez pas de (d’)... s’il vous plaît.*  
*nuh meh-tay pah duh ... seel voo pleh*

Don't put any...please

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>conditioner</td>
<td>après-shampooing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>shampooing démelant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gel</td>
<td>gel coiffant (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hairspray</td>
<td>laque (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lotion</td>
<td>lotion (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mousse</td>
<td>mousse coiffante (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shampoo</td>
<td>shampooing (m.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Cultural Tidbits**

Do you want to cover that gray with a natural looking color? Why not allow a student at L'Oréal headquarters in Clichy, a suburb of Paris, to work miracles on you? After all, it was Eugène Schueller, a Parisian hairdresser who, in the early 1900s, developed the first permanent hair color using an oxidation process. Needless to say, women who were unsatisfied with the results of crude dyes and herbal compounds were ecstatic. Mr. Schueller, elated with his success, continued to do extensive research in the hair care field, created many new products (shampoos, setting lotions, conditioners, mousse) and launched the company that is today L'Oréal. If you're interested, why not pick up a copy of *La Coiffure de Paris*, a technical magazine that has become the professional hairdresser's bible in Europe?

**I'm Having Problems**

There are phrases that will come in handy when you are seeking certain services or are trying to have something repaired. Use the following phrases at the dry cleaner, the shoemaker, the optometrist, the jeweler, or the camera store.
At what time do you open? 
Vous fermez à quelle heure? 
*vo zeh too-vehr ah kehl uhr*

At what time do you close? 
Vous êtes ouvert à quelle heure? 
*vo fehr-may ah kehl uhr*

What days are you open? Closed? 
Vous êtes ouvert (vous fermez) quels jours? 
*vo zeh oo-vehr* (*vo fehr-may* *) kehl zhoor*

Can you fix it (them) today? 
Pouvez-vous le (la, l', les) réparer aujourd'hui? 
*poo-vay voo luh (lah, lay) ray-pah-ray o-zhoor-dwee*

Can you fix it (them) temporarily (while I wait)? 
Pouvez-vous le (la, l', les) réparer provisoirement (pendant que j'attends)?
*poo-vay voo luh (lah, lay) ray-pah-ray proh-vee-zwahr-mahN (pahN-dahN kuh zhah-tahN)*

**At the Dry Cleaner's—à la Teinturerie**

You've unpacked. Your blue pants look like you slept in them and your tan jacket has an ugly stain on the sleeve that you hadn't noticed when you packed it. Don't fret. Your stains, spots, tears, and wrinkles can be taken care of if you know how to explain your problem and ask for the necessary service.

What's the problem? 
Quel est le problème? 
*kehl eh luh proh-blehm*

There is (are)…
*Il y a…*
*eel yah*

a hole 
un trou 
*uhN troo*

a missing button 
un bouton qui manque 
*uhN boo-tohN kee mahNk*

a spot 
une tache 
*ewn tahsh*

a tear 
une déchirure 
*ewn day-shee-rewr*

---

**Cultural Tidbits**

Don't expect to find as many laundromats in France as in the United States. And don't expect the quick same-day service that has spoiled so many of us. Although French laundries are very good, they are slow. Plan on waiting a few days to get your stains removed and your clothes cleaned. If you're lucky, in big cities you might find a dry cleaner who can have your laundry ready in a day. Your best bet is to travel with as many permanent press clothes as possible. You may do your wash in the sink. Enjoy the bidet, but it's definitely not for washing your clothes.
Now that you've explained the problem, state what you'd like done about it:

**As a Rule**
If you'd like a service performed for someone else, use the appropriate indirect object: *te* (for you), *lui* (for him, her), *nous* (for us), *vous* (for you), *leur* (for them).

Can you please mend this (these)...for me?
*Vous pouvez me faire recoudre ce (cette, cet, ces)...?*

Can you please press this (these)...for me?
*Vous pouvez me repasser (réparer) ce (cette, cet, ces)...?*

Can you please starch this (these)...for me?
*Vous pouvez m'amidonner ce (cette, cet, ces)...?*

Do you do invisible mending?
*Vous faites le stoppage?*

Can you please weave this (these)...for me?
*Vous pouvez me tisser ce (cette, cet, ces)...?*

---

**At the Laundry—à la Blanchisserie or à la Laverie Automatique**

**As a Rule**
The verb *faire* (to make, do) can be used before an infinitive when you want to express that you are having something done for yourself (such as a personal service):

*I would like to have my suit dry cleaned.*

*Je voudrais faire nettoyer à sec mon costume.*
If your laundry has piled up and you don't mind doing it yourself, you might try to seek out a laundromat. Use the following phrases to get the information you need.

I have a lot of dirty laundry.
J'ai beaucoup de lessive.
zhay bo-koo duh leh-seev

I'd like to wash my clothes.
Je voudrais laver mes vêtements.
zhuh voo-dreh lah-vay may veht-mahN

I'd like to have my clothes washed.
Je voudrais faire laver mes vêtements.
zhuh voo-dreh fehr lah-vay may veht-mahN
So you're embarrassed to have anyone see your dirty laundry. Or perhaps you're afraid that your beautiful new silk shirt will get ruined by an amateur. If you want to do the job yourself, the following phrases might serve you well:

- Is there a free washing machine (dryer)?
  - Y a-t-il une machine à laver (un séchoir) libre?
  - ee ah-tee ewn mah-sheen ah lah-vay (uhN saysh-wahr) leebr

- Where can I buy soap powder?
  - Où puis-je acheter de la lessive en poudre?
  - oo pweezh ahsh-tay duh lah leh-seev ahN poodr

**At the Shoemaker's—Chez le Cordonnier**

Let's say that you've walked so much that you've worn your soles down, or you've broken a shoelace on your dress shoes, or perhaps you would just like a shine. The following phrases will help you describe your problem.

- Can you repair … for me?
  - Pouvez-vous me réparer …?
  - poo-vay voo muh ray-pah-ray

- these shoes, these boots, this heel, this sole
  - ces chaussures, ces bottes, ce talon, cette semelle
  - say sho-sewr, say boht, suh tah-lohN, seht suh-mehl

- Do you sell shoelaces?
  - Vendez-vous des lacets?
  - vahN-day-voo day lah-seh?

- I'd like a shoe shine.
  - Je voudrais un cirage.
  - zhuh voo-dreh zuhN see-rage

**I Need These Shoes**

You've got an unexpected, important business meeting to attend and your walking shoes are inappropriate attire. Your dress shoes are in need of repair and you need them in a hurry. What service does this shoemaker provide?

- CV, CORDONNERIE, VARTAN

Prend et Livre à domicile

83, r. de Longchamp

765016 PARIS
At the Optometrist's—Chez l'Opticien

What could be more annoying than losing or tearing a contact lens, or breaking or losing a pair of glasses while away from home? For those of us who depend on these optical necessities the following phrases could one day prove useful.

Can you repair these glasses for me?
Pouvez-vous me réparer ces lunettes?

The lens (the frame) is broken.
Le verre (La monture) est cassé(e).

Can you replace this contact lens?
Pouvez-vous remplacer cette lentille (ce verre) de contact?

Do you have progressive lenses?
Avez-vous des verres progressifs?

Do you sell sunglasses?
Vendez-vous des lunettes de soleil?

Cultural Tidbits

Varilux, or progressive eyeglass lenses, are now being used by many individuals to replace bifocals. These lenses, developed and perfected in France, contain several different increasing or decreasing strength prescriptions in just one lens. They allow near-sighted and far-sighted alike to have excellent near, mid-range, and distant vision without having to look through annoying lines that cut across the visual field.

I Need Them Now

Individuals with very poor vision may have eyeglasses with lenses as thick as coke bottles, that distort the size and shape of their eyes. And because of the strength of their prescription, these same people may have trouble finding replacement lenses in an emergency. What two services are being offered below?

OPTIQUE, ANTOINE

S.O.S. LUNETTES, EN 1 HEURE, RENSEIGNEZ-VOUS, SPÉCIAL MYOPES

verres, de fortes correction, ne déformant, plus le visage

37 bd St Germain, 75005 PARIS
**At the Jeweler's—Chez le Bijoutier**

If your watch has stopped, or isn't working as it should, you might find it necessary to have it repaired before returning home:

Can you repair this watch?  
Pouvez-vous réparer cette montre?  
*pooy voh ray-pah-ray seh mohntr*

My watch doesn't work.  
Ma montre ne marche pas.  
*mah mohntr nuh mahrsh pah*

My watch is fast (slow).  
Ma montre avance (retarde).  
*ma mohntr ah-vahNz (ruh-tahrD)*

Do you sell bands (batteries)?  
Vendez-vous des bandes (des piles)?  
*vahN-day voo day bahnd (day peel)*

**It's My Watch**

You have to meet a friend at a specific time. You look at your watch and realize that it isn't working properly. You pass by a jewelry store and decide to stop in for a quick repair. Explain your problem and the service you want.

**At the Camera Shop—au Magasin de Photographie**

For many people, a vacation is not a vacation unless they capture it on film. If you need to visit a camera shop or film store in a French speaking country, the following words and phrases will come in handy.

A camera  
un appareil-photo  
*uhN nah-pah-rahy foh-to*

A video camera  
un appareil vidéo  
*uhN nah-pah-rahy vee-day-o*

If you have special needs, you might ask:

Do you sell rolls of 20 (36) exposure film in color (black and white)?  
Vendez-vous des pellicules de vingt (trente-six) en couleur (noir et blanc)?  
*vahN-day voo day peh-lee-kewl duh vaN (trahNt-sees) ahN koo-luhr (nwahr ay blahN)*

Do you sell film for slides?  
Vendez-vous des pellicules pour diapositives?  
*vahN-day voo day peh-lee-kewl poor dee-ah-poh-teev*

I would like to have this film developed.  
Je voudrais faire développer ce film.  
*zhuh voo-dreh fehr day-vloh-pay suh feelm*
I Need a New Camera

Are you dissatisfied with the pictures you've been taking? Perhaps you just want something a bit more modern that's easier to use. What services would you expect to receive at this photo store supply?

PHOTO-EXPERT, TOUTES LES GRANDES MARQUES

Vente-Achat-Echange, Réparation

Vente au plus bas prix, Achat au plus haut cours

Other Services

In addition to the shoemaker, the camera store, and the hairdresser, you may need other special services from time to time. For instance, you may need to find your consulate to report a lost passport. Or perhaps your handbag has been stolen and you'd like to file a police report. You may even want a translator to make sure you don't get into deeper trouble. The following phrases should help.

Where is…
Où est…
oo eh

the police station?
le commissariat de police?
luh koh-mee-sah-ryah duh poh-lees

the American consulate?
le consulat américain?
luh kohN-sew-lah ah-may-ree-kaN

le consulat américain?
l'ambassade américaine?
lahN-bah-sahd ah-may-ree-kehN

I lost…
J'ai perdu…
zhay pehr-dew

my passport.
mon passeport.
mohN pahs-pohr

my wallet.
mon portefeuille.
mohN pohr-tuh-fuhy

Help me, please.
Aidez-moi, s'il vous plaît.
eh-day mwah seel voo pleh

I need an interpreter.
Il me faut un interprète.
eel muh fo tuhN naN-tehr-preht

Does anyone here speak English?
Y a-t-il quelqu'un qui parle anglais?
ee ah teel kehl kuhN kee pahrl ahN-gleh

More Stress

Stress pronouns are so-named because you will use them when you need to emphasize a certain fact. Stress pronouns may highlight or replace certain nouns or pronouns and they are used after prepositions. This concept sounds more confusing than it is. Table 19.3 shows subject pronouns with their corresponding stress pronouns.
Table 19.3 Stress Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>subject</strong></td>
<td><strong>stress pronoun</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(je)</td>
<td>moi (mwah)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(tu)</td>
<td>toi (twah)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(il)</td>
<td>lui (lwee)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(elle)</td>
<td>elle (ehl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(on)</td>
<td>soi (soi)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Using Stress Pronouns

Stress pronouns can be used in situations where you want to emphasize the subject.

Moi, je veux parler au propriétaire.  
Moi, je veux parler au propriétaire.  
*mwah zhuh vuh pahr-lay o proh-pree-ay-tehr*  
Me, I want to speak to the owner.

Lui, il a fait une faute.  
Lui, il a fait une faute.  
*lwee eel ah feh tewn foht*  
He made a mistake.

Stress pronouns are used after *ce + être* (it is):

Qui est-ce? C'est moi.  
Qui est-ce? C'est moi.  
*kee ehs? seh mwah*  
Who is it? It is I.

C'est lui qui répare les montres.  
C'est lui qui répare les montres.  
*seh lwee kee ray-pahr lay mohNtr*  
He (It is he who) repairs watches.

Stress pronouns are used when the pronoun has no verb:

Qui est la propriétaire? Elle.  
Qui est la propriétaire? Elle.  
*kee eh lah proh-pree-ay-tehr ehl*  
Who is the owner? She (is).

Stress pronouns are used in compound subjects:

Anne et eux vont chez le coiffeur.  
Anne et eux vont chez le coiffeur.  
*ahn ay uh vohn shay luh kwah-fuhr*  
Anne and they are going to the hairdresser.

If one of the stress pronouns is *moi*, the subject pronoun *nous* is used in summary (because *someone + me = we*) but does not have to appear in the sentence:

Henri et moi, nous allons chez l'opticien.  
Henri et moi, nous allons chez l'opticien.  
Henri et moi allons chez l'opticien.  
Henry and I go to the optometrist.
If one of the stress pronouns is toi, the subject vous is used in summary (because someone + you [singular] = you [plural]) but does not have to appear in the sentence:

Guy et toi, vous allez chez le cordonnier?
Guy et toi allez chez le cordonnier.
Guy and you go to the shoemaker.

Stress pronouns are used after a preposition when referring to a person or persons:

Je vais chez toi.
I'm going to your house.

Ne pars pas sans lui.
Don't leave without him.

Stress pronouns are used after certain verbs that do not use a direct object:

avoir affaire à ah-vwahr ah-fehr ah to have business with
être à ehtr ah to belong to
penser à pahN-say ah to think about (of)
se fier à suh fee-ay ah to trust
s'intéresser à saN-tay-reh-say ah to be interested in

J'ai affaire à lui.
I have business with him.

Cette montre est à moi.
That watch is mine.

Relieve My Stress

If you want to speak like a native, make sure that you use stress pronouns correctly. Here are some examples of the different types of sentences requiring them. Fill in the appropriate pronoun:

1. (us) Il a affaire à_____.
2. (he, I)_____et_____allons à l'ambassade.
3. (you fam.)_____, tu vas chez le coiffeur?
4. (she)_____, elle répare bien les vêtements.
5. (they masc.) Je ne peux pas partir sans_____
6. (you pol.) C'est_____qui allez m'accompagner.
Comparison Shopping

The comparative and superlative forms of the adjectives used must agree in gender and number with the nouns they describe.

**As a Rule**

Jeanne est moins grande que son frère.

Les boutiques de Paris sont les plus élégantes.

Which shop offers the least expensive merchandise? Which merchant is the most honest? Who is the most reliable? When shopping for goods or services, we often compare cost, reputation, and the goods or services themselves before making a choice. The following table gives you the phrases and adjectives you need when making comparisons.

**Table 19.4 Comparison of Adjectives—Inequality**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>honnête (<em>oh-neht</em>)</th>
<th>honest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Comparative</td>
<td>plus honnête (<em>plew zoh-neht</em>), moins honnête (<em>mwaN zoh-neht</em>)</td>
<td>more honest, less honest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superlative</td>
<td>le (la, les) plus honnête(s), le (la, les) moins honnête(s)</td>
<td>the most honest, the least honest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pitfall**

Beware of irregular comparisons. Never use plus or mauvais with the adjective bon. There are special comparative forms that express better and best:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>bon(ne)(s)</th>
<th>good</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Comparative</td>
<td>meilleur(e)(s)</td>
<td>better</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superlative</td>
<td>le (la, les) meilleur(e)(s)</td>
<td>best</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Que* may or may not be used after the comparative. When used, *que* expresses *than*. *Que* becomes *qu’* before a vowel or vowel sound.

Qui est plus charmant(e)?

Roger est plus charmant (que Lucien).

Sylvie est plus chamante (qu'Anne).
The preposition *de* + definite article (*du, de la, de l’, des*) may be used to express *in (of) the*.

- Ce cordonnier est honnête.
- Ce cordonnier est plus honnête que lui.
- Ce cordonnier est le plus honnête (de la ville).
- Ces coiffeuses sont aimables.
- Ces coiffeuses sont les plus aimables.
- Ces coiffeuses sont les moins aimables (du salon).

When I prepare my special recipe for French pot roast, everyone gathers around the table in eager anticipation. My son Eric eats the slowest and savors every morsel. My husband eats with gusto. But my son Michael, he eats the fastest of all. His reasoning is: “More for me!” Whether it's eating, working, or running, the different ways in which people do things may be compared. Table 19.5 shows how to make comparisons using adverbs.
Table 19.5 Comparison of Adverbs—Inequality

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Adverb Form</th>
<th>English Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>rapidement</td>
<td>rapidly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparative</td>
<td>plus rapidement,</td>
<td>more rapidly,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>moins rapidement</td>
<td>mwaN rapide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superlative</td>
<td>le plus rapidement, le</td>
<td>the most rapidly, the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>moins rapidement</td>
<td>least rapidly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As a Rule
There is no agreement of the definite article in the superlative with any word in the sentence. _Le_ is always used. That's because we're using adverbs to describe actions (verbs) and agreement occurs only when we are using adjectives to describe people, places, things, or ideas (nouns).

Elle parle franchement.
Elle parle plus franchement que moi.
Elle parle le plus franchement du groupe.

You've spent the day visiting museums in Paris. The Louvre is vast and contains treasures from antiquity, while the Picasso museum is very modern. Did you find these museums equally appealing, or did you prefer one over the other? Did you spend equal amounts of time in each, or did one visit last longer than the other? If everything were equal, then you may express this equality by using:

*aussi* + adjective or adverb + *que*

(as...as)

Il est aussi charmant qu'eux.
_eel eh to-see shahr-mahN kuh_
He is as charming as they.

Elle travaille aussi dur que nous.
_ehl trah-vahy o-see dewr kuh noo_
She works as hard as we do.

Make a Comparison
How do you compare to those you know? Are you shorter? Thinner? More charming? Do you dance better? Work more seriously? Listen more patiently? Use what you've learned above to compare yourself to friends or family members.

As a Rule
The tags -ci (this, these) and -la (that, those) may be joined to nouns to help differentiate between two things being compared.

Ce coiffeur-ci est plus sympathique que ce coiffeur-là.

suh kwah-fuhr-see eh plew saN-pah-tek kuh suh kwah-fuhr-lah

This hairdresser is nicer than that hairdresser.
The Least You Need to Know

- Your problems can be solved and you can get the services you need in a foreign country with a few simple key phrases.

- Stress pronouns are used for emphasis after *c'est* and *ce sont*, in compound subjects, after prepositions and certain verbs, or alone when there is no verb.

- Use *plus* (more) or *moins* (less) before adjectives or adverbs to make comparisons or state the superlative.

- Use *aussi* (as) before adjectives and adverbs to express that things are equal.

---

**Pitfall**

Beware of irregular comparisons. Never use *plus* or *mauvais* with the adverbs *bien*, *beaucoup*, and *peu*.

There are special comparative and superlative forms for these words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bien/well</td>
<td>mieux/better</td>
<td>le mieux/best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peu/little</td>
<td>plus/more</td>
<td>le plus/ (the) most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beaucoup/more</td>
<td></td>
<td>(the) least</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 20
Is There a Doctor in the House?

In the last chapter you learned how to take care of minor problems and repairs. With just a few simple sentences you can readily deal with life's petty annoyances. In this chapter, you'll learn the key words and phrases you'll need should you become sick while abroad.

Falling ill while you're away from home is hard enough, and the situation is even tougher if you can't communicate what is wrong. In this chapter you will learn how to explain your ailments and how long you've been experiencing the symptoms.

In This Chapter
- Your body
- Symptoms, complaints, and illnesses
- Expressing how long
- All about dire (to say, tell)
- How to use reflexive verbs
**Where Does It Hurt?**

I feel especially well-suited to writing this chapter, since our family seems to have spent an inordinate amount of time in foreign hospitals while we were supposed to be on vacation! For instance, one year my uncle arrived in France for a holiday only to be hit with a gall bladder attack. He spent the rest of his vacation flat on his back recovering from surgery for gallstones. Or take my son, who while vacationing in the Dominican Republic, was rushed to a hospital after he smashed his tooth against a toilet bowl. And then there was the year that my husband and I were nearly leveled by jet lag while backpacking through Europe. After going without sleep for 10 days we finally got sleeping suppositories from a Parisian doctor. But by the end of our trip, I wound up in a hospital in Leeds, England, with severe gastroenteritis.

While I hope your luck isn't like ours, it pays to be prepared if illness strikes. To begin with, familiarize yourself with the parts of the body in Table 20.1.

**Table 20.1 Parts of the Body**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ankle</td>
<td>la cheville</td>
<td><em>lah shuh-vee-y</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arm</td>
<td>le bras</td>
<td><em>luh brah</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back</td>
<td>le dos</td>
<td><em>luh do</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>body</td>
<td>le corps</td>
<td><em>luh koor</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brain</td>
<td>le cerveau, la cervelle</td>
<td><em>luh sehr-vo, lah sehr-vehl</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chest</td>
<td>la poitrine</td>
<td><em>lah pwah-treen</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ear</td>
<td>l'oreille (f.)</td>
<td><em>loh-rehy</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eye</td>
<td>l'oeil (m.)</td>
<td><em>luhy</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eyes</td>
<td>les yeux</td>
<td><em>lay zyuh</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>face</td>
<td>la figure, le visage</td>
<td><em>lah fee-gewr, luh vee-zahzh</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finger</td>
<td>le doigt</td>
<td><em>luh dwah</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foot</td>
<td>le pied</td>
<td><em>luh pyay</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand</td>
<td>la main</td>
<td><em>lah maN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>head</td>
<td>la tête</td>
<td><em>lah teht</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heart</td>
<td>le coeur</td>
<td><em>luh kuhr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knee</td>
<td>le genou</td>
<td><em>luh zhuh-noo</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leg</td>
<td>la jambe</td>
<td><em>lah zhahNb</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouth</td>
<td>la bouche</td>
<td><em>lah boosh</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(table continued on next page)*
(table continued from previous page)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nail</td>
<td>l'ongle (m.)</td>
<td>lohNgl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neck</td>
<td>le cou</td>
<td>luh koo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nose</td>
<td>le nez</td>
<td>luh nay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin</td>
<td>la peau</td>
<td>luh po</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoulder</td>
<td>l'épaule</td>
<td>lay-pohl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spine</td>
<td>l'épine dorsale, la colonne vertébrale</td>
<td>lay-peen dohr-sahl, lah koh-lohn vehr-tay-brahl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stomach</td>
<td>l'estomac (m.), le ventre</td>
<td>leh-stoh-mah, lun vahNtr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throat</td>
<td>la gorge</td>
<td>luh gohrzh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toe</td>
<td>l'orteil (m.)</td>
<td>lohr-tehy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tongue</td>
<td>la langue</td>
<td>luh lahNg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tooth</td>
<td>la dent</td>
<td>luh dahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrist</td>
<td>le poignet</td>
<td>luh pwah-nyeh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You Give Me a Pain in the...

As a Rule
Remember that when you say what ails you or anyone else, you must conjugate the verb avoir so that it agrees with the subject. Although the French use avoir to express what’s bothering them, our English may not include the word have.

Elle a mal aux yeux.
Her eyes hurt.

If you have to go to the dentist, use the expression: avoir mal aux dents (to have a toothache) or avoir une rage (even rahzh) de dents (to have a very bad toothache).

J'ai mal aux dents.
I've got a toothache.
Do you want to avoid a trip to the doctor while on vacation? The soundest piece of advice anyone can give you is, if you don't have a cast-iron stomach, don't drink the tap water when you travel. But let's say you forgot this warning and ate salad greens that were washed with tap water. Or, you ordered a drink on the rocks, ignorant of the future gastrointestinal effects of the ice cubes. You've spent too much time in les toilettes and now you find it necessary to go to the doctor. The obvious first question will be: “What's the matter with you? Qu'est-ce que vous avez (keh-kuh voo zah-vay)?” To say what hurts or bothers you, the expression avoir mal à + definite article is used:

J'ai mal au ventre.
zhay mahl o vahNtr
I have a stomach ache.

Ils ont mal aux pieds.
eel zohN mahl o pyay
Their feet hurt.
Another way of talking about your symptoms is to use the expression *faire mal à*—to hurt (which requires an indirect object for *à* + person). Use the appropriate indirect object pronoun to refer to those who might be in pain (*me* [to me], *te* [to you], *lui* [to him/her], *nous* [to us], *vous* [to you], *leur* [to them]). Remember, too, to use the correct form of the possessive adjective that refers to the person in question (*mon, ma, mes; ton, ta, tes; son, sa, ses; notre, nos; votre, vos; leur, leurs*).

Mon ventre me fait mal.  
*mohN vahNtr muh feh mahl*  
My stomach hurts (me).

Ses pieds lui font mal.  
*say pyay lwee fohN mahl*  
His (Her) feet hurt (him, her).

Let's say that your symptoms are more specific than a vague ache or pain. Table 20.2 gives a list of possible symptoms, which will come in handy if you need to describe a problem. Use the phrase *J'ai* (zhay)—*I have*—to preface your complaint.

**Table 20.2 Other Symptoms**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptom</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abscess</td>
<td>un abscès</td>
<td><em>uhN nahb-seh</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blister</td>
<td>une ampoule</td>
<td><em>ewn nahN-pool</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broken bone</td>
<td>une fracture</td>
<td><em>ewn frahk-tewr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bruise</td>
<td>une contusion</td>
<td><em>ewn kohN-tew-zyohN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bump</td>
<td>une bosse</td>
<td><em>ewn bohs</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td>une brûlure</td>
<td><em>ewn brew-lewr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chills</td>
<td>des frissons</td>
<td><em>day free-sohN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cough</td>
<td>une toux</td>
<td><em>ewn too</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cramps</td>
<td>des crampes</td>
<td><em>day krahNp</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diarrhea</td>
<td>de la diarrhée</td>
<td><em>dun lah dee-ah-ray</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fever</td>
<td>de la fièvre</td>
<td><em>duh lah fyehvr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indigestion</td>
<td>une indigestion</td>
<td><em>ewn naN-dee-zhehs-tyohN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lump</td>
<td>une grosseur</td>
<td><em>ewn groh-sewr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>migraine</td>
<td>une migraine</td>
<td><em>ewn mee-grehn</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pain</td>
<td>une douleur</td>
<td><em>ewn doo-luhr</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(table continued on next page)
(table continued from previous page)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rash</td>
<td>une éruption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sprain</td>
<td>une foulure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swelling</td>
<td>une enflure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wound</td>
<td>une blessure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other useful phrases include:

- **Je tousse.**
  - zhuh toos
  - I'm coughing.

- **Je saigne.**
  - zhuh seh-nyuh
  - I'm bleeding.

- **J'ai des nausées.**
  - zhay day no-zay
  - I'm nauseous.

- **Je me sens mal.**
  - zhuh muh sahN mahl
  - I feel bad.

- **Je n'en peux plus.**
  - zhuh nahN puh plew
  - I'm exhausted.

### I Don't Feel So Hot

Now use all that you've learned so far to describe your symptoms and complaints to a doctor. Pretend you have flu-like symptoms, an allergy, a sprained ankle, and finally a migraine.

### This Is What You Have

Obviously, you won't be the only one doing the talking when you visit the doctor. You will also be asked to fill out forms, tell about any medications you are taking, and answer other questions about your symptoms and general health. The doctor or nurse may ask you:
Avez-vous subi (eu)…?
ah-vay voo sew-bee(ew)
Have you had…?
Souffrez-vous de (d’)…?
soo-fray voo duh…
Do you suffer from…?

allergic reaction  
une réaction allergique  
*ewn ray-ahk-syohN ah-lehr-zheek*

angina  
une angine  
*ewn nahN-zheen*

appendicitis  
l'appendicite (f.)  
lah-pahN-dee-seet

asthma  
l'asthme (m.)  
lahz-muh

bronchitis  
la bronchite  
lah brohN-sheet

cancer  
le cancer  
luh kahN-sehr

cold  
un rhume  
uhN rewm

diabetes  
le diabète  
luh dee-ah-beht

dizziness  
le vertige  
luh vehr-teezh

dysentery  
lá dysenterie  
lah dee-sahN-tree

exhaustion  
l'épuisement (m.)  
lay-pweez-mahN

flu  
la grippe  
lah greep

gout  
la goutte  
lah goot

heart attack  
une crise cardiaque  
*ewn kreez kahr-dyahk*

hepatitis  
l'hépatite  
lay-pah-teet

measles  
lá rougeole  
lah roo-zohhl

mumps  
les oreillons (m.)  
lay zoh-reh-yohN

pneumonia  
lá pneumonie  
lah pnuh-moh-nee

polio  
lá poliomyélite  
lah poh-lyoh-myay-leet

smallpox  
lá variole  
lah vah-ryohl

stroke  
une attaque d'apoplexie  
*ewn nah-tahk dah-poh-plehk-see*

sunstroke  
une insolation  
*ewn naN-soh-lah-syohN*
tetanus  
le tétanos  
luh tay-tah-no

tuberculosis  
lá tuberculose  
lah tew-behr-kew-lohz
**How Long Have You Felt This Way?**

*As a Rule*

Remember that *de* contracts with *le* to become *du* and with *les* to become *des.*

Your doctor will probably ask how long you've been experiencing your symptoms. The phrases in Table 20.4 suggest the number of ways you may hear the question posed and the ways in which to answer the question. The phrases vary in difficulty but they all mean the same thing. If you need to ask *how long,* the first expression is the easiest one to use.

**Table 20.3 How Long Have Your Symptoms Lasted?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Depuis quand… (<em>duh-pwee kahN…</em>)</td>
<td>Since when…</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depuis combien de temps (<em>duh-pwee kohN-byaN duh tahN</em>)</td>
<td>How long has (have)...been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combien de temps y a-t-il que… (<em>kohN-byaN duh tahN ee ah-teel kuh…</em>)</td>
<td>How long has (have)...been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ca fait combien de temps que… (<em>sah feh kohN-byaN duh tahN kuh</em>)</td>
<td>How long has (have)...been</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table continued:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Combien de temps y a-t-il que vous souffrez? (<em>kohN-byaN duh tahN ee ah-teel kuh voo soo-fray</em>)</td>
<td>Il y a un jour. <em>eel yah uhN zhoor</em> For one day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ca fait combien de temps que vous souffrez? (<em>sah feh kohN-byaN duh tahN kuh voo soo-fray</em>)</td>
<td>Ca fait une semaine. / Voilà une semaine. <em>sah feh tewn suh-mehn / vwah-lah ewn suh-mehn</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

How long have you been suffering? It's been a week. / For a week.
I'm Suffering

Now use all the variations to explain how long you've been suffering. Talk about a cough you've had for two weeks, a headache that has hung on for three days, or the stomach ache that has been bugging you for nearly a month.

Tell the Truth

What do you say when someone asks how you are? Do you say that you are fine or do you describe every little ache and pain you've been experiencing? When you want to express what you say or tell someone, use the irregular verb dire (to tell, say) in Table 20.4:

Table 20.4 The verb dire (to say, tell)

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je dis</td>
<td>zhuh dee</td>
<td>I say, tell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu dis</td>
<td>tew dee</td>
<td>you say, tell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on dit</td>
<td>eel (ehl, ohN) dee</td>
<td>he (she, one) says, tells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous disons</td>
<td>noo dee-zohN</td>
<td>we say, tell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous dites</td>
<td>voo deet</td>
<td>you say, tell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles disent</td>
<td>eel (ehl) deez</td>
<td>they say, tell</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What Are You Doing to Yourself?

As a Rule
To express that after dire use que:
On dit que je ne suis pas gravement malade.

OhN deek kuh zhuhN swee pah grahv-mahn mahl-lahd
They say that I'm not very sick.

If you want to express how you feel, you can use the irregular verb se sentir. As you can see, se sentir is not just an ordinary verb because it has a special pronoun before it. This pronoun, which can act as either a direct or indirect object pronoun, is called a reflexive pronoun. A reflexive pronoun shows that the subject is performing an action upon itself. The subject and the reflexive pronoun refer to the same person(s) or thing(s): She hurt herself. They enjoy themselves. Sometimes, as with the verb se sentir, it is unclear from the English, that the verb is reflexive. Table 20.6 demonstrates how to conjugate a reflexive verb using the correct reflexive pronouns:
### Table 20.5 The verb se sentir (to feel)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronoun(s)</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je</td>
<td>me sens</td>
<td>zhuh muh sahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td>te sens</td>
<td>tew tuh sahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on</td>
<td>se sent</td>
<td>eel, ehl, ohN suh sahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous</td>
<td>nous sentons</td>
<td>noo noo sahN-tohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous</td>
<td>vous sentez</td>
<td>voo voo sahN-tay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles</td>
<td>se sentent</td>
<td>eel, ehl suh sahNt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### As a Rule

Reflexive verbs can always be identified by the *se* that precedes the infinitive.

Now you can express how you feel:

- I feel well. 
  - Je me sens bien. 
  - *zhuh muh sahN byaN*
- I feel bad. 
  - Je me sens mal. 
  - *zhuh muh sahN mahl*
- I feel better. 
  - Je me sens mieux. 
  - *zhuh muh sahN myuh*
- I feel worse. 
  - Je me sens pire. 
  - *zhuh muh sahN peer*

Now you're on your way out the door, but not before paying the bill (*sa* note—*sah noht) and asking the following question:

> May I please have a receipt for my medical insurance?

> Puis-je avoir une quittance pour mon assurance maladie, s'il vous plaÎt?

> *pweezh ah-vwahr ewn kee-tahNs poor mohN nah-sew-rahNs mah-lah-dee seel voo pleh?*

#### Reflexive or Not?

Of course you know the feeling of returning home from a trip with a suitcase packed with gifts for family members and friends. But do you treat yourself right, too? Do you cast aside all financial concerns and treat yourself to that special souvenir you wanted? In French, when you perform an action *upon* or *for* yourself, that action (verb) is reflexive and requires a reflexive pronoun. In many instances, you can use the same verb, without the reflexive pronoun and perform the action *upon* or *for* someone else. In these cases, an object pronoun (direct or indirect) is used.

- Je *me* lave. 
  - Je lave mon chien. 
  - Je *le* lave.
- I wash myself. 
  - I wash my dog. 
  - I wash him.
In the last example, the direct object pronoun *le* expresses *him*.

Je m'achète un sac. J'achète un sac à Anne. Je lui achète un sac.

I buy myself a bag. I buy a bag for Ann. I buy (for) her a bag.

In the last example, the indirect object pronoun *lui* expresses *for her*.

There are some verbs that are usually or always used reflexively. Table 20.7 provides a list of the most common reflexive verbs:

**Table 20.6 Common Reflexive Verbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>pronunciation</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>s'appeler*</td>
<td>sah-play</td>
<td>to be named, called</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s'approcher de</td>
<td>sah-proh-shay duh</td>
<td>to approach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s'arrêter de</td>
<td>sah-ruh-tay duh</td>
<td>to stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se baigner</td>
<td>suh beh-nyay</td>
<td>to bathe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se blesser</td>
<td>suh bleh-say</td>
<td>to hurt oneself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se brosser</td>
<td>suh broh-say</td>
<td>to brush</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se casser</td>
<td>suh kah-say</td>
<td>to break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se coiffer</td>
<td>suh kwah-fay</td>
<td>to do one's hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se coucher</td>
<td>suh koo-shay</td>
<td>to go to bed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se demander</td>
<td>suh duh-mahN-day</td>
<td>to wonder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se dépêcher</td>
<td>suh day-peh-shay</td>
<td>to hurry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se déshabiller</td>
<td>suh day-zah-bee-yay</td>
<td>to undress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s'endormir</td>
<td>sahN-doehr-meer</td>
<td>to go to sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se fâcher (contre)</td>
<td>suh fah-shay kohNtr</td>
<td>to get angry (with)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s'habiller</td>
<td>sah-bee-yay</td>
<td>to dress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s'inquiéter de*</td>
<td>saN-kee-ay-tay duh</td>
<td>to worry about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se laver</td>
<td>suh lah-vay</td>
<td>to wash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se lever*</td>
<td>suh luh-vay</td>
<td>to get up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se maquiller</td>
<td>suh mah-kee-yay</td>
<td>to apply make-up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se mettre à</td>
<td>suh mehtr ah</td>
<td>to begin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s'occuper de</td>
<td>soh-kew-pay duh</td>
<td>to take care of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se peigner</td>
<td>suh peh-nyay</td>
<td>to comb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(table continued on next page)*
Suppose you are telling someone all the things you do in the morning to prepare yourself for work or school. You might say: “I brush my teeth. I shave my mustache. I wash my hair.” Since you use the word my, you don't have to finish the sentence with “for myself.” It's understood. In French, however, the opposite is done. The reflexive pronoun me (for myself) is used. It then becomes unnecessary to use the possessive adjective my (mon, ma, mes) when referring to parts of the body, since the action is obviously being performed on the subject. And so, the definite article is used instead.

Je me brosse les dents.
zhuh muh brohs lay dahN
I brush my teeth.

Il se rase la barbe.
eel suh rahz lah bahrb
He shaves his beard.

* These verbs all have spelling changes and must be conjugated accordingly. Refer back to Chapter 12.

**Position of the Reflexive Pronoun**

No matter what language you study, it is not uncommon to find that word orders differ from one language to the next. In English, we generally put reflexive pronouns after verbs. You might tell a friend: “I always look at myself in the mirror before I go out.” In French, this is not the case. The reflexive pronoun is placed in the same position as the other pronouns you have studied (direct, indirect, y and en)—that is, before the verb to which their meaning is tied (usually the conjugated verb). When there are two verbs, the pronoun is placed before the infinitive.

Je ne me lave pas.  Je vais me laver.  Ne te lave pas!

Je me lave.

In an affirmative command, reflexive pronouns change position and are placed immediately after the verb and are joined to it by a hyphen. Te becomes toi when it follows the verb:

Lave-toi!

Lavez-vous!
Using Reflexive Verbs

Use what you've learned so far to describe all the things you do before leaving the house in the morning. (Je me lave.) Then, talk about the things you do before going to bed at night. (Je vais me laver.)

Commanding Reflexively

You're traveling in a group and sharing a room with a few friends. You're all getting ready to go out on the town. Practice using reflexives by telling a friend (and then a group of friends) to do and not to do the following: take bath, hurry up, shave, get dressed, brush teeth, have fun.

Example: brush hair

Brosse-toi les cheveux! Ne te Brosse pas les cheveux!
Brossez-vous les cheveux! Ne vous Brossez pas les cheveux!

The Least You Need to Know

• If you fall ill in another country, at the very least you'll be able to tell the doctor where you hurt.

• To express how long something has lasted use depuis quand..., depuis combien de temps..., combien de temps y a-t-il que…, or ça fait combien de temps que….

• Reflexive verbs, identified by the reflexive pronouns that accompany them, are used to show that the subject is acting upon itself.
Chapter 21
Oops, I Forgot…

In This Chapter

- Drugstore and medical items—large and small
- All about *venir* (to come)
- Speaking in the past

Chapter 20 helped express how you feel. You learned to communicate your good health as well as your aches and pains, signs and symptoms, and complaints and problems. Whether you just need a few aspirins or a prescription drug to help you feel like your good old self again, you'll want to take a trip to the drugstore. When you get there, you'll be amazed at all the other things you can purchase.

On the last trip we took, both my husband and I forgot to pack our toothbrushes, toothpaste, and a hair brush. Imagine our dismay when we realized our blunder. However, we laughed it off and simply went to the nearest drugstore. In France, we had the choice of going to *une pharmacie* (*ewn fahr-mah-see*), *une droguerie* (*ewn droh-ree*), or *un drugstore* (*uhn druhg-stohr*). Confused? Don't worry, this chapter will guide you to the correct spot where you can find all of your toiletry needs as well as any medication you need to take. In addition, you'll also learn how to express yourself in the past tense.
From Finding Drugs to Finding Toothpaste

Whether you are trying to obtain medication or a bottle of shampoo, you want to be sure you're in the right place in France.

A \textit{pharmacie}, which is easily identified by a green cross above the door, sells prescription drugs, over-the-counter medications, items intended for personal hygiene, and some cosmetics. If the pharmacy is closed, there will usually be a sign on the door telling customers where they can locate a neighboring pharmacy that is open all night (\textit{une pharmacie de garde}).

A \textit{droguerie} sells chemical products, paints, household cleansers and accessories (mops, brooms, buckets), and some hygiene and beauty products, but does not dispense prescriptions.

A \textit{drugstore} resembles a small department store. You would expect to find varied sections selling personal hygiene items, books, magazines, newspapers, records, maps, guides, gifts and souvenirs, but no prescription medicine. Additionally, you may also find fast-food restaurants, a bar, and even a movie theater.

If you are indeed trying to fill a prescription, you can say to the druggist:

\begin{quote}
I need medication.
Il me faut des médicaments.
\textit{eel muh fo day may-dee-kah-mahN}
\end{quote}

Could you please fill this prescription (immediately)?

\begin{quote}
Pourriez-vous exécuter (tout de suite) cette ordonnance, s'il vous plaÎt?
\textit{poo-ryay voo ehg-zay-kew-tay (toot sweet) seht ohr-doh-nahNs seel voo pleh}
\end{quote}

If you're simply looking for something over-the-counter, Table 21.1 will help you find it. Begin by saying to a clerk: \textit{Je cherche… (zhuh shersh)—I'm looking for…}

\textbf{Table 21.1 Drugstore Items}

\textbf{For Men and Women}

\begin{tabular}{lll}
alcohol & de l'alcool & \textit{duh lahl-kohl} \\
antacid & un anti-acide & \textit{uhN nahN-tee ah-seed} \\
antihistamine & un antihistaminique & \textit{uhN nahN-tee-ees-tah-mee-neek} \\
antiseptic & un antiseptique & \textit{uhN nahN-tee-sehp-teek} \\
aspirins & des aspirines & \textit{day zah-spee-teen} \\
bandages (wound) & des pansements (m.) & \textit{day pahNs-mahN} \\
brush & une brosse & \textit{ewn brohs} \\
condoms & des préservatifs (m.) & \textit{day pray-zehr-vah-tee} \\
cotton (absorbent) & du coton de l'ouate & \textit{dew koh-tohN duh Iwaht} \\
\end{tabular}

(table continued on next page)
cough drops | des pastilles (f.) | day pah-stee-y
---|---|---
cough syrup | le sirop contre la toux | luh see-roh kohNtr lah too
deodorant | du déodorant | dew day-oh-doh-rahN
depilatory | un dépilatoire | uhN day-pee-lah-twahr
eye drops | les gouttes pour les yeux, du collyre | lay goot poor lay zuh, dew koh-leer
first-aid kit | un paquet de pansement | uhN pah-keh duh pahNs-mahN
gauze pads | des bandes de gaze(f.) | day bahnd duh gahz
heating pad | un thermoplasme | uhN teh-r-moh-plahz-muh
ice pack | une vessie de glace | ewn veh-see duh glahs
laxative (mild) | un laxatif (léger) | uhN lahk-sah-teef (lay-zhay)
mirror | un miroir | uhN meer-whahr
moisturizer | de la crème hydratante | duh lah krehm ee-drah-tahNt
mouthwash | un dentifrice | uhN dahN-tee-frees
nail file | une lime à ongles | ewn leem ah ohNgl
nose drops | des gouttes nasales (f.) | day goot nah-zahl
razor (electric) | un rasoir (électrique) | uhN rah-zwahr (ay-lehk-treek)
razor blades | des lames de rasoir (f.) | day lahm duh rah-zwahr
safety pins | des épingles de sûreté (f.) | day zay-paNgl duh sewr-tay
scissors | des ciseaux (m.) | day see-zo
shampoo | du shampooing | dew shahN-pwaN
anti-dandruff | anti-pellicules | ahN-tee peh-lee-kewl
shaving cream | de la crème à raser | duh lah krehm ah rah-zay
sleeping pills | des somnifères (m.) | day sohm-nee-fehr
soap (bar) | une savonette | ewn sah-voh-neht
talcum powder | du talc | dew tahlk
thermometer | un thermomètre | uhN teh-r-mo-mehtr
tissues | des mouchoirs en papier (m.) | day moosh-wahr ahN pah-pyay
toothbrush | une brosse à dents | ewn brohs ah dahN
toothpaste | de la pâte dentifrice | duh lah paht dahN-tee-frees
tweezers | une pince à épiler | ewn paNs ah ay-pee-lay
vitamins | des vitamines (f.) | day vee-tah-meen

(table continued on next page)
For Babies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>French (masculine)</th>
<th>French (feminine)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bottle</td>
<td>un biberon</td>
<td>uhN beeb-rohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diapers (disposable)</td>
<td>des couches (disponibles)</td>
<td>day koosh dees-poh-neebl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pacifier</td>
<td>une sucette</td>
<td>ewn sew-seht</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Special Needs

A pharmacy that specializes in *la location d'appareils médicaux* (lah loh-kah-syohn dah-pah-rehy may-dee-ko)—the rental of medical appliances—would either sell or have information concerning the items for the physically challenged featured in Table 21.2:

Où puis-je obtenir…
*oo pweezh ohb-tuh-neer*
Where can I get…

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cane</td>
<td>une canne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crutches</td>
<td>des béquilles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hearing aid</td>
<td>un audiophone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seeing-eye dog</td>
<td>un chien d'aveugle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walker</td>
<td>un déambulateur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wheel chair</td>
<td>un fauteuil roulant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Have It On Hand

You've rented an apartment in Nice for the summer and you want to ensure that you have a well-stocked medicine cabinet. Using what you've learned, what should you pick up at the local *pharmacie*?

Come with Me

If you called a pharmacy to locate a certain product, you would use the verb *venir* to inform the pharmacist of when you would be *coming* to pick it up. Table 21.3 provides the forms of this irregular verb, which is similar to a shoe verb in that the *nous* and *vous* forms look like the infinitive while the forms for the other subject pronouns do not.
Table 21.3 The Verb venir (to come)

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je viens</td>
<td>zhuh vyaN</td>
<td>I come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu viens</td>
<td>tew vyaN</td>
<td>you come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on vient</td>
<td>eel (ehl, ohN) vyaN</td>
<td>he, she, one comes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous venons</td>
<td>noo vuh-nohN</td>
<td>we come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous venez</td>
<td>voo vuh-nay</td>
<td>you come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles viennent</td>
<td>eel (ehl) vyehn</td>
<td>they come</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Are You Living in the Past?

“Ah, no!” you exclaim to yourself. It seems you’ve misplaced your eye drops or you can’t find your shaving cream. One reason you might go to a pharmacie or a droguerie is because you forgot something at home that you really need. In order to express what you did or did not do, you must use the past tense. In French this tense is called the passé composé—the compound past. The word compound is a key word because it implies that the past tense is made up of more than one part. Two elements are needed to form the passé composé—a helping verb, which expresses that something has just happened; and a past participle, which expresses exactly what the action was. In English we most often use only the past participle and not the helping verb, although it is implied. We’d say: “Oh, no! I forgot my toothbrush.” (not, “Oh no! I have forgotten my toothbrush.”) In French, the helping verb must be used: “Zut! J’ai oublié ma brosse à dents.”

**Forming the Passé Composé**

The passé composé is formed as follows:
subject (noun or pronoun) + helping verb + past participle
The Helping Verb Avoir

Since avoir means to have, it is quite logical that it would serve as a helping verb. Because it is the first verb to follow the subject, the verb avoir must be conjugated. Refresh your memory:

- j'ai
- tu as
- il, elle, on a
- nous avons
- tu avez
- ils, elles ont

To this, you must now add a past participle.

Forming the Past Participle of Regular Verbs

All regular er, ir, and re verbs form their past participles differently as shown in Table 21.4. There are no changes made to the past participles of shoe verbs (-cer, -ger, -yer, e + consonant + er, and é + consonant + er verbs). The past participle remains the same for every subject: J'ai dansé, Tu as dansé, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 21.4 Past Participle Formation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>er Verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voyager voyagé</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tu as oublié les aspirines.
tew ah oo-blee-yay lay zah-spee-reen
You forgot the aspirins.

Le docteur a réfléchi avant d'agir.
luh dohk-tuhr ah ray-flay-shee ah-vahN dah-zheer
The doctor thought before acting.

Saying No in the Past

Since the helping verb is conjugated, this is the verb that is used to form the negative and questions. Ne and pas are placed around it:

- Tu n'as pas oublié les aspirines.
tew nah pah zoo-bee-yay lay zah-spee-reen
  You didn't forget (You haven't forgotten) the aspirins.

- Le docteur n'a pas réfléchi avant d'agir.
luh dohk-tuhr nah pas ray-flay-shee ah-vahN dah-zheer
  The doctor didn't think before acting.
Ils n'ont *pas* rendu le rasoir.

*eel nohN pah rahN-dew luh rah-zwahr*

They didn't return (They haven't returned) the razor.

**Did You or Didn't You?**

A trip to the doctor is often necessary and rarely pleasant when one isn't feeling up to par. In order to get well, one should cooperate. Some patients, as we all know, are very stubborn. Tell what each person did and didn't do in the past:

Example: je/parler a l'infirmière

J'ai parlé à l'infirmière.

Je n'ai pas parlé à l'infirmière.

je/remplir le formulaire

tu/répondre franchement

tu/obéir au docteur

nous/acheter nos médicaments

elle/chercher ses pilules

ils/attendre le pharmacien

**Forming a Question in the Past**

As a Rule

Avoid inverting with *je*. Remember to add *-t-* when inverting *il a* (a-t-il) and *elle a* (a-t-elle) in order to avoid a clash between the two pronounced vowels.

A question may very easily be formed by using *intonation, est-ce que, or n'est-ce pas*:

Ils ont rendu le rasoir?

*Eel zohn rahN-dew luh rah-zwahr*

Est-ce qu'ils ont rendu le rasoir?

*ehs-keel zohn rahN-dew luh rah-zwahr*

Ils ont rendu le rasoir, n'est-ce pas?

*eel zohn rahN-dew luh rah-zwahr nehs pah*

To use inversion, simply invert the *subject pronoun* and the conjugated helping verb.

As a Rule

Some short adverbs may be placed before the past participle:

Elle a trop mangé.

Il a déjà répondu à la question.
As-tu oublié les aspirines?
*ah-tew oo-blee-yay lay zah-spee-reen*
Did you forget (Have you forgotten) the aspirins?

Le docteur, a-t-il réfléchi avant d'agir?
*luh dohk-tuhr ah-teel ray-flay-shee ah-vahN dah-zheer*
Did the doctor think before acting?

A-t-il rendu le rasoir?
*ah-teel rahN-dew luh rah-zwahr*
Did he return (Have they returned) the razor?
**Asking a Negative Question in the Past**

This is a relatively easy task when not using inversion:

Ils n'ont pas rendu le rasoir?

*eel nohN pah rahN-dew luh rah-zwahr*

---

**Pitfall**

A negative construction doesn't work with n'est-ce pas because we cannot use a double negative in French.

Est-ce qu'ils n'ont pas rendu le rasoir?

*ehs-keel nohN pah rahN-dew luh rah-zwahr*

Haven't they returned (Didn't they return) the razor?

Forming a negative question with inversion is a bit trickier. Ne and pas are placed around the inverted pronoun and verb:

---

**As a Rule**

Phrases joined by hyphens can not be separated.

N'a-t-elle pas acheté ses médicaments?

Didn't she buy her medicine?

N'as-tu pas oublié les aspirines?

*nah-tew pah zoo-blee-yay lay zah-spee-reen*

Didn't you forget (Haven't you forgotten) the aspirins?

Le docteur, n'a-t-il pas réfléchi avant d'agir?

*luh dohk-turh nah-teel pah ray-flay-shee ay-vahN dah-zheer*

Didn't the doctor think before acting?

N'ont-ils pas rendu le rasoir?

*nohN-teel pah rahN-dew luh rah-zwahr*

Didn't they return (Haven't they returned) the razor?

---

**Ask Questions**

What makes a person get sick? Eating too much? Working too hard? Not following the doctor's orders? Ask both affirmative and negative questions in the past about each of these subjects:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example: il/trop crier</th>
<th>A-t-il trop crié?</th>
<th>N'a-t-il pas trop crié?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. nous/travailler trop dur</td>
<td>3. ils/perdre conscience</td>
<td>5. tu/trop manger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. elle/obéir au docteur</td>
<td>4. vous/trop maigrir</td>
<td>6. il/attendre dehors longtemps</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Past Participles of Irregular Verbs**

Those verbs not belonging to the *er, ir, or re* family have irregular past participles shown in Table 21.5. We have studied some of these verbs in depth in previous chapters; others will appear in subsequent chapters as noted.
### Table 21.5 Irregular Past Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>avoir (to have)</td>
<td>eu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boire (to drink)</td>
<td>bu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connaître (to be acquainted with *Chap. 23)</td>
<td>connu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devoir (to have to *Chap. 22)</td>
<td>dû</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dire (to say, tell)</td>
<td>dit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>écrire (to write *Chap. 23)</td>
<td>écrit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>être (to be)</td>
<td>été</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire (to make, do)</td>
<td>fait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lire (to read *Chap. 23)</td>
<td>lu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mettre (to put [on])</td>
<td>mis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pouvoir (to be able to)</td>
<td>pu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prendre (to take)</td>
<td>pris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recevoir (to receive)</td>
<td>recu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>savoir (to know *Chap. 23)</td>
<td>su</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voir (to see)</td>
<td>vu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vouloir (to want)</td>
<td>voulu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These verbs form the *passé composé* in the same way as regular verbs.

Il a été au cinéma.

Il n'a pas été au cinéma.

A-t-il été au cinéma?

N'a-t-il pas été au cinéma?

**The Helping Verb être**

A few common verbs use *être* instead of *avoir* as the helping verb. Most of these verbs show some kind of motion either involving going up, down, in, out, or staying at rest. To help remember which verbs use *être*, think of a house whose inhabitants are *DR. & MRS. VANDERTRAMPP:*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>D devenir (to become)</td>
<td>devenu* duh-vuh-new</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R venir (to come back)</td>
<td>revenu* ruh-vuh-new</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M mourir (to die)</td>
<td>mont* mohr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R retourner (to return)</td>
<td>retourné ruh-toor-nay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S sortir (to go out)</td>
<td>sorti sohr-tee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V venir (to come)</td>
<td>venu* vuh-new</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A arriver (to arrive)</td>
<td>arrivé ah-ree-vay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N naître (to be born)</td>
<td>né* nay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D descendre (to descend, go down)</td>
<td>descendu deh-sahN-dew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E entrer (to enter)</td>
<td>entré ahN-tray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R rentrer (to return)</td>
<td>rentré rahn-tray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T tomber (to fall)</td>
<td>tombé tohN-bay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R rester (to remain, stay)</td>
<td>resté rehs-tay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A aller (to go)</td>
<td>allé ah-lay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M monter (to go up, mount)</td>
<td>monté mohN-tay</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(table continued on next page)*
All * past participles are irregular and must be memorized. All reflexive verbs use être as their helping verb. They will be discussed in the next chapter.

Of course, just like avoir, être must be conjugated. Refresh your memory:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine Subjects</th>
<th>Feminine Subjects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je suis allé</td>
<td>je suis allée</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu es allé</td>
<td>tu es allée</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il est allé</td>
<td>elle est allée</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous sommes allés</td>
<td>nous sommes allées</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous êtes allé(s)*</td>
<td>vous êtes allée(s)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils sont allés</td>
<td>elles sont allées</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As you can see, the past participles of all verbs conjugated with être agree in gender (masculine or feminine [add e]) and number (singular or plural [add s]) with the subject. For a mixed group, always use the masculine forms. If the masculine past participle ends in an unpronounced consonant, the consonant will be pronounced for the feminine singular and plural forms.

Il est resté.  
*eel eh reh-stay*  
He stayed.

Il est parti.  
*eel eh pahr-tee*  
He left.

Elle est restée.  
*eel eh reh-stay*  
She stayed.

Elle est partie.  
*eel eh pahr-tee*  
She left.

Ils sont restés.  
*eel sohN reh-stay*  
They stayed.

Elles sont parties.  
*eel sohN pahr-tee*  
They (f.) left.
Il est venu tôt.
*eel eh vuh-new to*
He came early.

Il est mort.
*eel eh mohr*
He died.

Negatives and questions are formed in the same way with *être* as the helping verb as with *avoir*:

Elle est arrivée.
*ehl eh ahr-vey*
She arrived.

Elle n'est pas arrivée.
*ehl n eh pah ahr-vey*
She did not arrive.

Est-elle arrivée?
*ehst ehlay ahr-vey?*
Did she arrive?

N'est-elle pas arrivée?
*nehst ehlay pah ahr-vey?*
Did she not arrive?

What Did They Do?

Yesterday was Saturday and most people were free to do as they wished. Did they go out or hang out around the house? Tell what each person did using the correct helping verb (*avoir* or *être*) and the past participle:

1. il faire du football  
2. nous être en ville  
3. tu voir ce film
4. je pouvoir finir le travail  
5. elles prendre une grand décision  
6. vous lire un livre
7. ils avoir un rendez-vous  
8. elle faire des courses  
9. je (f.) arriver chez un ami
10. nous (m.) revenir du Canada  
11. ils rester à la maison  
12. tu (f.) partir à la campagne  
13. vous (m. pl.) aller à la plage  
14. elle sortir avec des amies
15. ils descendre en ville  
16. elles rentrer tard

What Didn't You Do Today?

Did you ever make a list of chores, only to find at the end of the day that your list was totally unrealistic? Let's say you made a list for today and now your day has come to an end. Tell what you did and did not accomplish.

The Least You Need to Know

• To get prescription drugs you must go to *une pharmacie* not *un drugstore.*

• The past tense in French is made up of two parts: a helping verb (*avoir* or *être*) and a past participle.
Chapter 22
I Have to Make an Important Phone Call

In This Chapter
- How to make a phone call
- Proper phone etiquette
- What to say if there's a problem
- How to use reflexive verbs in the past tense

Your medicinal problems and toiletry needs were taken care of in the last chapter. You feel great and would like to let your family and friends know that everything is all right. It's time to phone home.

Placing a phone call from a foreign country to your home is always a bit of a challenge. It is often necessary to speak with an operator and most people don't realize how difficult it is to communicate by telephone with someone who speaks a different language. The luxury of relying on reading someone's body language or watching his lips for clues disappears once a telephone is introduced. This chapter will help you place a call within or outside the country you are visiting; prepare you for dealing with busy signals, wrong numbers, and other phone mishaps; and teach you how to use reflexive verbs in the past.
How Do I Use This Thing?

If you plan to call long distance from a foreign country, expect that someone will have to explain to you how to use the phone system. It is also likely that the procedures for making local calls will be different than the ones you are used to back home. One thing you will want to make sure to do is correctly express the type of call you wish to make. Table 22.1 provides you your options.

Table 22.1 Types of Phone Calls

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Call</th>
<th>French Description</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>collect call</td>
<td>la communication en P.C.V.</td>
<td><em>lah koh-mew-nee-kah-syohN ahN pay-say-vay</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>credit card call</td>
<td>la communication par carte de crédit</td>
<td><em>lah koh-mew-nee-kah-syohN pahr kahrt duh kray-dee</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local call</td>
<td>la communication locale</td>
<td><em>lah koh-mew-nee-kah-syohN loh-kahl</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long-distance call</td>
<td>la communication interurbaine</td>
<td><em>lah koh-mew-nee-kah-syohN aN-tehr-evr-behn</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of the country call</td>
<td>la communication à l'étranger</td>
<td><em>lah koh-mew-nee-kah-syohN ah lay-traN-zhay</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person-to-person call</td>
<td>la communication avec préavis</td>
<td><em>lah koh-mew-nee-kah-syohN ah-vehk pray-ah-vee</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To facilitate your understanding of using a telephone, you should familiarize yourself with the different parts of the phone featured in Table 22.2.

Table 22.2 The Telephone

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part of Phone</th>
<th>French Description</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>booth</td>
<td>la cabine téléphonique</td>
<td><em>lah kah-been tay-lay-foh-neeek</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>button</td>
<td>le bouton</td>
<td><em>luh boo-tohN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coin return button</td>
<td>le bouton de remboursement</td>
<td><em>luh boo-tohN duh rahN-boors-mahN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cordless phone</td>
<td>le poste sans cordon</td>
<td><em>luh pohst sahN kohr- dohN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portable phone</td>
<td>le téléphone portatif</td>
<td><em>luh tay-lay-fohn pohr- tah-teef</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dial</td>
<td>le cadran</td>
<td><em>luh kah-drahN</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keypad</td>
<td>le clavier à touches</td>
<td><em>luh klah-vyay ah toosh</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phone card</td>
<td>la télécarte</td>
<td><em>luh tay-lay-kahrt</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public phone</td>
<td>le téléphone public</td>
<td><em>luh tay-lay-fohn pew-bleek</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receiver</td>
<td>le combiné, le récepteur</td>
<td><em>luh kohN-bee-nay, luh ray-sehp-tuhr</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(table continued on next page)*
You are now ready to place a call. Be prepared for your hotel to charge exorbitant rates; that's usually the case. In France, it's an excellent idea to purchase a Télécarte (available at the places listed above), which enables you to buy 50 or 120 message units of calls. The number of message units required for the call depends on the total speaking time and the area phoned. More message units would be necessary to call a farther distance or to speak for longer periods of time. A magnetic strip on the Télécarte, similar to the one on a credit card, allows you to use French phones. Since the pictures on these cards vary and change over time, some of the Télécartes will one day be collector's items. Table 22.3 explains how to complete your call using a Télécarte.

Table 22.3 How to Make a Phone Call

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>to call back</th>
<th>rappeler, retéléphoner</th>
<th>rah-play (ruh-tay-lay-fohn-nay)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to dial</td>
<td>composer (faire) le numéro</td>
<td>kohN-po-zay (fehr) luh new-may-ro</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cultural Tidbits

The telephone system in France, France Télécom, is controlled by the government agency P. T. T. (postes, télégraphes et téléphones) and provides many services to its abonné(e)s (ah-boh-nay)—subscribers. Almost the entire phone system is automatic (you don’t need operator assistance to place local or long distance calls) and is connected to the international dialing system. Public pay phones are available in post offices, cafés, in some convenience stores, and on the streets of larger cities.
to hang up (the receiver) raccrocher, quitter rah-kroh-shay (kee-tay)
to insert the card introduire la carte aN-troh-dweer lah kahrt
to know the area code savoir l'indicatif, du pays (country), de la ville (city) sah-vwahr laN-dee-kah-teef dew pay-ee duh lah veel
to leave a message laisser un message leh-say uhN meh-sahzh
to listen for the dial tone attendre la tonalité ah-tahNdr lah toh-nah-lee-tay
to pick up (the receiver) décrocher day-kroh-shay
to telephone téléphoner, appeler par téléphone, donner un coup de fil tay-lay-foh-nay, ah-play pahr tay-lay-fohn, doh-nay uhN koo duh feel

Phone Home

The front of the French yellow pages (les pages jaunes—lay pahzh zhon) provides a tremendous amount of information. What choices are given if you want to phone home?

Special Needs

Many telephone products are available for those with limited visual, auditory, and motor skills. Read the following description of items available to the physically challenged. Can you figure out what kinds of products can be obtained?

Pour aider les personnes handicapées qui ont des difficultés à utiliser le téléphone, cinq produits de base concernant les déficients auditifs, visuels et moteurs, sont proposés:
Did you say an adjustable, amplified receiver? A special light informing the user that a call was made? A simplified phone with two preregistered numbers? A close-captioned telephone? An outer ring with large numbers? A telephone dial written in braille? Good for you!

Hello? Who's This?

Telephone dialogues are a lot more difficult to conduct than face-to-face conversations, since you're not able to observe a person's facial expressions and gestures. In addition, telephones tend to distort voices and sounds. Therefore it would be wise for you to familiarize yourself with the expressions used when making and answering a phone call. Table 22.4 will show you how to begin a telephone conversation.

Table 22.4 Making a Phone Call

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Calling</th>
<th>Answering</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>allô (ah-lo)</td>
<td>allô (ah-lo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Je suis bien…chez? (zhuh swee byaN…shay)</td>
<td>Qui est à l'appareil? (kee eh tah lah-pah-rehy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C'est… (seh…)</td>
<td>Ici… (ee-see…)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>…est là? (… eh lah?)</td>
<td>Is… in (there)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Je voudrais parler à…</td>
<td>Ne quittez (quitte) pas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(zhuh voo-dreh pahr-lay ah)</td>
<td>Hold on,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(nuh kee-tay (keet) pah),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Un moment (uhN mohmahN),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Just a moment,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Il (Elle) n'est pas là (eel [ehl] neh pah lah)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He (She) is not in.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(table continued on next page)
Calling

Quand sera-t-il (elle) de retour? (kahN suh-rah-teel [tehl] duh ruh-toor)

Answering

When will he (she) be back?

Voulez-vous (veux-tu) laisser un message?

Do you want to leave a message?

Je vais rappeler plus tard. (zhuh veh rah-play plew tahr)

I'll call back later.

Whoops, I'm Having a Problem

There are many problems you can run into when making a phone call: a wrong number, a busy signal, a hang up. Here are some examples of phrases you may say or hear should you run into any difficulties:

As a Rule
Allô is only used on the telephone in France. To greet someone in person use bonjour, bonsoir (in the evening only), or salut to be more friendly.

Vous demandez quel numéro?

What number are you calling?

C'est une erreur. (J'ai) Vous avez le mauvais numéro.

It's a mistake. (I have) You have the wrong number.

On nous a coupés.

We got cut off (disconnected).

Recomposez le numéro, s'il vous plaît.

Please redial the number.

Le téléphone est en panne (hors de service).

The telephone is out of order.

J'entends mal.

I can't hear you.

Je ne peux pas vous (t') entendre.

I can't hear you.
Rappelez-moi (Rappelle-moi) plus tard.

ra-h-play (rah-pehl)-mwah plew tah-r

Call me back later.
What Do You Have to Do?

Perhaps you are very busy and do not have the time to talk on the phone today. The irregular verb *devoir*, in Table 22.5, enables you to express what you have to do instead. This verb resembles a shoe verb in that the *nous* and *vous* forms look like the infinitive, while the other forms do not.

**Table 22.5 The Verb devoir (to have to)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je dois</td>
<td>zhuh dwah</td>
<td>I have to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu dois</td>
<td>tew dwah</td>
<td>you have to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on doit</td>
<td>eel (ehl, ohN) dwah</td>
<td>he (she, one) has to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous devons</td>
<td>noo duh-voaN</td>
<td>we have to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous devez</td>
<td>voo duh-vay</td>
<td>you have to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles doivent</td>
<td>eel (ehl) dwahv</td>
<td>they have to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Since the verb *devoir* is followed by another verb, *devoir* is conjugated while the second verb remains in the infinitive:

Je dois raccrocher.
*zhuh dwah rah-kroh-shay*
I have to hang up.

Ils doivent se reposer.
*eel dwahv suh ruh-po-zay*
They have to rest.

Nous devons téléphoner à notre famille.
*noo duh-voaN tay-lay-foh-nay ah nohtr fah-mee-y*
We have to call our family.

I Can't Talk Now

We've all had experiences where the phone has started ringing just as we've gotten one foot out the door, or when we're up to our elbows in grease. Sometimes we're in too much of a hurry to turn around and pick it up. Tell why each of these people can't speak on the phone right now by using devoir (conjugated) + infinitive.

1. elle/réparer sa voiture
2. nous/aller en ville
3. tu/sortir
4. vous/faire des courses
5. ils/travailler
6. je/partir tout de suite

What Did You Do to Yourself

Other reasons why you didn't have time to talk on the phone may involve the use of a reflexive verb in the past. All reflexive verbs use *être* as a helping verb in the passé composé:

Je me suis endormi(e).
Nous nous sommes endormi(e)s.

Tu t'es endormi(e).
Vous vous êtes endormi(e)(s).
In the negative and in questions the reflexive pronoun stays before the conjugated helping verb:

Elle ne s'est pas réveillée à temps.

S'est-elle réveillée à temps?

Ne s'est-elle pas réveillée à temps?

There is no agreement of the past participle if the reflexive pronoun is used as an indirect object. This happens only rarely:

Elle s'est lavée.

She washed herself.

_Herself_ is the direct object. Since _s'_ is a preceding direct object, the past participle _lavée_ must agree with the preceding feminine direct object pronoun _s_'.

Elle s'est lavé les cheveux.

She washed her hair _herself_.

The implied _for_ _herself_ is the indirect object. _Hair_ is the direct object. Since _s'_ is a preceding indirect object and the direct object _les cheveux_ comes after the verb, there is no agreement of the past participle _lavé_ with the preceding indirect object pronoun _s'_.

**Excuses**

Tell why each person didn't get to make the phone call he or she was supposed to make:

1. je (f./se casser le bras
2. elle/se réveiller tard
3. nous(m.)/s'occuper
d'autre chose
4. ils/se mettre à travailler
5. vous (f. pl.)/se lever à
midi
6. tu (f.)/se coucher tôt

**The Least You Need to Know**

- Use the information in the front of the French yellow pages to guide you on how to make most of your telephone calls.
- A Télécarte will allow you to use most French phones.
- In the past tense, reflexive verbs use _être_ as their helping verb.
Chapter 23
Where's the Nearest Post Office?

In the previous chapter you learned how to make a phone call, begin a telephone conversation, explain any
difficulties with the line, and use proper phone etiquette. You also learned that public telephones are readily
available in French post offices—and that's where we are off to next.

Chances are that you won't go to a post office to make a phone call, but you will visit one to send letters, postcards,
and packages to family and friends. You'll learn how to send registered and special delivery letters as well as letters
via air mail so that you can be assured your mail gets to its destination—and gets there fast. In your correspondence
you'll be able to express facts you learned and people you became acquainted with as well as describe all the
activities you participated in from the time of your arrival.

Will My Letter Get There?
You've just visited the Musée du Louvre, dined at La Tour d'Argent, and shopped at Chanel, and now you can't wait
to share your experiences with your friends and family. Usually any letter sent through the mail arrives at its
destination. The real question is
how soon it will get there. If it's speed you want, postage rates will be higher. It costs 2.80F to send a first-class,
local letter in France. At an exchange rate of 5F=$1, American postage is a bargain. Of course no letter or package
can be mailed unless you have a few mail essentials such as envelopes and stamps. Table 23.1 provides you the
vocabulary you need to send your mail.

**Table 23.1 Mail and Post Office Terms**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>address</td>
<td>l'adresse (f.)</td>
<td>lah-drehs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>addressee</td>
<td>le destinataire</td>
<td>luh dehs-tee-nah-tehr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>air letter</td>
<td>l'aérogramme (m.)</td>
<td>lahy-roh-grahm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commemorative stamp</td>
<td>le timbre commémoratif</td>
<td>luh taNbr koh-may-moh-rah-teef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>envelope</td>
<td>l'enveloppe (f.)</td>
<td>lahN-vlohp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>letter</td>
<td>la lettre</td>
<td>luh lehtr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mailbox</td>
<td>la boîte aux lettres</td>
<td>luh bwaht o lehtr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money order</td>
<td>le mandat-poste</td>
<td>luh mahN-dah pohst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>package</td>
<td>le paquet</td>
<td>luh pah-keh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parcel</td>
<td>le colis</td>
<td>luh koh-lee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postcard</td>
<td>la carte postale</td>
<td>luh kahrt pohs-tahl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postage</td>
<td>l'affranchissement(m.)</td>
<td>lah-frahN-shees-mahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postal code</td>
<td>le code postal (régional)</td>
<td>luh kohd pohs-tahl (ray-zoh-nahl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postal meter</td>
<td>la machine à affranchir</td>
<td>lah mah-sheen ah ah-frahN-sheer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postal worker</td>
<td>le facteur (m.), la factrice (f.)</td>
<td>luh fahk-tuhr, lah fahk-trees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postmark</td>
<td>le cachet de la poste</td>
<td>luh kah-sheh duh lah pohst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rate</td>
<td>le tarif</td>
<td>luh tah-reef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sender</td>
<td>l'expéditeur, l'expéditrice</td>
<td>lehks-pay-dee-tuhr, lehks-pay-dee-trees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheet of stamps</td>
<td>la feuille de timbres</td>
<td>luh fuhy duh taNbr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slot</td>
<td>la fente</td>
<td>luh fahNt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stamp</td>
<td>le timbre</td>
<td>luh taNbr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>window</td>
<td>le guichet</td>
<td>luh gee-sheh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Getting Service

So you've written your letter, folded it, and sealed it in an envelope. Now all you need to do is find a post office or a mailbox. If you don't know where one is located, simply ask:

Où se trouve (est) le bureau de poste le plus proche (la boîte aux lettres la plus proche)?

oo suh troov (eh) luh bew-ro duh pohst luh plew prohsh (lah bwaht o lehtr lah plew prohsh)

Where is the nearest post office (mailbox)?

Different types of letters and packages require special forms, paperwork, and special postage rates. It is important to know how to ask for the type of service you need:

Quel est le tarif de l'affranchissement…?

kehl eh luh tah-reef duh lah-frahN-shees-mahN

What is the postage rate…?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service Type</th>
<th>French Expression</th>
<th>English Expression</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>for foreign country (for overseas)</td>
<td>pour l'étranger</td>
<td>poor lay-trahN-zhay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for the United States</td>
<td>pour les États-Unis</td>
<td>poor lay zay-tah zew-nee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for an air mail letter</td>
<td>pour une lettre envoyée par avion</td>
<td>poor ewn lehtr ahN-vwah-yay pahr ah-vyohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for a registered letter</td>
<td>pour une lettre recommandée</td>
<td>poor ewn lehtr ruh-koh-mahN-day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for a special delivery letter</td>
<td>pour une lettre par exprès</td>
<td>poor ewn lehtr pahr ehks-preh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Je voudrais envoyer cette lettre (ce paquet) par courrier régulier (par avion, par exprès).

zhuh voo-dreh zahN-vwah-yay seht lehtr (suh pah-keh) pahr koo-ryay ray-gew-lyay (pahr ah-vyohN, pahr ehks-preh)

I would like to send this letter (this package) by regular mail (by air mail, special delivery).

Je voudrais envoyer ce paquet livrable contre remboursement (payable à l'arrivée).

zhuh voo-dreh zahN-vwah-yay suh pah-keh lee-vrahbl kohNitr rahN-boors-mahN (peh-yahbl ah lah-ree-vay)

I would like to send this package C.O.D.
Combien pèse cette lettre (ce paquet)?

*kohN-byaN pehz seht lehtr (suh pah-keh)*

How much does this letter (package) weigh?

Quand arrivera-t-il (elle)? Quand arriveront-ils (elles)?

*kahN tah-ree-vrah teel (tehl) kahN tah-ree-vrohN teel (tehl)*

When will it arrive? When will they arrive?

**At the Post Office**

So you finally found a post office. You walk in and immediately notice the following sign:

Les P. T. T. annonce une nouvelle série de timbres du Chunnel pour commémorer son premier anniversaire. La série sera émise en timbres de 5F et de 10F. Les timbres seront disponibles dès le 3 mai dans les bureaux de poste.

You can't help it; you're an incorrigible collector. What is the post office offering? What is it celebrating? When is it available?

**I Want to Send a Telegram**

There's wonderful news—your daughter just had a bouncing baby boy. There's a great business deal—a big French firm wants to market your line of clothing. There's a reason to celebrate—your book of poems has been published. There's a surprise—you're getting married after a whirlwind courtship and you want to send a telegram:

Je voudrais envoyer un télégramme (en P.C.V.)

*zhuh voo-dreh zahN-vwah-yay uhn tay-lay-grahm (ahN pay-say-vay)*

I would like to send a telegram (collect).

Quel est le tarif par mot?

*kehr eh luh tah-reef pahr mo*

What is the rate per word?

Puis-je avoir un formulaire, s'il vous plaît?

*pweezh ah-vwahr uhn fohr-mew-lehr seel voo pleh*

May I please have a form?

Où sont les formulaires?

*oo sohN lay fohr-mew-lehr*

Where are the forms?
What Should I Write?

As you fill out different kinds of paperwork, you will be asked to write down a variety of information. Familiarize yourself with the irregular verb *écrire* (to write) in Table 23.2. Notice that it is necessary to add a *v* before the ending in all the plural forms. The past participle of *écrire* is *écrit* (ay-kree).

**Table 23.2 The Verb écrire (to write)**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>j'écris</td>
<td>zhay-kree</td>
<td>I write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu écris</td>
<td>tew ay-kree</td>
<td>you write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on écrit</td>
<td>eel(ehl, ohNn) ay-kree</td>
<td>he (she, one) writes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous écrivons</td>
<td>noo zay-kree-voN</td>
<td>we write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous écrivez</td>
<td>voo zay-kree-vay</td>
<td>you write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles écrivent</td>
<td>eel (ehlz) ay-kreev</td>
<td>they write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Can You Read This?

You will be doing a lot of reading in French whether it be forms and signs, menus, magazines, or newspapers. The irregular verb *lire* (to read) is presented in Table 23.3. It is necessary to add an *s* before the ending in all the plural forms. The past participle of *lire* is *lu* (lew).

**Table 23.3 The Verb lire (to read)**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je lis</td>
<td>zhuh lee</td>
<td>I read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu lis</td>
<td>tew lee</td>
<td>you read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on lit</td>
<td>eel (ehl, ohN) lee</td>
<td>he (she, one) reads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous lisons</td>
<td>noo lee-zohN</td>
<td>we read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous lisez</td>
<td>voo lee-zay</td>
<td>you read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles lisent</td>
<td>eel (ehl) leez</td>
<td>they read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Do French magazines intrigue you? Are you interested in catching up on the news? Is there a sign you don't understand? I'll never forget the time I saw a sign that read “EAU NON-POTABLE.” Although I was a French major, I had never come across this phrase and “potable” was an unfamiliar English cognate to me. I knew that *eau* was water, but that was all I understood. It’s a good thing I didn't take a drink. When I later looked up the phrase, I found that it meant that the water was unfit to drink. Table 23.4 features items that you may read while in France.
Table 23.4 Things to Read

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ad</td>
<td>une annonce publicitaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>book</td>
<td>un livre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magazine</td>
<td>un magazine, une revue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menu</td>
<td>la carte, le menu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newspaper</td>
<td>un journal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>novel</td>
<td>un roman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pamphlet</td>
<td>une brochure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receipt</td>
<td>le reçu, la quittance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sign</td>
<td>un écritau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warning</td>
<td>un avertissement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 23.5 The Verb savoir (to know)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je sais</td>
<td>zhuh seh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu sais</td>
<td>tew seh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on sait</td>
<td>eel (ehl, ohN) seh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nous savons</td>
<td>noo sah-vohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous savez</td>
<td>voo sah-vez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles savent</td>
<td>eel (ehl) sahv</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 23.6 The Verb connaître (to know)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je connais</td>
<td>zhuh koh-neh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu connais</td>
<td>tew koh-neh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on connaît</td>
<td>eel (ehl, ohN) koh-neh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What Do You Know about This?

Do you know the name of a great French restaurant? You do? Do you know where it’s located? How about the phone number? You know the owner too? He's your second cousin and he really knows how to prepare a mean bouillabaisse? That's great. To express certain facts, information, relationships, and abilities you will need the two French verbs that express to know—savoir in Table 23.5 and connaître in Table 23.6.

(table continued on next page)
What's the Difference?

If there are two ways to express to know, how are you supposed to know when to use each one? The important thing to remember is that the French differentiate between knowing facts and how to do things (savoir) and knowing (being acquainted with) people, places, things, and ideas (connaître).

Savez-vous l'adresse?  Sait-il faire du ski?
Do you know the address?  Does he know how to ski?

The verb connaître shows familiarity with a person, a place, or thing. If you can replace to know with to be acquainted with then you know to use the verb connaître.

Connaissiez-vous Marie?  Connais-tu cette chanson?
Do you know Marie? (Are you acquainted with her?) Do you know that song? (Have you heard it? But you don't know the words?)

Notice the difference between:

Je sais ce poème.  I know this poem (by heart).
Je connais ce poème.  I know this poem. (I'm familiar with it.)

Savoir or Connaître?

Keep the differences between the two verbs in mind and you will quickly learn to use them properly. Show that you've gotten the hang of it by filling in the blanks with the correct form of savoir or connaître.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nous connaissons</td>
<td>noo koh-neh-sohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous connaissez</td>
<td>voo koh-neh-say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils connaissent</td>
<td>eel koh-nehs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Ils ____ où se trouve le bureau de poste.
2. Je ne ____ pas son nom.
3. ____-vous les Dupont?
5. ____-tu cet homme?
7. ____-vous que je suis de Nice?
8. Nous ____ ce monument.
What Were You Doing?

I was sitting idly at a club on the boulevard St. Germain, sipping a Cointreau and watching everyone else have a good time. I didn't know anyone and I was getting bored. All of a sudden, the music started up and I became intrigued by a sexy Frenchman who could dance up a storm. I'm not shy so I went over to him and asked him for the next dance. I couldn't believe he said yes. We danced and talked all night and I wound up having a very pleasant evening. He even asked me for my number.

It happened recently but, nonetheless, in the past. In English, we speak or write easily in the past without giving much thought to what we are saying. In French, however, it's not that simple because there are two different past tenses: the passé composé and the imperfect (l'imparfait) as shown in the preceding paragraph. This tends to make speaking in the past a bit confusing. If you mistake one for the other, you'll still be understood. Sometimes either tense is correct. What's the difference? The passé composé expresses specific actions or events that were completed in the past whereas the imperfect expresses an uncompleted action or a continuing state in the past.

Formation of the Imperfect

Before going into a more detailed explanation, let's see how the imperfect is formed. For regular and irregular verbs this is done by dropping the ons ending from the nous form of the present tense and adding the following endings. Table 23.7 shows how easy this is.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>nous parlons</th>
<th>nous finissions</th>
<th>nous répondons</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je parlais</td>
<td>je finissais</td>
<td>je répondais</td>
<td>(zhuh pahr-leh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu parlais</td>
<td>tu finissait</td>
<td>tu répondait</td>
<td>(tew pahr-leh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on parlait</td>
<td>il, elle, on finissait</td>
<td>il, elle, on répondait</td>
<td>(eel [ehl, ohN] pahr-leh)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 23.7 The Imperfect

(er Verbs) ---------------- (ir Verbs) ---------------- (re Verbs)

je parlais (zhuh pahr-leh) ---------------- je finissais (zhuh fee-nee-seh) ---------------- je répondais (zhuh ray-pohN-deh)

Tu parlais (tew pahr-leh) ---------------- tu finissait (tew fee-nee-seh) ---------------- tu répondait (tew ray-pohN-deh)

Il, elle, on parlait (eel [ehl, ohN] pahr-leh) ---------------- il, elle, on finissait (eel [ehl, ohN] fee-nee-seh) ---------------- il, elle, on répondait (eel [ehl, ohN] ray-pohN-deh)

(nous parlions (noo pahr-lyohN) ---------------- nous finissions (noo fee-nee-syohN) ---------------- nous répondions (noo ray-pohN-dyohN)

(table continued on next page)
(table continued from previous page)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vous parliez (voo pahr-lyay)</td>
<td>vous finissiez (voo fee-nee-syay)</td>
<td>vous répondiez (voo ray-pohN-dyay)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils, elles parlaient (eel [ehl] pahr-leh)</td>
<td>ils, elles finissaient (eel [ehl] fee-nee-seh)</td>
<td>ils, elles répondaient (eel [ehl] ray-pohN-deh)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**As a Rule**
Verbs ending in *ions* in the present have an *i* before the *ions* and *iez* imperfect endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nous vérifions</td>
<td>nous vérifions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vous vérifiez</td>
<td>vous vérifiez</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The only verb that is irregular in the imperfect is *être*:

- *j'étais* (zay-teh)  
  nous étions (noo zay-tyohN)
- *tu étais* (tew ay-teh)  
  vous étiez (voo zay-tyay)
- *il, elle, on*  
  ils, elles *étaient* (eel, ehl zay-teh)

For all other irregular verbs in the present tense, you must know the correct *nous* form in order to form the imperfect. How good is your memory? Fill in the *nous* form for the irregular verbs in Table 23.8 and then supply the correct form of the imperfect for the subject given.

**Table 23.8 The Imperfect of Irregular Verbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>nous</th>
<th>elle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>avoir (to have)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boire (to drink)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connaître (to be acquainted with)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devoir (to have to)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dire (to say, tell)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dormir (to sleep)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>écrire (to write)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire (to make, do)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lire (to read)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mettre (to put [on])</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

...
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>nous</th>
<th>tu</th>
<th>elle</th>
<th>ils</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mettre (to put [on])</td>
<td>nous</td>
<td>nous</td>
<td>nous</td>
<td>nous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partir (to leave)</td>
<td>nous</td>
<td>tu</td>
<td>elle</td>
<td>ils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pouvoir (to be able to)</td>
<td>nous</td>
<td>elle</td>
<td>ils</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prendre (to take)</td>
<td>nous</td>
<td>tu</td>
<td>elle</td>
<td>ils</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(table continued on next page)*
(table continued from previous page)

recevoir (to receive)  
nous _____  
vous _____

savoir (to know)  
nous _____  
elles _____

sentir (to feel, smell)  
nous _____  
il _____

servir (to serve)  
nous _____  
elle _____

sortir (to go out)  
nous _____  
tu _____

voir (to see)  
nous _____  
elles _____

vouloir (to want)  
nous _____  
je _____

There are spelling changes in certain shoe verbs:

• cer verbs

Verbs ending in cer change c to ç before a or o to maintain the soft c sound. These changes occur within the shoe.

j'avancais  
nous avancions

tu avançais  
vous avanciez

il, elle on avançait  
ils, elles avaient

• ger verbs

Verbs ending in ger insert a silent e between g and a or o to keep the soft g sound. These changes occur within the shoe.

je mangeais  
nous mangions

tu mangeais  
vous mangiez

il, elle on mangeait  
ils, elles mangeaient

The Passé Composé vs the Imperfect

Which should you use? And when? The passé composé expresses an action that was completed at a specific time in the past. Think of a camera. The passé composé represents an action that could be captured by an instamatic—the action happened and was completed.

The imperfect expresses an action that continued in the past over an indefinite period of time. Think again of a camera. The imperfect represents an action that could be captured by a video camera—the action continued to flow, it was happening, used to happen, or would (meaning used to) happen. The imperfect is a descriptive tense. Table 23.9 provides a more in-depth look at the differences between the two tenses.
Table 23.9 Comparison of the Passé Composé and the Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passé Composé</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Expresses specific actions or events that were started and completed at a definite time in the past (even if the time isn't mentioned): J'ai parlé au directeur. (I spoke to the director.)</td>
<td>1. Describes ongoing or continuous actions in the past (which may or may not have been completed): Je parlais au directeur. (I was speaking to the director.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Expresses a specific action or event that occurred at a specific point in time: Hier il est sorti à midi. (Yesterday he went out at noon.)</td>
<td>2. Describes repeated or habitual actions that took place in the past: D'habitude il sortait à midi. (He usually went out at noon.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Expresses a specific action or event that was repeated a stated number of times: Ils sont allés au cinéma six fois. (They went to the movies six times.)</td>
<td>3. Describes a person, place, thing, or state of mind: Nous étions contents. (We were happy.) La mer était calme. (The sea was calm.) La porte était ouverte. (The door was open.) Je voulais partir. (I wanted to leave.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Passé Composé or Imparfait?

The weather was beautiful and I went on a picnic with a friend. Something unforeseen happened that almost ruined our day. Complete our story with the correct form of the verb in the passé composé or in the imperfect:

C'(être) _____ une belle journée de printemps. Le ciel (être) _____ bleu et les oiseaux (chanter) _____. Je ne (faire) _____ pas grand'chose quand tout à coup le téléphone (sonner) _____. C'(être) _____ mon amie Barbara. Elle me (m') (demander) _____ si je (vouloir) _____ faire un pique-nique dans les bois. Je (J') (dire) _____ “Oui, volontiers!” Alors je (partir) _____ la chercher à 10 h chez elle et nous (aller) _____ au parc en voiture. En route, nous (s'arrêter) _____ à la charcuterie acheter des sandwiches et des boissons. À 11 h nous (arriver) _____ au parc. Le soleil (briller) _____ et il (faire) _____ si beau. Nous (trouver) _____ vite un endroit pour nous installer. Nous (commencer) _____ à manger nos sandwiches quand tout à coup une abeille (attaquer) _____ Barbara. Elle (crier) _____ mais elle (s'échapper) _____. Nous (passer) _____ le reste de la journée à parler de nos amis et à nous amuser. L'après-midi (être) _____ magnifique.
The Least You Need to Know

• *Savoir* means to know a fact or how to do something. *Connaitre* means to be acquainted with a person, place, or thing.

• The imperfect is usually formed by adding appropriate endings to the *nous* form (minus the *ons* ending) of the verb.

• The imperfect is used to describe what the subject *was* doing. The *passé composé* states what the subject *did.*
PART 5
LET'S GET DOWN TO BUSINESS

24 I Want to Rent a Château

25 Money Matters
Although you love the luxury of a well-appointed hotel, this might not prove to be cost-efficient in the long run. You could be better off purchasing or renting an apartment, a house, a condominium, or even buying time in a time-sharing property. This chapter will teach you how to get the facilities you want and need and how to express what you would do in certain circumstances. You'll also learn how to express your plans for the future.
I Want to Rent a Château

Renting a château might be a stretch to the pocketbook but renting or buying a piece of property in a French-speaking country is not at all uncommon today. If you're even considering such a move, read Peter Mayle's *A Year in Provence*. Not only is the book an enjoyable, light read, but it may convince you that you might love to live in the south of France. So if you've decided that it's time to get daring and buy a home of your own, you will want to be able to read and understand the ads in the papers and be able to ask an agent or seller what is being offered. Whether it be a fireplace, huge closets, or central heating, Table 24.1 will help you decipher what features a house or apartment contains. Use *Il me faut* (eel muh fo)—I need—to express what you want.

Table 24.1 The House, the Apartment, the Rooms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>air conditioning (central)</strong></td>
<td>la climatisation (centrale)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>apartment</strong></td>
<td>l'appartement (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>attic</strong></td>
<td>le grenier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>backyard</strong></td>
<td>le jardin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>balcony</strong></td>
<td>le balcon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>basement</strong></td>
<td>le sous-sol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bathroom</strong></td>
<td>la salle de bains, le W.C., la toilette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bedroom</strong></td>
<td>la chambre (à coucher)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cathedral ceiling</strong></td>
<td>le vide cathédrale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ceiling</strong></td>
<td>le plafond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>closet</strong></td>
<td>la penderie, la garde-robe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>courtyard</strong></td>
<td>la cour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>den</strong></td>
<td>la salle de séjour, le living</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>dining room</strong></td>
<td>la salle à manger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>door</strong></td>
<td>la porte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>elevator</strong></td>
<td>l'ascenseur (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fireplace</strong></td>
<td>la cheminée</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>floor</strong></td>
<td>le plancher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>floor (story)</strong></td>
<td>l'étage (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>garage</strong></td>
<td>le garage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ground floor</strong></td>
<td>le rez-de-chaussée</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued on next page)
### Cultural Tidbits

France has always enjoyed a renowned, gastronomical reputation. Surprising as it may seem, older French kitchens were somber, dark rooms hidden away in the rear of the house, almost as if they were an embarrassment. In today's French home, however, the kitchen, with its sleek, ultra-modern and dynamic design, holds a place of honor. And what do many American women pay top dollar for in their kitchens? French cabinets that contain shelves, turntables, and compartments to please and thrill even the most demanding gourmet cook.
All the Comforts of Home

You simply must have a double oven so that you can impress your French business associates with your repertoire of nouvelle cuisine. A microwave oven is a must and how about a dishwasher? What about furniture, a television, and a clothes washer and dryer? Just what furniture and appliances come with the property you have purchased or rented? Consult Table 24.2 for a complete list of just about everything there is. Use: y a-t-il…? (ee ah-teel, Is [Are] there…?) to ask your questions.

Table 24.2 Furniture and Accessories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>French Name</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>armchair</td>
<td>un fauteuil</td>
<td>uhN fo-tuhy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bed</td>
<td>un lit</td>
<td>uhN lee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bookcase</td>
<td>une étagère</td>
<td>ewn nay-tah-zhehr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carpet</td>
<td>un tapis</td>
<td>uhN tah-pee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chair</td>
<td>une chaise, un siège</td>
<td>ewn shehz, uhN syehzh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clock</td>
<td>une pendule</td>
<td>ewn pahN-dewl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curtains</td>
<td>des rideaux (m.)</td>
<td>day ree-do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dishwasher</td>
<td>un lave-vaisselle</td>
<td>uhN lahv veh-sehl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dresser</td>
<td>une commode</td>
<td>ewn koh-mohd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dryer</td>
<td>un séchoir, un sèche-linge</td>
<td>uhN say-shwahr, uhN sehsh-laNzh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>food processor</td>
<td>un robot multifunctions (m.)</td>
<td>uhN roh-bo mewl-tee-fuhNk-syohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freezer</td>
<td>un congélateur</td>
<td>uhN kohN-zhay-lah-tuhr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furniture</td>
<td>des meubles (m.)</td>
<td>day muhbl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>home appliances</td>
<td>des appareils-électro-ménagers (m.)</td>
<td>day zah-pah-rehy ay-lehk-tro-may-nah-zhay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lamp</td>
<td>une lampe</td>
<td>ewn lahNp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>microwave oven</td>
<td>un four à micro-ondes</td>
<td>uhN foor ah mee-kro ohNd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oven</td>
<td>un four</td>
<td>uhN foor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refrigerator</td>
<td>un réfrigérateur</td>
<td>uhN ray-free-zhee-rah-tuhr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rug</td>
<td>un tapis</td>
<td>uhN tah-pee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shades</td>
<td>des stores</td>
<td>day stohr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sofa</td>
<td>un canapé, un divan</td>
<td>uhN kah-nah-pay, uhN dee-vahN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(table continued on next page)
(table continued from previous page)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>French Name</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stereo</td>
<td>une chaîne stéréo</td>
<td>ewn shehn stay-ray-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stove</td>
<td>une cuisinière</td>
<td>ewn kwee-zee-nyehr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table</td>
<td>une table</td>
<td>ewn tahbl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>night</td>
<td>de nuit</td>
<td>duh nwee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>television</td>
<td>une télévision</td>
<td>ewn tay-lay-vee-zyohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>large screen</td>
<td>à grand écran</td>
<td>ah grahN day-krahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCR</td>
<td>un magnétoscope</td>
<td>uhN mah-nyay-toh-skohp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wardrobe</td>
<td>une armoire (f.)</td>
<td>ewn nahr-mwahr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>washing machine</td>
<td>une machine à laver</td>
<td>ewn mah-sheen ah lah-vay</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Let's Buy Furniture

Suppose you've rented or purchased an unfurnished place. What are some services you'd expect a furniture store to provide?

Read the ad on the following page to find out what attractive offers you could expect from the company.

Buying or Renting

Whether you buy or rent there are bound to be certain preferences you'd like to express or particular questions you have. Use the following phrases and expressions to help you get exactly what you want:
I'm looking for…
Je cherche…
zhuh shersh

the classified ads, the real estate advertising section
les petites annonces, la publicité immobilière
lay puh-tee tah-nohNs, lah pew-blee-see-tay ee-moh-bee-lyehr

a real estate agency
une agence immobilière
ewn nah-zahhNs ee-moh-bee-lyehr

I would like to rent (buy)…
Je voudrais louer (acheter)…
zhuh voo-dreh loo-ay (ahsh-tay)

an apartment, a condominium, a house
un appartement, un condonoimiento, une maison
uhN nah-pahr-tuh-mahN, uhN kohN-doh-mee-nyuhtm, ewn meh-zohN

Is it luxurious?
Est-ce de haute prestation?
ehN duh ot prehs-tah-syohN

Are there break-ins?
Y a-t-il des cambriolages?
ee ah-teel day kahN-bree-oh-lahzh

Is there time-sharing?
Y a-t-il le partage du temps?
ee ah-teel luh pahr-tahzh dew tahN

What is the rent?
Quel est le loyer?
kehr eh luh lwah-yay

How much is the maintenance of the apartment (house)?
Ça coûte combien l'entretien de l'appartement (de la maison)?
sah koot kohN-byaN lahNtr-tyaN duh lah-pahr-tuh-mahN(duh lah meh-zohN)

Is… included?
… est compris(e)?
… eh kohN-pree(z)

the heat, the electricity
le chauffage, l'électricité (f.)
luh sho-fahzh, lay-lehk-tree-see-tay

the gas, the air conditioning
le gaz, la climatisation
luh gahz, lah klee-mah-tee-zah-syohN

How much are the monthly payments?
À combien sont les paiements mensuels?
ah kohN-byaN sohN lay peh-mahN mahN-swehl

Do I have to leave a deposit?
Dois-je payer une caution?
dwahzh peh-yay ewn ko-syohN

I'd like to take out a mortgage.
Je voudrais prendre une hypothèque.
zhuh voo-dreh prahNdr ewn nee-poh-tehk.

I'm going to the bank.
Je vais à la banque.
zhuh veh zah lah bahnk

Cracking the Code
Armed with a pencil and cup of coffee, you've decided to begin reading the real estate ads. Instantly, you frown and become exasperated at all the unfamiliar jargon. Table 24.3
will help you decode all the abbreviations so that you can determine what exactly is being offered.

Table 24.3 How to Read a Real Estate Ad

1. A vendre—for sale
2. maison de caractère—a house with character
3. 2 kms mer—2 kilometers from the sea
4. 8 kms Montpellier—8 kilometers from the city of Montpellier
5. 150m2 habitable—living space of 150.2 meters
6. 20m2 patio—a patio that measures 20.2 meters
7. grand séjour avec cheminée—a large living room with a fireplace
8. 4 chambres—4 bedrooms
9. mezzanine—a landing between the ground and first floors
10. chauffage électrique—electric heat
11. the price of the house 850.000 francs—in new French currency
    85 million—in old French currency
    $140,000—in American dollars
12. 19 bis—This street has a #19 and then a second #19 called 19 bis. This is the equivalent of an address that would read 19, followed by a second address that would read 19A.
13. allée du bas Vaupereux Verrière le Buisson—the street on which the house is located
14. 91370—a regional code
15. Villeneuve-les-Maguelonne France—the city or village in which the house is located
16. tél—the phone number to call if you are interested
There's Hope for the Future

A person planning the buy or rent property in the future has to prepare for it financially. In French, the future may be expressed in one of the two following ways.

**Aller + Infinitive**

Since the verb *aller* means *to go*, it is understandable that it is used to express what the speaker is going to do. Since *to go* will be the first verb used, it will have to be conjugated. Refresh your memory:

- je vais, tu vas, il/elle/on va, nous allons, vous allez, ils/elles vont

The action that the speaker is going to perform will be expressed by the infinitive of the verb.

Je vais aller en ville.  
*zhuh veh zah-lay ahN veel*  
I'm going to go into the city.

Ils vont envoyer la lettre.  
*eel vohN tahN-vwah-yay lah lehtr*  
They are going to send the letter.

**Today's Plans**

Imagine that you are staying with a French family. Everyone is asleep and you want to go out and take care of some personal matters. Write a note in which you list five things you plan to do today.

**The Future Tense**

The future may also be expressed by changing the verb to the future tense. The future tense tells what the subject *will do* or what action *will* take place in future time. The future of regular verbs is formed by adding endings to the infinitive of the verb as shown in Table 24.4. You will notice that the endings for the future resemble the conjugation of the verb *avoir* (*ai, as, a, avons, avez, ont*), except for the *nous* and *vous* forms where the *av* (*nous avons, vous avez*) beginning is dropped.

**Table 24.4 The Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>er Verbs</th>
<th>ir Verbs</th>
<th>re Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>travailler (to work)</td>
<td>choisir (to choose)</td>
<td>vendre (to sell)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will work</td>
<td>will choose</td>
<td>will sell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>je travaillerai</td>
<td>je choisirai</td>
<td>je vendrai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>zhuh tra-vahy-ray</em></td>
<td><em>zhuh shwah-zee-ray</em></td>
<td><em>zhuh vahN-dray</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu travailleras</td>
<td>tu choisiras</td>
<td>tu vendras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>tew trah-vahy-rah</em></td>
<td><em>tew shwah-zee-rah</em></td>
<td><em>tew vahN-drah</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(table continued on next page)*
(table continued from previous page)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>er Verbs</th>
<th>ir Verbs</th>
<th>re Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| il, elle, on travaillera  
*eel (ehl, ohN) trah-vahy-rah* | il, elle, on choisira  
*eel (ehl, ohN) shwah-zee-rah* | il, elle, on vendra  
*eel (ehl, ohN) vahN-drah* |
| nous travaillerons  
noo trah-vahy-rohN | nous choisirons  
noo shwah-zee-rohN | nous vendrons  
noo vahN-drohN |
| vous travaillerez  
voo trah-vahy-ray | vous choisirez  
voo shwah-zee-ray | vous vendrez  
vous vous vahN-dray |
| ils, elles travailleront  
eel (ehl) trah-vahy-rohN | ils, elles choisiront  
eel (ehl) shwah-zee-rohN | ils, elles vendront  
eel vahN-drohN |

**The Future Tense of Shoe Verbs**

**As a Rule**
For *re* verbs, drop the final *e* from the infinitive before adding the appropriate ending.

Il m'attendra à midi.
He'll wait for me at noon.

Only certain shoe verbs use the changes within the shoe to form all forms of the future tense. All other shoe verbs follow the rules for future formation listed previously.

**As a Rule**
Note that the *e* of the *er* infinitive remains silent in the future tense.

Je lui parlerai.
*zkuh (tweh) pahri-ray*
I'll speak to him (her).

- Verbs ending in *yer* change *y* to *i* in all forms of the future. There is no more shoe since all verb forms are using *i* instead of *y*. Verbs ending in *ayer* may or may not change *y* to *i*. Both *jepairei* and *je payerai* are acceptable:

  - j'emploierai  
  *zhaN-plwah-ray*  
  
  - nous employerons  
  *nou zahN-plwah-rohN*  
  
  - tu employeras  
  *tew ahN-plwah-rah*  
  
  - vous employeriez  
  *voo zahN-plwah-ray*  
  
  - il, elle, on emploiera  
  *eel (ehl, ohN) ahN-plwah-rah*  
  
  - ils, elles employeront  
  *eel (ehl) ahN-plwah-rohN*
• Verbs ending in $e + \text{consonant} + \text{er}$ (but not $\acute{e} + \text{consonant} + \text{er}$) change silent $e$ to $\acute{e}$ in the future. Once again, there will be no more shoe, since changes are made in all forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>French Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>j'achèterai</td>
<td>nous achèterons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu achèteras</td>
<td>vous achèterez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on achètera</td>
<td>ils, elles achèteront</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

zhah-sheh-tray  

nou zah-sheh-trohN  
voo zah-sheh-tray  
eel (ehlO, (ohN) ah-sheht-rah  
eel (ehl) ah-sheh-trohN
• The verbs *appeler* and *jeter*, double their consonants in the shoe in the present, and do the same in all forms of the future:

```
j'appellerai  
zhah-pehl-ray
```
```
tu appelleras  
tew ah-pehl-rah
```
```
il, elle, on appellera  
eel (ehl, ohN) ah-pehl-rah
```
```
je jeterai  
zhuh zheh-tray
```
```
tu jeteras  
tew zheh-trah
```
```
il, elle, on jetera  
eel (ehl, ohN) zheh-trah
```

---

**Verbs Irregular in the Future**

The verbs in Table 24.5 have irregular stems in the future tense. Simply add the future endings to these stems to get the correct future form. Complete the chart with the correct form of the future tense:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>tu</th>
<th>nous</th>
<th>je</th>
<th>elles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>avoir (to have)</td>
<td>aur- (oehr)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devoir (to have to)</td>
<td>devr- (duhv)</td>
<td></td>
<td>nous</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>envoyer (to send)</td>
<td>enverr- (ahN-vuhr)</td>
<td></td>
<td>il</td>
<td></td>
<td>elles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>être (to be)</td>
<td>ser- (sehr)</td>
<td></td>
<td>elles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire (to make, do)</td>
<td>fer- (fuhr)</td>
<td></td>
<td>je</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb (English)</td>
<td>Verb (French)</td>
<td>Pronoun</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pouvoir (to be able to)</td>
<td>pourr- <em>(poor)</em></td>
<td>vous</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recevoir (to receive)</td>
<td>recevr- <em>(ruh-suhvr)</em></td>
<td>nous</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>savoir (to know)</td>
<td>saur- <em>(sohr)</em></td>
<td>ils</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>venir (to come)</td>
<td>viendr- <em>(vyaNdr)</em></td>
<td>tu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voir (to see)</td>
<td>verr- <em>(vuhr)</em></td>
<td>je</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vouloir (to want)</td>
<td>voudr- <em>(voodr)</em></td>
<td>elle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What Are the Conditions?

Would you like a big or small house? Would you like it furnished or unfurnished? How about a swimming pool? The conditional is a mood in French that expresses what the speaker *would* do or what *would* happen under certain circumstances. The conditional of the verb *vouloir* or *aimer* is frequently used to express what the speaker *would like:*

Je voudrais (J'aimerais) louer un appartement.

*zuh voo-dreh (zhehm-ray) loo-ay uhn nah-pahr-tuh-mahN*

I would like to rent an apartment.

**Formation of the Conditional**

The conditional is formed with the same stem that was used to form the future, whether you are using a regular, irregular, or shoe verb. The endings for the conditional, however, are different. They are exactly the same as the endings for the imperfect. So, in other words, to form the conditional start with the future stem and add the imperfect endings shown in Table 24.6. For *re* verbs, drop the final *e* from the infinitive before adding the appropriate ending.

**Table 24.6 The Conditional of Regular Verbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><em>er</em> Verbs</th>
<th><em>ir</em> Verbs</th>
<th><em>re</em> Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>travailler (to work)</td>
<td>choisir (to choose)</td>
<td>vendre (to sell)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>je</em> travaillerais</td>
<td><em>je</em> choisirais</td>
<td><em>je</em> vendrais</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhuh trah-vahy-reh</td>
<td>zhuh shwah-zee-reh</td>
<td>zhuh vahN-dreh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>tu</em> travaillerais</td>
<td><em>tu</em> choisirais</td>
<td><em>tu</em> vendrais</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tew trah-vahy-reh</td>
<td>tew shwah-zee-reh</td>
<td>tew vahN dreh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>il, elle, on</em> travaillenait</td>
<td><em>il, elle, on</em> choisirait</td>
<td><em>il, elle, on</em> vendrait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eel, ehl, onN trah-vahy-reh</td>
<td>eel, ehl, ohN shwah-zee-reh</td>
<td>eel, ehl, ohN vahN-dreh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>nous</em> travaillerions</td>
<td><em>nous</em> choisrions</td>
<td><em>nous</em> vendrions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trah-vahy-ryohN</td>
<td>noo shwah-zee-ryohN</td>
<td>noo vahN-dryohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>vous</em> travailleriez</td>
<td><em>vous</em> choisiriez</td>
<td><em>vous</em> vendriez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voo trah-vahy-ryay</td>
<td>voo shwah-zee-ryay</td>
<td>voo vahN-dryay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ils, elles</em> travailletaient</td>
<td><em>ils, elles</em> choisitraient</td>
<td><em>ils, elles</em> vendraient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eel, ehl trah-vahy-reh</td>
<td>eel, ehl shwah-zee-reh</td>
<td>eel, ehl vahN-dreh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Conditional of Shoe Verbs

Only certain shoe verbs use the changes within the shoe to form all forms of the conditional. All other shoe verbs follow the rules for conditional formation previously listed.

• Verbs ending in *yer* change *y* to *i* in all forms of the conditional. There is no more shoe since all verb forms are using *i* instead of *y*. Verbs ending in *ayer* may or may not change *y* to *i*. Both *je paieraïs* and *je payerais* are acceptable.

  j’emploïerais  
  *zhah-plwah-reh*  
  *nous emplôierions*
  
  tu emplôierais  
  *tew ahN-plwah-reh*  
  *vous emplôieriez*
  
  il, elle, on emplôieraït  
  *eel (ehl, ohN) ahN-plwah-reh*  
  *ils, elles emplôieraient*

• Verbs ending in *e + consonant + er* (but not (*é + consonant + er*))) change silent *e* to *é* in the conditional. Once again, there will be no more shoe, since changes are made in all forms.

  j’achêteraïs  
  *zhah-dzheh-treh*  
  *nous achêterions*
  
  tu achêteraïs  
  *tew ah-shéh-treh*  
  *vpus achêteriez*
  
  il, elle, on achêteraït  
  *eel (ehl, ohN) ah-shéh-treh*  
  *ils, elles achêteraient*

• The verbs *appeler* and *jeter*, double their consonants in the shoe in the present, and do the same in all forms of the conditional:

j'appellerais
zhah-pehl-reh

tu appellerais
tew ah-pehl-reh

il, elle, on appellerait
eel (ehl, ohN) ah-pehl-reh

nous appellerions
noo zah-pehl-ryohN

vous appelleriez
voo zah-pehl-ryay

ils, elles appelleraient
eel (ehl) ah-pehl-reh
je jetterais
zhuh zheh-treh

nous jetterions
noo zheht-ryohN

tu jetterai
tew zheh-treh

vous jetteriez
vooh zheht-ray

il, elle, on jetterait
eel (ehl, ohN) zheh-treh

ils, elles jettraient
eel (ehl) zheh-treh

Irregular Verbs in the Conditional

The verbs in Table 24.7 have irregular stems in the conditional. To complete the chart simply add the conditional endings to these stems to get the correct conditional form.

Table 24.7 The Conditional of Irregular Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>je</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>avoir (to have)</td>
<td>aur- (ohr)</td>
<td>tu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devoir (to have to)</td>
<td>devr- (duhv)</td>
<td>nous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>envoyer (to send)</td>
<td>enverr- (ahN-vuhr)</td>
<td>il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>être (to be)</td>
<td>ser- (sehr)</td>
<td>elles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire (to make, do)</td>
<td>fer- (fuhr)</td>
<td>je</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pouvoir (to be able to)</td>
<td>pourr- (poor)</td>
<td>vous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recevoir (to receive)</td>
<td>recevr- (ruh-suhr)</td>
<td>nous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>savoir (to know)</td>
<td>saur- (sohr)</td>
<td>ils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>venir (to come)</td>
<td>viendr- (vyaNdr)</td>
<td>tu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voir (to see)</td>
<td>verr- (vuhr)</td>
<td>je</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vouloir (to want)</td>
<td>voudr- (voodr)</td>
<td>elle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What Would You Do?

Dreams are wonderful. Write a list of things you would do if you won the lottery tomorrow.

The Least You Need to Know

• The future is usually formed by adding appropriate endings to the infinitive

• The conditional is formed by using the future stem (usually the infinitive) and the imperfect endings.
Chapter 25
Money Matters

In This Chapter

- Banking terms
- Stock market terms
- The subjunctive

Chapter 24 prepared you for an extended stay in a French-speaking country. You learned the words and phrases you would need if you wanted to rent an apartment or condominium or even buy a house. You know how to describe the features you need to live comfortably whether it includes a gourmet kitchen with a breakfast nook or a living room with cathedral ceilings.

This final chapter is for anyone who must make a trip to the bank: a tourist who wants to change money, a business person with financial obligations, an investor with monetary concerns, or someone who is interested in purchasing real estate or a business. You will also learn how to express your specific, personal needs by using the subjunctive.
Get Me to the Bank

There are many reasons for a person in a foreign country to stop in a bank. The most common one is to exchange money (banks do give a very favorable rate of exchange). But perhaps you have greater goals; maybe you want to purchase real estate, set up a business, make investments, dabble in the stock market, or stay a while and open a savings and checking account. If so, then you will need to familiarize yourself with some, or all of the phrases provided in the mini-dictionary of banking terms in Table 25.1.

Cultural Tidbits

French banks can open anywhere between 8 a.m. and 9 a.m. and close between 3 p.m. and 5 p.m. Some banks close during the lunch break, which can last as long as two hours.

Table 25.1 Mini-Dictionary of Banking Terms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Term</th>
<th>French Term</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>automatic teller machine</td>
<td>un distributeur automatique de billets, un guichet automatique de banque</td>
<td>uhN dee-stree-bew-tuhr o-to-mah-teek duh bee-yeh, uhN gee-sheh o-to-mah-teek duh bahNk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>balance</td>
<td>le solde</td>
<td>luh sohld</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bank</td>
<td>la banque, la caisse d'épargne</td>
<td>lah bahNk, lah kehs day-pahr-nyuh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bank book</td>
<td>le livret d'épargne</td>
<td>luh lee-vreh day-pahr-nyuh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bill</td>
<td>le billet, la coupure</td>
<td>luh bee-yeh, lah koo-pewr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>borrow</td>
<td>emprunter</td>
<td>aHN-pruhN-tay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>branch</td>
<td>la succursale</td>
<td>lah sew-kewr-sahl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cash</td>
<td>l'argent liquide (m.)</td>
<td>lahr-zhahN lee-keed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to cash</td>
<td>toucher, encaisser</td>
<td>too-shay, aHN-keh-say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cash flow</td>
<td>la marge brute</td>
<td>lah mahrzh brewt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cashier</td>
<td>la caisse</td>
<td>lah kehs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change (transaction)</td>
<td>le change</td>
<td>luh shahnzh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change (coins)</td>
<td>la monnaie</td>
<td>lah moh-neh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check</td>
<td>le chèque</td>
<td>luh shehk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(table continued on next page)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>checkbook</td>
<td>le carnet de chèques, le chéquier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>checking account</td>
<td>le compte-chèques, le compte-courant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>credit</td>
<td>le crédit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>currency</td>
<td>la monnaie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>customer</td>
<td>le (la) client(e)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debt</td>
<td>la dette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deposit</td>
<td>le dépôt, le versement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to deposit</td>
<td>déposer, verser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>down payment</td>
<td>l'acompte (m.), les arrhes (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>employee</td>
<td>l'employé(e)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>endorse</td>
<td>endosser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exchange rate</td>
<td>le cours du change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>final payment</td>
<td>le versement de libération, le versement final</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guarantee</td>
<td>la caution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>holder</td>
<td>le titulaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>installment payment</td>
<td>le versement échelonné</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interest</td>
<td>l'intérêt (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compound</td>
<td>composé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interest rate</td>
<td>le taux d'intérêt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invest</td>
<td>placer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>investment</td>
<td>le placement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loan</td>
<td>l'emprunt (m.), le prêt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take out a loan</td>
<td>faire un emprunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long term</td>
<td>à long terme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manage</td>
<td>gérer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money exchange bureau</td>
<td>le bureau de change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monthly statement</td>
<td>le relevé mensuel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table of Financial Terms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Term</th>
<th>French Term</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mortgage</td>
<td>l'hypothèque (f.)</td>
<td>lee-poh-tehk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>open account</td>
<td>le compte courant</td>
<td>luh kohNt koo-rahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overdraft</td>
<td>le découvert</td>
<td>luh day-koo-vehr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overdrawn check</td>
<td>le chèque sans provision</td>
<td>luh shehk sahN proh-vee-zyohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay cash</td>
<td>payer comptant</td>
<td>peh-yay kohN-tahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>payment</td>
<td>le versement, le paiement</td>
<td>luh vehrs-mahN, luh peh-mahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>percentage</td>
<td>le pourcentage</td>
<td>luh poor-sahN-tahzh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>promissory note</td>
<td>le billet à ordre</td>
<td>luh bee-yeh ah ohrdr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purchase</td>
<td>l'achat (m.)</td>
<td>lah-shah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quarter</td>
<td>le trimestre</td>
<td>luh tree-mehstr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receipt</td>
<td>le reçu, la quittance</td>
<td>luh ruh-sew, lah kee-tahNs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>revenue</td>
<td>le revenu</td>
<td>luh ruh-new</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>safe</td>
<td>le coffre-fort</td>
<td>luh kohfr-fohr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sale</td>
<td>la vente</td>
<td>lah vahNt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>save</td>
<td>économiser, épargner</td>
<td>ay-koh-noh-mee-zay, ay-pahr-nyay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>savings account</td>
<td>le compte d'épargne</td>
<td>luh kohNt day-pahr-nyuh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short term</td>
<td>à court terme</td>
<td>ah koor tehrm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to sign</td>
<td>signer</td>
<td>see-nyay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signature</td>
<td>la signature</td>
<td>lah see-nyah-tewr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>la somme</td>
<td>lah sohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teller</td>
<td>le caissier, la caissière</td>
<td>luh keh-syay, lah keh-syehr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>total</td>
<td>le montant</td>
<td>luh mohN-tahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transfer</td>
<td>le virement</td>
<td>luh veer-mahN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traveler's check</td>
<td>le chèque de voyage</td>
<td>luh shehk duh vwhah-yahzh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>void</td>
<td>annulé</td>
<td>ah-new-lay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>window</td>
<td>le guichet</td>
<td>luh gee-sheh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>withdraw</td>
<td>retirer</td>
<td>ruh-tee-ray</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Money can also be exchanged at *un bureau de change*. These money exchanges can be found all over the streets of Paris and in other countries as well. Some offer excellent rates while others charge exorbitant commissions. It is always wise to investigate a few first.

You will notice that this receipt, from the airport where rates are not very good, shows a 15FF commission (about $2.50) for an exchange of $45. The worst exchange rates are given by hotels, so avoid them whenever possible.

Transactions I Need to Make

If you're planning on a trip to the bank, these phrases will be most helpful in common, everyday banking situations: making deposits and withdrawals, opening a checking account, or taking out a loan:

*Quelles sont les heures d'ouverture et de fermeture?*
*kehl sohN lay zuhr doo-vehr-tewr ay duh fehr-mah-tewr*

What are the banking hours?

*Je voudrais…*
*zhuh voo-dreh*

I would like…

*faire un dépôt (un versement).*
*fehr un day-po (unN vehrs-mahN)*

make a deposit.

*faire un retrait.*
*fehr uhN ruh-treh*

make a withdrawal.

*faire un paiement (un versement).*
*fehr up peh-mahN (uhN vehrs-mahN)*

make a payment.

*faire un emprunt.*
*fehr uhN nahN-pruhN*

take out a loan.

*toucher un chèque.*
*too-shay uhN shehk*

cash a check.
ouvrir un compte. 
*oo-vreer uhN kohNt* 
open an account.

fermer un compte. 
*fehr-may uhN kohNt* 
close an account.

changer de l'argent. 
*shahN-zhay duh lahr-zahN* 
change some money.

Est-ce que je recevrai un relevé mensuel? 
*ehs-kuh zhuh ruh-sehv-ray uhN ruh-ivay mahN-swehl?* 
Will I get a monthly statement?

Quel est le cours du change aujourd'hui? 
*kehl eh luh koor dew shahNzhuh o-zhoor-dwee* 
What is today's exchange rate?

Avez-vous un distributeur (guichet) automatique de billets? 
*ah-vay voo uhN dee-stree-bew-tuhr (gee-sheh) o-to-mah-teek duh bee-yeh* 
Do you have an automatic teller machine?

Comment s'en sert-on? 
*kohN-mahN sahN seh-tohN* 
How does one use it?

Je voudrais prendre un emprunt personnel. 
*zhuh voo-dreh prahNdr uhN nahN-pruhN pehr-soh-nehl* 
I'd like to make a personal loan.

Je voudrais prendre une hypothèque. 
*zhuh voo-dreh prahNdr ewn nee-poh-tehk* 
I'd like to take out a mortgage.

Quelle est la période d'amortissement? 
*kehl eh lah pay-ryohd dah-mohr-tees-mahN* 
What is the time period of the loan?

À combien sont les paiements mensuels? 
*ah kohN-byaN sohN lay peh-mahN mahN-swehl* 
How much are the monthly payments?

Quel est le taux d'intérêt? 
*kehl eh luh to daN-tay-reh* 
What is the interest rate?

Quand faut-il commencer à faire des paiements? 
*kahN fo-teel koh-mahN-say ah fehr day peh-mahN* 
When is it necessary to start making payments?
I Need More Money

Everyone needs more money. It seems that the more you have the more you want. In Chapter 20 we have seen that the verb *devoir* followed by the infinitive can be used to express need. Another way of expressing that someone *needs to* or *must* do something is to use the expression *il faut que...* (eel fo kuh)—*it is necessary that*. *Il faut que* and other expressions showing necessity are followed by a special verb form called the subjunctive.

The subjunctive is a mood, not a tense, and expresses wishing, wanting, emotion, and doubt. It is used after many expressions showing uncertainty and certain conjunctions, as well. Those applications will not be treated in this book.

Since the subjunctive is not a tense (a verb form indicating time), the present subjunctive can be used to refer to actions in the present or the future. The past subjunctive will not be treated in this book, since its use is limited.

In order to use the subjunctive there must be certain conditions:

- Two different clauses must exist with two different subjects.
- The two clauses must be joined by *que*.
- One of the clauses must show need, necessity, emotion, or doubt.

*Il faut que je travaille dur.*
*eel fo kuh zhuh trah-vahy dewr*
I (I'll) have to work hard.

*Il faut que nous téléphonions à notre agent.*
*eel fo kuh noo tay-lay-fohn-yohN ah nohtr ah-zhahN*
We (We'll) have to call our agent.

---

**Cultural Tidbits**

One hundred centimes make up the French franc. The following denominations are currently used:

- 5, 10, 20—copper-colored *centime* coins
- 50 *centime* coin (1/2 franc), 1, 2, 5—silver-colored *franc* coins
- 10 *franc*—copper-colored coin
- 20, 50, 100, 500 *franc* bills (which are very colorful and depict historic people and monuments)
Il faut qu'ils se reposent.

eel fo keel suh ruh-poz

They (They'll) have to rest.

**Formation of the Present Subjunctive**

To form the present subjunctive of regular verbs, and some irregular verbs, as shown in Table 25.2, drop the *ent* ending from the *ils (elles)* form of the present and add these endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>je</th>
<th>nous</th>
<th>ions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>vous</td>
<td>iez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, elle, on</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>ils, elles</td>
<td>ent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 25.2 The Present Subjunctive of Regular Verbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>er Verbs</th>
<th>ir Verbs</th>
<th>re Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>parler</td>
<td>finir</td>
<td>attendre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ils parlent</td>
<td>ils finissent</td>
<td>ils attendent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...que je parle</td>
<td>...que je finisse</td>
<td>...que j'attende</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kuh zhuh pahrNl</td>
<td>kuh zhuh fee-nees</td>
<td>kuh zhah-tahNd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...que tu parles</td>
<td>...que tu finisses</td>
<td>...que tu attendes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kuh teu pahrNl</td>
<td>kuh teu fee-nees</td>
<td>que tew ah-tahNd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...qu'il parle</td>
<td>...qu'il finisse</td>
<td>...qu'il attende</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keel pahrNl</td>
<td>keel fee-nees</td>
<td>keel ah-tahNd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...que nous parlions</td>
<td>...que nous finissions</td>
<td>...que nous attendions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kuh noo pahr-lyohN</td>
<td>kuh noo fee-nee-syohN</td>
<td>kuh noo zah-tahNd-lyohN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...que vous parliez</td>
<td>...que vous finissiez</td>
<td>...que vous attendiez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kuh voo pahr-lyay</td>
<td>kuh voo fee-nee-syay</td>
<td>kuh voo zah-tahNd-lyay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...qu'ils parlent</td>
<td>...qu'ils finissent</td>
<td>...qu'ils attendent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keel pahrNl</td>
<td>keel fee-nees</td>
<td>keel zah-tahNd</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Shoe Verbs**

*As a Rule*

If you look closely, you will notice that *er* verbs do not change in the subjunctive.

Shoe verbs and verbs that are conjugated like shoe verbs follow the shoe rule when forming the subjunctive:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Present Subjunctive Form ( ils )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Boire</td>
<td>ils boivent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prendre</td>
<td>ils prennent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manger</td>
<td>ils mangent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Envoyer</td>
<td>ils envoient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acheter</td>
<td>ils achetent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**As a Rule**
There are no changes to -cer shoe verbs in the subjunctive because e followed by e or i always produces a soft sound.

...que je commence ...que nous commençons

...que je achète ...que nous achetions
...que tu achètes ...que vous achetiez
...qu'il achète ...qu'ils achètent
Preferer
…que je préfère
…que tu préfères
…qu'il préfère

ils préfèrent
…que nous préférons
…que vous préfériez
…qu'ils préfèrent

Appeler
…que j'appelle
…que tu appelles
…qu'il appelle

ils appellent
…que nous appelons
…que vous appelez
…qu'ils appellent
## Verbs Irregular in the Subjunctive

Some verbs follow no rules and must be memorized. The ones that will prove to be most useful are:

### Aller

- …que j'aillle *(ahy)*
- …que tu ailles *(ahy)*
- …qu'il aille *(ahy)*
- …que nous allions *(ah-lyohN)*
- …que vous alliez *(ah-lyay)*
- …qu'ils aillent *(ahy)*

### Vouloir

- …que je veuille *(vuhy)*
- …que tu veuilles *(vuhy)*
- …qu'il veuille *(vuhy)*
- …que nous voulions *(voo-lyohN)*
- …que vous vouliez *(voo-lyay)*
- …qu'ils veuillent *(vuhy)*

### Faire

- …que je fasse *(fahs)*
- …que tu fasses *(fahs)*
- …qu'il fasse *(fahs)*
- …que nous fassions *(fah-syohN)*
- …que vous fossiez *(fah-syay)*
- …qu'ils fassent *(fahs)*

### Pouvoir

- …que je puisse *(pwees)*
- …que tu puisses *(pwees)*
- …qu'il puisse *(pwees)*
- …que nous puissions *(pwee-syohN)*
- …que vous puissiez *(pwee-syay)*
- …qu'ils puissent *(pwees)*

### Savoir

- …que je sache *(sahsh)*
- …que tu saches *(sahsh)*
- …qu'il sache *(sahsh)*
- …que nous sachions *(sah-shyohN)*
- …que vous sachiez *(sah-shyay)*
- …qu'ils sachent *(sahsh)*

### Avoir

- …que j'aie *(ay)*
- …que tu aies *(ay)*
- …qu'il ait *(ay)*
- …que nous ayons *(ay-yohN)*
- …que vous ayez *(ay-yay)*
- …qu'ils aient *(ay)*
Etre

…que je sois (swah) …que nous soyons (swah-yohN)
…que tu sois (swah) …que vous soyez (swah-yay)
…qu'il soit (swah) …qu'ils soient (swah)

What Do You Have to Do?

Do you have a million things to do this afternoon? Me too. There's no escaping the necessary hassles and chores of our daily routine. Express what these people have to do using *il faut que* + subjunctive:

Example: *il/travailler*

*Il faut qu'il travaille.*

*nous/préparer le dîner* je/se lever de bonne heure

*Il faut que nous préparions le dîner.*

*elle/finir son travail* il/aller à la banque

*Il faut que Marie finisse son travail.*

*ils/attendre un coup de téléphone* vous/être en ville à midi

*Il faut que nous attendions un coup de téléphone.*

*je/telephone à mon bureau* tu/acheter un cadeau

*Il faut que je téléphone à mon bureau.*

*vous/accomplir beaucoup* elles/prendre un taxi

*Il faut que vous accomplissiez beaucoup.*

*tu/descendre en ville* nous/faire les courses

*Il faut que nous descendions en ville.*

Other Expressions of Need Taking the Subjunctive

*Il faut que* is a very common expression used with the subjunctive. There are, however, many expressions that you might use that will require the subjunctive. In order to speak properly, you should familiarize yourself with them:

It is imperative that… Il est impératif que… *eel eh taN-pay-rah-teef kuh*

It is important that… Il est important que… *eel eh taN-pohr-tahn kuh*

It is necessary that… Il est nécessaire que… *eel eh nay-seh-sehr kuh*

It is preferable that… Il est préférable que… *eel eh pray-fay-rahbl kuh*

It is urgent that… Il est urgent que… *eel eh tewr-zahN kuh*

It is better that… Il vaut mieux que… *eel vo myuh kuh*

The Least You Need to Know

• French banks are modern, efficient, and provide the same services as ours.

• The subjunctive is used to express need.
I'M TRYIN' TO CONJUGATE OVER HERE!!
Answer key

Chapter 2

Practice Makes Perfect

1. ay-reek luh pahrk
2. koh-leht lah-pyehr
3. mee-shehl luh-shyaN
4. ah-laN luh-shah
5. ah-nyehs luh-loo
6. roh-lahN lah-moosh
7. pah-treek luh-buhf
8. soh-lahNzh lah-foh-reh
9. fee-leep luh-behk
10. floh-rahNs lah-vee-nyuh
11. moh-neek luh pohN
12. doh-mee-neek lah-fohN-tehn
13. dah-nyehl la toor
14. zhahN lah vahsh
15. zhahn lah-ree-vyehr
16. ew-behr lah fluhr

Chapter 3

How Much Do You Understand Already?

1. The blouse is orange.
2. The service is horrible.
3. The excursion is impossible.
4. The guide is capable.
5. The client (customer) is certain (sure).

This Is Easy

1. The waiter helps the tourist.
2. Mom prepares soup and salad.
3. The mechanic repairs the motor.
4. The baby watches television.
5. The tourist reserves the room.
6. The guide recommends the cafe.
7. The employee sells the merchandise.
8. The child adores modern music.
9. The actor prefers Italian opera.
10. The family wants the comfortable hotel.
Give Your Opinions

2. La fontaine est superbe.   7. La cathédrale est magnifique.
3. L'artiste est populaire.   8. L'acteur est fatigué.
4. La musique est splendide.  9. L'hôtel est élégant.
5. Le restaurant est élégant. 10. L'opéra est amusant.

Are You Well Read?

1. The Savage                10. The Miserable People
2. The Human Comedy          11. Dangerous Affairs
3. Artificial Paradise      12. The Human Condition
4. The Stranger              13. The Hypochondriac
5. The Infernal Machine     14. Spectacle (Show)
6. Terrible Children        15. Confessions
7. The Vagabond             16. Nausea
8. The Sentimental Education 17. Philosophical Letters

Chapter 4

Putting Your Idioms to Use I (Sample responses)

1. en voiture      5. en avion     8. en bateau
2. en voiture      6. à pied       9. en bus
3. en taxi         7. en bateau    10. à pied
4. en voiture

Putting Your Idioms to Use II
<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>au revoir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>tout de suite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>en retard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>de bonne heure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>tout à l'heure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>de temps en temps (de temps à autre)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>du matin au soir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>à demain</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Putting Your Idioms to Use III

Restaurant  Musée  Cinéma

Le boulevard Victor Hugo

Café  Théâtre  la pâtisserie  Pharmacie

Putting Your Idioms to Use IV (Sample responses)

Bien sûr  Jamais de la vie
Bien entendu  Tant pis
D'accord  Au contraire

Putting Your Idioms to Use V

1. j'ai sommeil  3. j'ai faim  5. j'ai tort  7. j'ai raison
2. j'ai chaud  4. j'ai soif  6. j'ai trente ans  8. j'ai froid

Putting Your Idioms to Use VI (Sample responses)

1. mauvais  4. mauvais
2. du soleil  5. frais
3. beau

Chapter 5

A Proper Workout with Your Dictionary

1. feu  3. lumière  5. puits
2. renvoyer, congédier  4. allumer  6. bien
Chapter 6

He Is/She Is

1. avocate
2. dentiste
3. coiffeuse
4. facteur
5. bouchère
6. étudiant
7. chef
8. électricienne
9. infirmière
10. pompier
11. patron
12. mannequin
13. pâtissier
14. médecin
15. ouvrier

Now There's More Than One

Je vois les boutiques.
Je vois les croix.
Je vois les restaurants.
Je vois les palais.
Je vois les automobiles.
Je vois les tapis.
Je vois les magazines.
Je vois les autobus.

Practice Those Plurals

1. les châteaux
2. les lunettes
3. les gens
4. les journaux
5. les colis
6. les palais
7. les ciseaux
8. les joujoux

What Have You Learned about Gender?

1. female
2. female/male
3. female
Chapter 7

*Tu versus Vous*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>doctor</td>
<td>vous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cousin</td>
<td>tu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friend</td>
<td>tu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salesman</td>
<td>vous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>woman</td>
<td>vous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two friends</td>
<td>vous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>policeman</td>
<td>vous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friends</td>
<td>vous</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Il, Ils, Elle, Elles*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Charles</td>
<td>il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lucie et Sylvie</td>
<td>elles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berthe</td>
<td>elle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pierre</td>
<td>il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luc et Henri</td>
<td>ils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robert et Suzette</td>
<td>ils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Janine, Charlotte, Michèle et Roger</td>
<td>ils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paul, Roland et Annick</td>
<td>ils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La fête</td>
<td>ils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Le bal costumé</td>
<td>il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La musique et le décor</td>
<td>ils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es vêtements</td>
<td>ils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Le travail et le coût</td>
<td>ils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La cuisine et la nourriture</td>
<td>elles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L'ambiance</td>
<td>elle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L'hôte et l'hôtesse</td>
<td>ils</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Conjugation 101

1. traverse
2. demandent
3. cherchons
4. accompagne
5. louez
6. présentent
Conjugation 102

1. finissons  
2. réfléchit  
3. jouissent  
4. applaudis  
5. réussit  
6. choisis  
7. agissez  
8. remplissent

Conjugation 103

1. attends  
2. descendent  
3. perdons  
4. répondez  
5. entend  
6. rends

Ask Me if You Can

1. Nous parlons trop?
   Nous parlons trop, n'est-ce pas?
   Est-ce que nous parlons trop?
   Parlons-nous trop?

2. Il descend souvent en ville?
   Il descend souvent en ville, n'est-ce pas?
   Est-ce qu'il descend souvent en ville?
   Descend-il souvent en ville?

3. Vous accomplissez beaucoup?
   Vous accomplissez beaucoup, n'est-ce pas?
   Est-ce que vous accomplissez beaucoup?
   Accomplissez-vous beaucoup?

4. Marie téléphone toujours à sa famille?
   Marie téléphone toujours à sa famille, n'est-ce pas?
   Est-ce que Marie téléphone toujours à sa famille?
   Marie téléphone toujours à sa famille?

5. Tu attends toujours les autres?
   Tu attends toujours les autres, n'est-ce pas?
   Est-ce que tu attends toujours les autres?
Attends-tu toujours les autres?

6. Les garçons jouent au tennis?
   Les garçons jouent au tennis, n'est-ce pas?
   Est-ce que les garçons jouent au tennis?
   Les garçons jouent-ils au tennis?
7. Elles écoutent le guide.
   Elles écoutent le guide, n'est-ce pas?
   Est-ce qu'elles écoutent le guide?
   Écoutent-elles le guide?

8. Luc et Anne semblent heureux?
   Luc et Anne semblent heureux, n'est-ce pas?
   Est-ce que Luc et Anne semblent heureux?
   Luc et Anne semblent-ils heureux?

Chapter 8

Ask Away (Sample responses)


2. Tu t'appelles comment? Tu es d'où? Qu'est-ce que tu cherches? Pourquoi? Tu désires pratiquer quoi? Quand parles-tu anglais? Qu'est-ce que tu adores? Comment es-tu?

Chapter 9

Express These Relationships

1. La mère de Michael
2. Le père d'André et de Marie
3. Les grands-parents des jeunes filles
4. L'oncle du garçon
5. Le grand-père de la famille

State Your Preference (Sample responses)

1. Mes actrices favorites sont…
2. Ma chanson favorite est…
3. Mes restaurants favoris sont…
4. Mon sport favori est…
5. Ma couleur favorite est…
6. Mon film favori est…

Can You (Sample responses)

1. Permettez-moi de me présenter. Je m'appelle…
2. Vous connaissez mon (ma)…?
3. Je vous présente mon (ma)…
4. Je suis enchanté(e).
5. Moi de même.
Using *Avoir*

1. as le temps
2. a l'habitude de
3. avez de la chance
4. ont l'occasion de
5. ai l'intention de
6. a lieu

Complete the Descriptions *(Sample responses)*

1. grande, magnifique
2. bons, intéressants
3. jeune, intelligent
4. belles, extraordinaires
5. grand, superbe

*Personal Ads*

1. A 25-year old French man who has charm and is romantic and cultured seeks a young French girl who likes to go out.

2. A tall, 26-year old seductive, sincere, intelligent, American male in a good financial position seeks a French girl who speaks English.

3. Francine, a 35-year old simple, calm, devoted, charming technician, who is a divorced mother, seeks a stable, courteous man who likes children, nature, and a quiet life.


5. Alexis, a 30-year old, elegant, charming, sincere, courteous, generous engineer seeks a single, simple, natural young woman for a lasting relationship.

6. A distinguished, refined, generous, easy-going, good-looking, 30-year old businessman who loves the finer things in life seeks to give a gratifying, envied lifestyle to a 20–25-year old woman.

*Chapter 10*

*Airline Advice*

1. Take only one carry-on into the cabin. Any dangerous articles will be removed from it at the security check.

2. Choose sturdy bags that lock. Place identification on the outside and inside of all bags. Don't put anything of value in your bags that will be placed in the hold. Carry on anything important.
**Signs Everywhere**

1. c  
2. e  
3. a  
4. f  
5. b  
6. d

**Using Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>TU</th>
<th>VOUS</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aller</td>
<td>Va!</td>
<td>Allez!</td>
<td>Go!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continuer</td>
<td>Continue!</td>
<td>Continuez!</td>
<td>Continue!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>descendre</td>
<td>Descends!</td>
<td>Descendez!</td>
<td>Go down!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marcher</td>
<td>Marche!</td>
<td>Marchez!</td>
<td>Walk!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monter</td>
<td>Monte!</td>
<td>Montez!</td>
<td>Go Up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passer</td>
<td>Passe!</td>
<td>Passez!</td>
<td>Pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prendre (ch.11)</td>
<td>Prends!</td>
<td>Prenez!</td>
<td>Take!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tourner</td>
<td>Tourne!</td>
<td>Tournez!</td>
<td>Turn!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traverser</td>
<td>Traverse!</td>
<td>Traversez!</td>
<td>Cross!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Get There!**
Chapter 11

*Using quel*

1. Quel train?
2. Quelle couleur?
3. Quelles blouses?
4. Quels journaux?
5. Quelle voiture?
6. Quelles cassettes?
7. Quel match?
8. Quels plats?

*What's Your Number?*

1. quarante-cinq, soixante-sept, quatre-vingt-neuf, soixante-dix-sept
2. quarante-huit, vingt et un, quinze, cinquante et un
3. quarante-six, seize, quatre-vingt-dix-huit, treize
4. quarante-trois, onze, soixante-douze, quatre-vingt-quatorze
5. quarante et un, trente-quatre, quatre-vingts, soixante et un
6. quarante-deux, quatre-vingt-cinq, cinquante-neuf, deux

Chapter 12

*Just in Case*

What to do in case of a fire:

If you can't control the fire you should close the door to your room and go to the exit by following the floor lights. Tell reception.

If a fire alarm sounds do the same as above. If the corridor or stairs are impassible due to smoke: stay in your room, show your presence at a window, and wait for the firefighters.

*Using cer Verbs*

1. commence
2. renonçons
3. remplaces
4. avance
5. annoncent
Using ger Verbs

1. range
2. déranges
3. partageons
4. nagez
5. arrangent

Using yer Verbs

1. payes (payes)
2. emploie
3. ennuye
4. nettoie
5. essaie (essaye)

Using e+Consonant+er Verbs

1. promène
2. appelez
3. enlève
4. jette
5. amenons

Using é+Consonant+er Verbs

1. célèbre
2. Répétez
3. protégeons
4. espèrent
5. possède

Chapter 13

The Forecast

Lille—Il fait froid. Le ciel est clair. Il fait un.
Strasbourg—Il fait froid, mais beau. Il fait moins un.
Tours—Il fait frais. Il y a des nuages. Il fait huit.
Nice—Le temps est variable et il fait du vent. Il fait quinze.
**What's the Date?**

1. le cinq août
2. le huit août
3. le quatorze août
4. le six août
5. le vingt et un août
6. le trente et un juillet

**Using faire**

1. font un voyage
2. faites la queue
3. fais venir
4. faisons une promenade
5. fait la connaissance de
6. fais des achats (emplettes)
7. fait attention
8. font une partie de

**Chapter 14**

Je vois un défilé
Je vois une fontaine
Je vois des animaux
Je vois des vitraux
Je vois un jardin
Je vois des fleurs

**Making Suggestions (Sample responses)**

4. On fait une croisière? Faisons une croisière.

**Where Are You Going?**

1. Je vais en Espagne.
2. Je vais en Chine.
5. Je vais en Angleterre.
8. Je vais aux États-Unis.
5. Je vais en Italie.
Using y (Sample responses)

2. J'y reste. 5. Je vais y dîner.

Make a Suggestion


Chapter 15

What Do You Put On? (Sample responses)

Work—Je mets une robe, des bas, des chaussures, un bracelet, une montre, une bague et un collier.

Beach—Je mets un bikini et des sandales.

Dinner party—Je mets une robe du soir, des bas, des chaussures et des bijoux.

Friend's house—Je mets un jean, une chemise, des chaussettes, des tennis et une montre.

Skiing—Je mets un pantalon, un pull, des chaussettes, des chaussures, un manteau, un chapeau et des gants.

Using Direct Object Pronouns (Sample responses)

1. Je l'aime. 4. Je les regarde.
2. Je ne les prends pas. 5. Je ne l'achète pas.

Using Indirect Object Pronouns

1. Offre-lui une montre. 4. Offre leur des robes.
2. Offre-leur un tableau. 5. Offre-lui un bracelet.
Chapter 16

*Where are you going?*

Je vais à l'épicerie.
Je vais à la pâtisserie.
Je vais à la boucherie.
Je vais à la fruiterie.
Je vais à la poissonerie.
Je vais au magasin de vins.
Je vais à la confiserie.
Je vais à la crémerie.

*Getting What You Want*

Pourriez-vous me donner…s'il vous plaît.

1. cinq cents grammes de jambon
2. un litre de soda
3. une tablette de chocolat
4. une boîte de biscuits
5. un sac de bonbons
6. deux cent cinquante grammes de dinde
Chapter 17

Which Restaurant?

1. fine traditional cooking
2. French cooking and Lebanese specialties
3. seafood
4. Italian specialties
5. English food
6. American food, music every evening
7. French food
8. Lebanese and French specialties
9. Vietnamese and Chinese specialties
10. Vietnamese and Chinese specialties
11. Hot and cold buffet, ice cream, and pastries
12. fish, Italian specialties
13. Italian specialties
14. drinks and music
15. ice cream
16. seafood
17. businessman's special

*We're Eating Out (Sample response)*
Je voudrais réserver une table pour vendredi soir, à neuf heures, pour six personnes, à la terrasse, s'il vous plaît.

*Using en (Sample responses)*

2. Je n'en prends pas.
5. J'aime en préparer.

*Should I or Shouldn't I?*


*How Was It? (Sample responses)*

Quelles soupes délicieuses! Quelle salade excellente!
Quel bifteck formidable! Quels bons fromages!
Quel vin extraordinaire! Quelle mousse magnifique!

*Chapter 18*

*Extend an Invitation (Sample responses)*
1. Tu veux aller à la montagne?
2. Vous voulez aller à la piste de ski?
3. On va au sentier?
4. Allons à la patinoire.
5. Allons à la montagne.
6. Ça te dit d'aller à l'océan?
Do You Accept or Refuse? (Sample responses)

C'est chouette. Ça dépend.
Je n'ai pas envie. Je regrette.
C'est une bonne idée. Ce que tu préfères.

I Think… (Sample responses)

C'est émouvant. C'est un bon film.
Je déteste. C'est amusant.
C'est bidon. C'est toujours la même chose.

How Well Do You Do (Sample responses)


Chapter 19

I Need These Shoes

He picks up and then delivers repaired shoes.

I Need Them Now

It promises to have your glasses ready in an hour and to sell special, high correction lenses that don't deform your face.

It's My Watch (Sample response)

Ma montre ne marche plus. Vendez-vous des piles?

I Need a New Camera

It buys (at the highest rate), sells (at the lowest rate), trades, and repairs the most famous brand cameras.
Relieve My Stress

1. nous 4. elle
2. lui moi 5. eux
3. toi 6. vous

Make a Comparison (Sample response)

Ma soeur est plus grande que moi.
Ma mère est plus vieille que moi.
Moi, je suis plus jeune qu'elle.
Mon mari, lui, il est plus patient que moi.

Chapter 20

I Don't Feel So Hot (Sample responses)


I'm Suffering

1. Je tousse depuis deux semaines. Ça fait deux semaines que je tousse. Il y a deux semaines que je tousse. Voilà deux semaines que je tousse.
2. J'ai mal à la tête depuis trois jours. Ça fait trois jours que j'ai mal à la tête. Il y a trois jours que j'ai mal à la tête. Voilà trois jours que j'ai mal à la tête.
3. J'ai mal au ventre depuis un mois. Ça fait un mois que j'ai mal au ventre. Il y a un mois que j'ai mal au ventre. Voilà un mois que j'ai mal au ventre.

Using Reflexive Verbs (Sample response)

Commanding Reflexively


Chapter 21

Have It on Hand (Sample responses)

Il me faut des aspirines et des gouttes nasales.
Il me faut des aspirines.
Il me faut un rasor, des lames de rasoir et de la crème à raser.
Il me faut du maquillage, du fard, du rouge à lèvres et du mascara.
Il me faut du lait de magnésie.
Il me faut de la laque, du gel moussant, un peigne et une brosse.
Il me faut un antiseptique, et des pansements adjésifs.

Did You or Didn't You?

1. J'ai rempli… Je n'ai pas rempli…
2. Tu as répondu… Tu n'as pas répondu…
3. Tu as obéi… Tu n'as pas obéi…
4. Nous avons acheté… Nous n'avons pas acheté…
5. Elle a cherché… Elle n'a pas cherché…
6. Ils ont attendu… Ils n'ont pas attendu…
Ask Questions

1. Avons-nous travaillé…?  
   N'avons-nous pas travaillé…?
2. A-t-elle ovéi…?  
   N'a-t-elle ovéi…?
3. Ont-ils perdu…?  
   N'ont-ils perdu…?
4. Avez-vous trop maigri…?  
   N'avez-vous trop maigri…?
5. As-tu trop mangé…?  
   N'as-tu trop mangé…?
6. A-t-il attendu…?  
   N'a-t-il attendu…?

What Did They Do?

1. Il a fait…  
2. Nous avons été…  
3. Tu as vu…
4. J'ai pu…  
5. Elles ont pris…  
6. Vous avez lu…
7. Ils ont eu…  
8. Elle a fait…  
9. Je suis arrivée…
10. Nous sommes revenus…  
11. Ils sont restés…
12. Tu es partie…  
13. Vous êtes allés…  
14. Elle est sortie…
15. Ils sont descendus…  
16. Elles sont rentrées…

What Didn't You Do Today? (Sample response)

Je ne suis pas allé(e) en ville.  
Je n'ai pas regardé la télévision.

Je n'ai pas préparé le dîner.  
Je n'ai pas écouté la radio.

Je ne suis pas resté(e) à la maison.  
Je ne suis pas tombé(e).

Chapter 22

Phone Home

Automatically—Lift the receiver, when you get a dial tone, dial 19, you'll get another tone, give the area code for the country you are calling, give the area code of the zone you are calling, then dial the number.

With the help of a France Télécom agent—Lift the receiver, when you get a dial tone, dial 19, you'll get another dial tone, then dial 33 followed by the code for the country you are calling, a French operator will then pick up.
I Can't Talk Now

1. Elle doit réparer…
2. Nous devons aller…
3. Tu dois sortir…
4. Vous devez faire…
5. Ils doivent travailler.
6. Je dois partir…

Excuses

1. Je me suis cassé le bras.
2. Elle s'est réveillée tard.
3. Nous nous sommes occupés d'autre chose.
4. Ils se sont mis à travailler.
5. Vous vous êtes levées à midi.
6. Tu t'es couchée tôt.

Chapter 23

At the Post Office

A commemorative stamp celebrating the first anniversary of the Chunnel. It will be available May 3.

Savoir or Connaître?

1. savent
2. sais
3. connaissez
4. savons
5. connais
6. connaît
7. savez
8. connaissons

Formation of the Imperfect

avoir (to have)        nous avons        elle avait
boire (to drink)      nous buvons        je buvais
connaitre (to be acquainted with) nous connaissons        vous connaissiez
devoir (to have to)    nous devons        tu devais
dire (to say, tell)    nous disons        ils disaient
dormir (to sleep)      nous dormons        nous dormions
écrit (to write)     nous écrivons     elles écrivaient
faire (to make, do)  
nous faisons  
vous faisiez

lire (to read)  
nous lisons  
je lisais

mettre (to put [on])  
nous mettons  
nous mettions

partir (to leave)  
nous partons  
tu partais

pouvoir (to be able to)  
nous pouvons  
elle pouvait

prendre (to take)  
nous prenons  
ils prenaient

recevoir (to receive)  
nous recevons  
vous receviez

savoir (to know)  
nous savons  
elles savaient

sentir (to feel, smell)  
nous sentons  
il sentait

servir (to serve)  
nous servons  
elle servait

sortir (to go out)  
nous sortons  
tu sortais

voir (to see)  
nous voyons  
elles voyaient

vouloir (to want)  
nous voulons  
je voulais

Passé Composé or Imparfait?

1. était  
9. ai dit  
16. avons trouvé

2. était  
10. suis parti(e)  
17. commencent

3. chantaient  
11. sommes allé(e)s  
18. a attaqué

4. faisais  
12. nous sommes arrêté(e)s  
19. a crié

5. a sonné  
13. sommes arrivé(e)s  
20. s'est échappée

6. était  
14. brillait  
21. avons passé

7. a demandé  
15. faisait  
22. était

8. voulais

Chapter 24

Let's Buy Furniture

Your furniture will be guaranteed for five years and recovering for two years, should there be any problem with the manufacturing.

They will give free decorating consultation and will come to give free estimates and take measurements.
You will be given a guarantee against all risks for one year.

Your old furniture will be removed.

All guarantees are free throughout continental France.
**Today's Plans (Sample responses)**

1. Je vais aller en ville.
2. Je vais faire le ménage.
4. Je vais étudier le français.
5. Je vais gagner beaucoup d'argent.

**Verbs Irregular in the Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>STEM</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>avoir (to have)</td>
<td>aur-</td>
<td>tu auras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devoir (to have to)</td>
<td>devr-</td>
<td>nous devrions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>envoyer (to send)</td>
<td>enverr-</td>
<td>il enverrait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>être (to be)</td>
<td>ser-</td>
<td>elles seraient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire (to make, do)</td>
<td>fer-</td>
<td>je ferais</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pouvoir (to be able to)</td>
<td>pourr-</td>
<td>vous pourriez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recevoir (to receive)</td>
<td>recevr-</td>
<td>nous recevrions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>savoir (to know)</td>
<td>saur-</td>
<td>ils sauraient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>venir (to come)</td>
<td>viendr-</td>
<td>tu viendras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voir (to see)</td>
<td>verr-</td>
<td>je verrai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vouloir (to want)</td>
<td>voudr-</td>
<td>elle voudra</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The Conditional of Irregular Verbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>STEM</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>avoir (to have)</td>
<td>aur-</td>
<td>tu aurais</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devoir (to have to)</td>
<td>devr-</td>
<td>nous devrions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>envoyer (to send)</td>
<td>enverr-</td>
<td>il enverrait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>être (to be)</td>
<td>ser-</td>
<td>elles seraient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faire (to make, do)</td>
<td>fer-</td>
<td>je ferais</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pouvoir (to be able to)</td>
<td>pourr-</td>
<td>vous pourriez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recevoir (to receive)</td>
<td>recevr-</td>
<td>nous recevrions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>savoir (to know)</td>
<td>saur-</td>
<td>ils sauraient</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(table continued on next page)*
INFINITIVE | STEM
---|---
venir (to come) | viendr- | tu viendrais
voir (to see) | verr- *(vuhr)* | je verrais
vouloir (to want) | voudr- *(voodr)* | elle voudrait

*What Would You Do? (Sample responses)*

J'irais en Europe.

Je voyagerais à travers le monde.

Je m'achèterais une grande voiture de sport.

Je louerais une villa en France.

J'aiderais les pauvres.

*Chapter 25*

*What Do You Have to Do?*

Il faut que:

1. nous preparions… 
2. elle finisse… 
3. ils attendent… 
4. je téléphone… 
5. vous accomplissiez… 
6. tu descendes… 
7. je me lève… 
8. il aille… 
9. vous soyez… 
10. tu achètes… 
11. elles prennent… 
12. nous fassions…
INDEX

Symbols

^ (circonflexe), 12
  cognates, 32
´ (accent grave), 12
¨ (tréma), 12
´ (accent aigu), 12

A

a, pronunciation, 12–13
à (to), 181
  contractions, 115
  pronunciation, 12–13
â, pronunciation, 13
accent aigu (´), 12
accent circonflexe (´), 12
accent grave (´), 12
accent marks, 11–12
  ^ (circonflexe), 12
    cognates, 32
  ´ (accent grave), 12
  ¨ (tréma), 12
  ´ (accent aigu), 12
acheter (to buy), conjugating, 143
activities (leisure), describing, 162–163, 231–234
adjectives, 48–49, 98–103
  cognates, 33
  demonstratives, 185–186
dictionary abbreviations, 49
gender, 99–102
  er endings, 101
  ere endings, 101
  euse endings, 100
  eux endings, 100
  f endings, 101
  ve endings, 101
interrogatives
  lequel/lequelle (which), 183–184
  quel (which), 121–122, 224
making comparisons, 259
plurals, 103–104
position in sentences, 104–105
possessive adjectives, 94
vocabulary tables, 99–103
adverbs, 49, 238–243
cognates, 33
dictionary abbreviations, 49
forming from adjectives
  feminine adjectives, 239
  masculine adjectives, 238
irregular, 239–242
making comparisons, 260
position in sentences, 242
advertisements (real estate), reading, 314–315
after-dinner drinks, 219
ages, describing, 103
agreement
  adjectives
    demonstrative adjectives, 185–186
    possessive adjectives, 94
verbs, see conjugating verbs

ai, pronunciation, 13–14

aim, pronunciation, 18

ain, pronunciation, 18

airplanes (vocabulary), 108–109
airports
  asking for directions, 112
  prepositions, 114–115
  verbs, 113
  signs, reading, 109–111
  vocabulary tables, 109–111
alcoholic beverages
  after-dinner drinks, 219
  apéritifs, 210
  champagne, 197
  ice in, 219
  wines, 196–197, 218–219
aller (to go)
  command form, 114
  conjugating, 112
  expressing future tense, 316
  subjunctive, 332
am, pronunciations, 18
American consulate/embassy, asking for location, 256
an, pronunciations, 18
answering
  questions
    affirmatively, 75–76
    negatively, 76
  suggestions, 165
  telephones, 291–292
apartments
  features, 310–311
  furnishings, 312–313
apéritifs, 210
appeler (to call)
conditional mood, 320
conjugating, 143
future tense, 318
appellations (wine), 196
appetizers, 212
appliances, 312–313
arrivez (to arrive), pronunciation, 10
art
Kiss, The (Le Baiser), 4
Thinker, The (Le Penseur), 4
articles, 54
la (the), 54
le (the), 154
contractions, 115
gender, 54
les (the), 115
partitives, 221–225
un (a, an), 54
une (a, an), 54
asking for
directions, 112–116
room reservations, 135
room service, 136–137
services
camera shops, 255
dry cleaners, 251–252
hair salons, 249–251
jewelers, 255
laundromats, 252–253
optometrists, 254
sales help, 182–183, 199–200
shoemakers, 253
time of day, 129
today's date, 157
asking questions, 73–75
  information questions, 86–89
  interrogatives, 87, 121–122
passé composé, 202
yes/no questions
  est-ce que, 73, 87–88
  intonation, 73
  inversion, 74–75, 88
  n'est-ce pas? (isn't that so?), 73
attractions (tourist), 162–163
au (to, in), 169
  pronunciation, 16
automobiles
  renting, 122–123
  vocabulary tables, 123–124
avoir (to have), 42, 97–98, 280
  conjugating, 97
  future tense, 318
  idioms, 97
    describing symptoms (illnesses), 265
    expressing needs, 210
moods
  conditional, 321
  subjunctive, 332
  past participle, 283

B
b, pronunciation, 20
banks, 324–327
  transactions, 327–329
vocabulary table, 324–326

barbers
expressing styling preferences, 249–250
hair products, 250
services, 248–249

beaches, sunbathing, 234

beauty parlors
expressing styling preferences, 249–250
La Coiffure de Paris, 250
products, 250
services, 248–249

beef, 192

beverages
alcoholic
after-dinner drinks, 219
apéritifs, 210
champagne, 197
ice in, 219
wines, 195, 218–219
ordering (restaurants), 219–220
vocabulary tables, 219–220

bilingual dictionaries, 49
definitions, choosing, 49–51
grammatical abbreviations, 49–51
body, parts of, 264–265
body language, 45
boire (to drink)
   conjugating, 220
   past participle, 283
bonne chance (good luck), 7
boulangeries (bakeries), 188
breads, 194
buying
   beverages, 195
      wines, 196–197
   clothing, 176–177
      colors, 178
      fabrics, 178–179
      labels, 179
      sizes, 177
drugstore items, 276–278
   medical equipment, 278
   prescription medications, 276
foods
   breads, 194
   candy, 195
   dairy products, 194
   desserts, 194
   fruits, 191
   measurements, 197–199
   meats, 192–193
   nuts, 191–192
   seafood, 193–194
   stores, 188–189
   vegetables, 190
jewelry, 175–176

C

c, pronunciations, 20–21
ç (cédille), 12
calls (telephone)
  making, 289–290
  problems, handling, 292–293
  telephone conversations, 291–292
  types, 288
camera shops, expressing camera/film needs, 255–258
candy, 195
cardinal numbers, 126–129
  elision, 127
  expressing dates, 157
  forming ordinal numbers, 139
  writing, 128
careers, vocabulary tables, 84–85
cars, renting, 122–125
cç, pronunciations, 12, 21
ce (this, that), 185–186
çé (this, that), 185–186
Celsius (centigrade), 151
centimes, 329
cer verbs, 140
  imperfect tense, 304
cet/cette (these, those), 185–186
ch, pronunciations, 21
champagne, 197
cheeses, ordering (restaurants), 217
chez (to [at] the house [business] of), 189
chocolate mousse truffles recipe, 203
Chunnel, 121

circonflexe (ˆ), 32

cleaners, requesting service from, 251–253

clothing
  colors, 178
  fabrics, 178–179
  labels, 179
  sizes, 177
  vocabulary table, 176–177

cobblers, requesting service from, 253

cognates, 26
  ^ (circonflexe), 32
  é, 32
  false cognates, 33
  literary titles, 33–34
  near cognates, 28–29
  perfect cognates, 26–27
  verbs, 30–31

Collins-Robert dictionary, 6

colors, 178

commands, 113–114
  etiquette, 113
  reflexive verbs, 274

comparisons, expressing
  adjectives, 259
  adverbs, 260
  aussi…que (as…as), 260

compound nouns, plurals, 63

condiments, 215

conditional mood
  irregular verbs, 321
  regular verbs, 319
shoe verbs, 320–321
conjugating verbs, 48, 70

conjugation tables

acheter (to buy), 143
aller (to go), 112
appeler (to call), 143
avoir (to have), 97
boire (to drink), 220
connaître (to know), 300
devoir (to have to), 293–294
dire (to tell, say), 270–271
dormir (to sleep), 200
écrire (to write), 299
employer (to use), 142
essayer (to try), 142
être (to be), 83–86
faire (to make, to do), 159–160
jeter (to throw), 144
lire (to read), 299
manger (to eat), 141
mettre (to put [on]), 179
partir (to leave), 201
payer (to use), 142
placer (to place, set), 140
pouvoir (to be able to), 230
préférer (to prefer), 144
prendre (to take), 120–121
savoir (to know), 300
se sentir (to feel), 271
sentir (to smell, feel), 201
servir (to serve), 201
sortir (to go out), 201
venir (to come), 279
voir (to see), 163
vouloir (to want), 230
er verb family, 70–71, 139–140
cer verbs, 140
ger verbs, 141
yer verbs, 142–143
e+consonant+er verbs, 143–144
e+consonant+er verbs, 144–145
ir verb family, 71, 200–202
re verb family, 72
conjunctions, et (and), 128
connaître (to be acquainted with)
conjugating, 300
pat participle, 283
savoir (to know), compared, 301
consonants, pronouncing, 10, 20–24
b, 20
c, 20
cç, 21
ch, 21
d, 20
f, 20
final consonants, 20
g, 21–22
ge, 22
gn, 22
gu, 21
h, 22
j, 22
k, 20
l, 20
m, 20
n, 20
p, 20
q, 20
r, 22
s, 20–23
t, 20
th, 23
tion, 21
v, 20
x, 21–23
z, 20
continents (vocabulary), 168

contractions
à + le, 115
à + les, 115
de + le, 93, 115
de + les, 93, 115

conversations
asking questions, 86–89
information questions, 86–89
yes/no questions, 72–75

greetings, 82
  formal, 82, 108
  informal, 82–83

ice breakers, 87

introductions, 95–96

invitations, 230

telephone calls, 291–292

converting Fahrenheit to Celsius, 151

counting, 126–129

countries (vocabulary), 167–168

currency
  banking terms, 324–326
  exchanging
    banks, 324
    exchange bureaus, 327
    French currency, 329

cycling, Tour de France, 229

D

d, pronunciation, 20

dairy products, 194

dans (to, in), 169

dates, 156–158
  asking for information about, 157
  days, 153–154
  expressions, 156
  months, 154–155
  time, 130, 158
    idiomatic expressions, 38–39
    telling, 129–131

years, 157
days of the week, 153–154
  expressions, 158

de (from, of), 83, 169, 259
  contractions, 93, 115
  partitives, 221
  showing possession, 93

definitions, choosing (bilingual dictionaries), 49–51
definite articles
  la (the), 54
  le (the), 154
    contractions, 115
    gender, 54
  les (the), 115
    partitives, 221–225
demonstrative adjectives, 185–186
describing
ages, 103
people, 98–103
symptoms (illnesses), 265–268
  avoir mal à + definite article, 265
  expressions, 267
  faire mal à, 266–267
  vocabulary tables, 266–267
things, 98–103
weather, 42–43, 150
  idioms, 43–45
  temperatures, 151
  vocabulary tables, 151–158
desserts, 194
  ordering (restaurants), 218
devoir (to have to)
  conditional mood, 321
  conjugating, 293
  future tense, 318
  past participle, 283
dictionaries (bilingual), 6, 49
  definitions, choosing, 49–51
  grammatical abbreviations, 49–51
dire (to tell, say)
  conjugating, 270–271
  past participle, 283
direct object pronouns, 180–182
  position in sentences, 181–182
  vocabulary table, 181
directions
  asking for, 112–116
idiomatic expressions, 39–41
receiving, 112, 116
  asking for help, 115–116
  commands, 113–114
vocabulary tables, 125
dislikes, expressing, 166–167
distances, measurements, 124
doctors, visiting, 267–270
  describing parts of body, 264–265
  describing symptoms, 265–267
    avoir mal à + definite article, 265
    expressions, 267
    faire mal à, 266
    vocabulary, 266–267
dormir (to sleep), conjugating, 200
doubt, expressing (subjunctive), 329–333
drogueries (drugstores), 276
drugstores, 276–278
dry cleaners, requesting service from, 251–253
du (from), 84

E
e, pronunciations, 12–14
é
cognates, 32
  pronunciation, 12–13
è, pronunciation, 12–14
ê, pronunciation, 14
e+consonant+er verbs, 143–144
  conditional mood, 320
  future tense, 317
é+consonant+er verbs, 144–145
eating establishments, 206
menus, ordering from, 211
appetizers, 212
beverages, 219–220
cheeses, 217
condiments, 215
desserts, 218
eggs, 214
ice cream flavors, 218
meats, 213–214
seasonings, 215
soups, 212
spices, 215
vegetables, 214
wines, 218–219
preferences, expressing, 216–217
reservations, making, 208
sending food back, 217
sharing portions, 221–222
table settings (vocabulary), 209
tips, 225
eau, pronunciation, 16
écrire (to write)
conjugating, 299
past participle, 283
eggs, ordering (restaurants), 214
ei, pronunciations, 14
elevators, 135
requesting floors, 138–139
elision (sliding), 10–11
cardinal numbers, 127
ordinal numbers, 139
em, pronunciations, 18
employer (to use), conjugating, 142
en (pronoun), 222–224
  position in sentences, 223
  pronunciation, 18
en (in, to), 155–156, 168
entertainment
  leisure activities, describing, 162–163, 231–234
  movies, 235–236
    abbreviations, 236
    expressing opinions about, 236
television, 235
envoyer (to send)
  conditional mood, 321
  future tense, 318
er, pronunciation, 13
er verb family, 30
  conjugating, 70–71
moods
  conditional, 319
  subjunctive, 330
past participles, 280
tenses
  future, 316–317
  imperfect, 302–303
verb tables, 76–77
es, pronunciation, 13
essayer (to try), conjugating, 142
est-ce que (asking questions), 73, 87
et (and)
  grammar, 128
  pronunciation, 13–14
etiquette
  commands, 113
greetings
  formal, 82, 108
  informal, 82–83
introductions, 95–96
invitations
  accepting, 231
  refusing, 232
thanks, expressing, 116
tipping
movie theaters, 236
restaurants, 225
vous vs. tu (you), 67
être (to be)
conjugating, 83–86
helping verb functions, 283–286, 293–294
idioms, 85–86
moods
conditional, 321
subjunctive, 333
past participle, 283
tenses
imperfect, 303
future, 318
passé composé, 285
Euro-Disney, 163
Eurostar (Chunnel service), 121
exchanging currency
banks, 324
exchange bureaus, 327
excuses, 294
expressing
doubts, 329–333
indifference, 232–233
length of time, 269–270
needs, 333
opinions, 166–167, 184–185, 225
hair salons, 249
movies, 236
preferences, 95, 183–184
suggestions, 164–165
eyeglasses, 254
ez, pronunciation, 13

F

f, pronunciation, 20
fabrics (vocabulary), 178–179
Fahrenheit, converting to Celsius, 151
faire (to make, to do), 158–160
   conjugating, 159
   idioms, 159–160
       expressing symptoms (illnesses), 266
moods
   conditional, 321
   subjunctive, 332
future tense, 318
past participle, 283
false cognates, 33–34
families (verbs), 30, 69
   er verb family
       conditional, 319
       conjugating, 70–71
       future, 316–317
       imperfect, 302–303
       subjunctive, 330
       verb tables, 30, 76–77
   ir verb family
       conditional, 319
       conjugating, 71
       future, 316–317
       imperfect, 302–303
       subjunctive, 330
       verb tables, 31, 78
re verb family
conditional, 319
conjugating, 72
future, 316–317
imperfect, 302–303
subjunctive, 330
verb tables, 31, 78
family members (vocabulary), 92
fashion, haute couture, 4
feelings, expressing, 41–43
feminine adjectives, 99
    adverbs, forming, 239
    doubles consonants, 101–102
endings
    ere, 101
    euse, 100
    ve, 101
irregular adjectives, 102
feminine nouns, 56–57
    masculine forms, 58
    pronunciations, 57–58
    suffixes, 57–58
feu (fire, traffic light), 125
fish (vocabulary), 193
floors (buildings), 135
following directions, 116
foods

beverages, 195
breads, 194
candy, 195
condiments, 215
dairy products, 194
desserts, 194, 218
fruits, 191
ice cream, 218
measurements, 197–199
expressions, 199
vocabulary table, 198

meats

beef, 192
fish, 193–194
fowl, 192–193
game, 192–193
lamb, 192
pâté, 193
pork, 192
seafood, 193–194
nuts, 191–192
recipes, chocolate mousse truffles, 203

restaurants, 206

menu items, 211–213
ordering, 210–218
reservations, 208
sending food back, 217
sharing portions, 221–222
table settings, 209
tips, 225
seasonings and spices, 215
vegetables, 190

forecasts (weather)

idiomatic expressions, 43–45
newspaper forecasts, reading, 151–153
temperatures, 151
vocabulary tables, 151–158

formal greetings, 82
fowl, 192–193
France Télécom, 289
francophile (lover of French), 7
francophone (French speaker), 7
francs, 329

French, studying

benefits, 4–5
study tips, 6

fruits, 191

furniture, 312–313

future tense

irregular verbs, 318
regular verbs, 316–317
shoe verbs, 317–318

G

g, pronunciations, 21–22
game (meats), 192
ge, pronunciations, 22

gender, 54–59

adjectives, 99–102
demonstratives, 185–186
irregular, 102
possessives, 94
quel (which), 121
word endings, 100–101
changing, 58
nouns, 48
countries, 167–168
ordinal numbers, 138
plural, 59–60
singular, 55–58
past participles, 285–286
ger verbs, 141
imperfect tense, 304
gn, pronunciations, 22
good luck (bonne chance), 7
grammar, 7
adjectives, 48–49, 98–103
gender, 99
plurals, 103–104
position in sentences, 104–105
adverbs, 49
forming, 238
irregular adverbs, 240–242
position in sentence, 242
articles
gender, 54
partitives, 221–225
cognates, 26–27
false, 33–34
near, 28–29
verbs, 30–31
conjunctions, et (and), 128
dictionaries (bilingual), grammatical abbreviations, 49–51
inversions, 74–75, 88
nouns, 48
gender, 48, 53
noun markers, 54–55, 59–60
plurals, 59–63
possessives, 93–96
proper nouns, 67
singular nouns, 55–58
prepositions, 114–115, 170
  à, 181
  au (to, in), 169
  chez (to [at] the house [business] of), 189
contractions, 115
dans (to, in), 169
de (from), 83, 169, 259
du (from), 84
en (in, to), 155–156, 168
pronouns, 48, 66–68
  en, 222–224
object pronouns, 180–182
on, 164
reflexive, 273, 294
stress pronouns, 257–258
tu (you), 67
vous (you), 67
y (there), 170–172
verbs, 48, 68–72
commands, 113–114
conditional, 319–321
families, 30–31, 70–77, 200–202
future, 316–318
helping verbs, 280, 283–286
imperfect, 302–305
intransitive, 49
passé composé, 279–286
past participles, 280
reflexive, 49, 271–273
subjunctive, 329–333
transitive, 49

see also conjugating verbs
greetings
formal, 82, 108
informal, 82–83
gu, pronunciations, 21

H
h, pronunciations, 22
hair salons
expressing styling preferences, 249–250
La Coiffure de Paris, 250
products, 250
services, 248–249

haute couture (high fashion), 4

health foods stores, 195

help, asking for, 115–116, 256

helping verbs

avoir (to have), 280
être (to be), 283–286, 293–294

herbs, 215

high fashion (haute couture), 4

hotels

elevators, 135
facilities, 134

room service, requesting, 136–137

rooms

furnishings, 135–136
reserving, 135

houses

features, 310–311
furnishings, 312–313
kitchens, 311
real estate advertisements, reading, 314–315
renting, 310, 313–314

“how long,” expressing, 269–270

I

i, pronunciations, 15
ié, pronunciation, 15

ice cream, 218

idioms, 35–46

avoir (to have), 97
direction, 39–41
en (in), 223
être (to be), 85–86
expressing opinions, 41–42
faire (to make, to do), 159–160
physical conditions, 42–43
slang, compared, 36–37
time, 38–39
travel/transportation, 37–38
weather, 43–45
ien, pronunciation, 19
il (he)
  inversions (asking questions), 74
  pronunciation, 15–16
ill, pronunciation, 15
illnesses, 267–270
  symptoms, describing, 265–267
im, pronunciation, 18
immediately (tout de suite), 7
imperfect tense, 302
  forming
    irregular verbs, 303–304
    regular verbs, 302–303
    shoe verbs, 304
  passé composé, compared, 302–305
in, pronunciation, 18
indirect object pronouns, 180–182, 210
  position in sentences, 181–182
  vocabulary tables, 181
informal greetings, 82
information questions, 86–89
instruments, musical, 237–238
interpreters, requesting, 256
interrogative adjectives, 87
   lequel/lequelle (which), 183–184
intonation, questions, 73
introductions, 95–96
inversions (asking questions), 74–75, 88, 281
invitations, 230
   accepting, 231–232
   refusing, 232
ir verb family conjugating, 71
moods
  conditional, 319
  subjunctive, 330

tenses
  future, 316–317
  imperfect, 302–303
past participles, 280
verb tables, 31, 78
irregular adjectives, 102
irregular adverbs, 241
irregular noun plurals, 62–63
irregular verbs, 30
  aller (to go)
    conjugating, 112
    expressing future tense, 316
avoir (to have), 96–98, 280
boire (to drink), 220
devoir (to have to), 293
dire (to tell, say), 270–271
décrire (to write), 299
être (to be)
  conjugating, 83–86
  helping verb functions, 283–286, 293–294
  idioms, 85–86
moods, 321, 333
past participle, 283
tenses, 285, 303, 318
faire (to make, to do), 158–160
  conjugating, 159
  idioms, 159–160
ir verb family
dormir (to sleep), 200
partir (to leave), 201
sentir (to smell, to feel), 201
servir (to serve), 201
sortir (to go out), 201
lire (to read), 299–300
mettre (to put [on]), 179
moods
  conditional, 321
  subjunctive, 332–333
past participles, 282–283
pouvoir (to be able to [can]), 230
prendre (to take), 120–121
se sentir (to feel), 271
tenses
  future, 318
  imperfect, 303–304
venir (to come), 279
voir (to see), 163

J
j, pronunciations, 22
j'arrive, pronunciation, 11
jeter (to throw)
  conjugating, 144
  conditional mood, 320
  future tense, 318
jewelers, requesting service from, 255
jewelry, 175–176
jouer (to play), 237–238
K–L

k, pronunciation, 20
kilometers, 124
The Kiss (Le Baiser), 4
kitchens, 311
   appliances, 312–313
l, pronunciation, 20
la (the), 54
labels, reading
   clothing, 179
   wine, 196–197
Larousse dictionary, 6
laundromats, 251
   requesting service from, 251–258
le (the)
   contractions, 115
   gender, 54
Le Baiser (The Kiss), 4
Le Penseur (The Thinker), 4
Le Shuttle (Chunnel service), 121
leisure activities
   locations, 231
   sports, 238
   vocabulary tables, 162–163, 228–229, 233
lequel/lequelle (which), 183–184
les (the), 115
l'homme (the man), 22
l'hôtel (the hotel), pronunciation, 11
liaison (linking), 10
liquid measurements, 198
liquors
after-dinner drinks, 219
apéritifs, 210
champagne, 197
ice in, 219
wines, 196–197, 218–219
lire (to read), conjugating, 299–300
language Web site, 11
locations, idiomatic expressions, 39–41

M
m, pronunciation, 20
mailing letters, 295–298
making telephone calls, 289–290
   conversations, 291–292
   problems, handling, 292–293
man, the (l'homme), 22
manger (to eat), conjugating, 141
masculine adjectives
   adverbs, forming, 238
   feminine forms, 99
      er endings, 101
      eux endings, 100
f endings, 101

doubling consonants, 101–102

irregular adjectives, 102

plurals, 104

masculine nouns, 56–57

dictionary (bilingual) abbreviations, 49

feminine forms, 58

pronunciation, 57

measurements, 197–199

expressions, 199

liquid, 198

solid, 198

vocabulary table, 198

meats, 192, 213

beef, 192

fish, 193–194

fowl, 192–193

game, 192–193

lamb, 192

menu entrees, 213–214

pâté, 193

pork, 192

seafood, 193–194

medical language

illnesses, 267–270

medical equipment, 278

parts of body, 264–265

symptoms, 265–267

menus

appetizers, 212

beverages, 219–220
condiments, 215
desserts, 218
dishes served, 211
eggs, 214
ice cream, 218
meats, 213–214
seasonings, 215
soups, 212
spices, 215
vegetables, 214
wines, 218–219
merci (thank you), 116
mettre (to put [on])
  conjugating, 179
  past participle, 283
mon ami, pronunciation, 10
money
  banking terms, 324–326
  exchanging
    banks, 324
    exchange bureaus, 327
  French currency, 329
months, 154–155
moods
  conditional, 319–321
    irregular verbs, 321
    regular verbs, 319
    shoe verbs, 320–321
  subjunctive, 329–333
    common expressions, 333
    irregular verbs, 332–333
    regular verbs, 330
shoe verbs, 330–331

motels
elevators, 135
facilities, 134
room service, requesting, 136–137
rooms
furnishings, 135–136
reserving, 135
movies, 235–236
abbreviations, 236
expressing opinions about, 236
music, 237–238

N
n, pronunciation, 20
nasal sounds, pronouncing, 17
ain/aim, 18
an/am, 18
en/em, 18
ien, 19
in/im, 18
oin, 19
on/om, 19
un/um, 19
ne…pas (not), 76, 280–282
near cognates, 28–29
needs, expressing, 210, 333
negative phrases (not, never), 76, 280–282
n'est-ce pas? (isn't that so?), 73
newspapers, reading
real estate advertisements, 314–315
weather forecasts, 151–158
non (no), 76
noun markers, 54–55
  plural nouns, 59–60
  singular nouns, 55–58
nouns, 48
  adjectives, 48–49
  cognates, 33
  gender, 48, 54–59
    changing, 58
      plural nouns, 59–60
      singular nouns, 55–58
inversions, 74–75
noun markers, 54–55
  plural, 59–61
  singular, 55–58
plural nouns, 60–61
  compound words, 63
  irregular words, 62
possession, expressing, 93–96
pronouns, 48, 66–68, 222–224
  direct object pronouns, 180–182
  indirect object pronouns, 210
  position in sentences, 181–182
vocabulary table, 181
reflexive pronouns, 273, 294
stress pronouns, 257–258
proper nouns, 67

numbers
  cardinal numbers, 126–129
dates, 157
elision, 127

ordinal numbers
  elision, 139
gender, 138
  plurals, 138

telephone numbers, 129
writing, 128

nuts, 191–192

O
  o, pronunciations, 16
  ô, pronunciations, 16

object pronouns, 180–182
  position in sentences, 181–182
  reflexive verbs, 271
  vocabulary table, 181
oi, pronunciations, 17
oin, pronunciation, 19
om, pronunciation, 19

opening conversations
  formal greetings, 82
  informal greetings, 82–83

opinions, expressing, 184–185, 225
  hair salons, 249
idiomatic expressions, 41–42
movies, 236
negative, 166–167
positive, 166
optometrists, visiting, 254
ordinal numbers
    elision, 139
    forming from cardinal numbers, 139
gender, 138
    plurals, 138
ou, pronunciations, 17
oui (yes), 75
oy, pronunciations, 17

P
p, pronunciation, 20
participles (past), 280–283
partir (to leave), conjugating, 201
partitives, 221–225
parts of body, 264–265
passé composé tense, 279
    forming, 279
    helping verbs
        avoir (to have), 280
        être (to be), 283–286, 293–294
imperfect, compared, 302–305
negatives, 280–281, 282
    ne…pas, 280–281, 282
questions, 281, 282
past participles
    forming, 280–283
gender, 285–286
past tense, see passé composé
pâté, 193
pâtisseries (pastry shops), 188
payer (to use), conjugating, 142
pharmacies, 276
photography shops, requesting service from, 255–258
physical conditions, idioms, 42–43
placer (to place, to set), conjugating, 140
placing telephone calls, 289–290
   conversations, 291–292
   problems, handling, 292–293
planes, 108–109
   airports, 109–115
   vocabulary tables, 108–109
plurals
   adjectives, 103–104
   nouns, 60–61
      compound nouns, 63
      forming, 60–61
      gender, 59–60
      irregular nouns, 62–63
      ordinal numbers, 138
   pronouns, 66
police stations, asking for location of, 256
pork, 192
possessive adjectives, 93–96
post office
   mailing letters/packages, 297–298
   sending telegrams, 298
   vocabulary, 295–296
pouvoir (to be able to)
   conjugating, 230
future tense, 318
moods
  conditional, 321
  subjunctive, 332
preferences, expressing, 95, 183–184
préférer (to prefer), conjugating, 144
prendre (to take), 120–121
prepositions
  à (to), 38, 181
  au (to, in), 169
  chez (to [at] the house [business] of), 189
contractions, 115
dans (to, in), 169
de (from, of), 83, 169, 259
showing possession, 93
du (from), 84
en (in, to), 38, 155–156, 168
vocabulary tables, 114–115, 170
prescriptions, filling, 276
prices, 126–127
prix fixe (price fixed) menus, 209
professions (vocabulary), 84–85
pronouns, 48, 66–68
elle (she), 67–68
en, 222–224
il (he), 67–68
ils/elles (they), 67, 68
indirect object pronouns, 210
inversions, 74
object pronouns, 180
position in sentences, 181–182
vocabulary table, 181
on, 164
reflexive pronouns, 273, 294
stress pronouns, 257–258
tu (you, familiar form), 67
vous (you, polite form), 67
y (there), 170–172
making suggestions, 172
position in sentences, 171
pronunciations
accent marks, 11–12
ˆ (circonflexe), 12, 32
´ (accent grave), 12
¨ (trema), 12
´ (accent aigu), 12

consonants, 20–24
b, 20

c, 20–21
d, 20
f, 20

final consonants, 10, 20
g, 21–22
h, 22
j, 22
k, 20
l, 20
m, 20
n, 20
p, 20
q, 20
r, 22
s, 20–23
t, 20–23
v, 20
x, 21–23
z, 20

elision (sliding), 11
liaison (linking), 10

nasal sounds, 17
ain/aim, 18
an/am, 18
en/em, 18
ien, 19
in/im, 18
oin, 19
on/om, 19
un/um, 19
syllables, accenting, 10
tips, 11
vowels, 13–24
a, 12–13
ai, 13
au, 16
e, 12–14, 32
i, 15–16
o, 16–17
u, 15–17
y, 15
proper nouns, 67
publications (vocabulary), 300
purchasing
beverages, 195
wines, 196–197
clothing, 176–177
colors, 178
fabrics, 178–179
labels, 179
sizes, 177
foods
breads, 194
candy, 195
dairy products, 194
desserts, 194
fruits, 191
measurements, 197–199
meats, 192–193
nuts, 191–192
seafood, 193–194
stores, 188–189
vegetables, 190
jewelry, 175–176

Q
q, pronunciations, 20
que (than)
  making comparisons, 259
quel, 224
  position in sentence, 225
quel (which), 121–122
quelle, 224
  position in sentence, 225
questions
  asking
    est-ce que, 73, 87–88
    interrogatives, 87, 121–122, 122
    intonation, 73
    inversion, 74–75, 88
    n'est-ce pas? (isn't that so?) tag, 73
information questions, 86–89
negative questions, 282
passé composé, 281–282
yes/no questions, 73–75

R

r, pronunciations, 22
R.A.T.P. (Régie Autonome des Transports Parisiens), 120
re verb family
   conjugating, 72
   moods
      conditional, 319
      subjunctive, 330
   past participles, 280
   tenses
      future, 316–317
      imperfect, 302–303
   verb tables, 31, 78

reading
   labels
      clothing, 179
      wine, 196
   menus, 211–213

newspapers
   real estate ads, 314–315
   weather forecasts, 151–158

signs
   airports, 110–111
   road signs, 125

real estate
   advertisements, reading, 314–315
transactions, 313–314
vocabulary, 310–311

recevoir (to receive)
conditional mood, 321
future tense, 318

recipes, chocolate mousse truffles, 203
reflexive pronouns, 273, 294
reflexive verbs, 293–294
command forms, 274
se sentir (to feel), 270–271
verb tables, 271–273

Régie Autonome des Transports Parisiens (R.A.T.P.), 120

regular verbs, 30, 68–70

er verb family
conditional, 319
conjugating, 70–71
future, 316–317
imperfect, 302–303
subjunctive, 330
verb tables, 30, 76–77

ir verb family
conditional, 319
conjugating, 71
future, 316–317
imperfect, 302–303
subjunctive, 330
verb tables, 30, 76–77

ir verb family
conditional, 319
conjugating, 71
future, 316–317
imperfect, 302–303
subjunctive, 330
verb tables, 31, 78

re verb family
conditional, 319
conjugating, 72
future, 316–317
imperfect, 302–303
subjunctive, 330
verb tables, 31, 78

renting
cars, 122–123
houses, 310–314
medical equipment, 278

reserving hotel rooms, 135

restaurants
complaints, 217
menus, ordering from, 210
appetizers, 212
beverages, 219–220
cheeses, 217
condiments, 215
desserts, 218
dishes served, 211
eggs, 214
ice cream, 218
meats, 213–214
seasonings and spices, 215
sharing portions, 221–222
soups, 212
vegetables, 214
wines, 218–219
preferences, expressing, 216–217
reservations, making, 208

Table settings (vocabulary), 209

types, 206

road signs, reading, 125

room service, requesting, 136–137

rooms (hotels)
  features, 310–311
  furnishings, 312–313

S

s
  forming plurals, 60–61, 103
  pronunciations, 20–23

salespeople, requesting help from, 182–183, 199–200

salons
  expressing styling preferences, 249–250
  *La Coiffure de Paris*, 250
  products, 250
  services, 248–249

savoir (to know)
  conjugating, 300
  connaître (to know), compared, 301

future tense, 318

moods
  conditional, 321
  subjunctive, 332
  past participle, 283

se sentir (to feel), conjugating, 271
seafood, 193–194
seasonings, 215
seasons, 155–156
sending telegrams, 298
sentir (to smell), conjugating, 201
se sentir (to feel), 271
servir (to serve), conjugating, 201
shoe verbs, 139–140
cer verbs, 140
e+consonant+er verbs, 143–144
é+consonant+er verbs, 144–145
ger verbs, 141
moods
conditional, 320–321
subjunctive, 330–331
tenses
future, 317–318
imperfect, 304
yer verbs, 142–143
shoemakers, requesting service from, 253
shopping, 174–175
clothing
colors, 178
fabrics, 178–179
reading labels, 179
sizes, 177
vocabulary, 176–177
225
drugstore items, 276–278
medical equipment, 278
prescription medications, 276
foods, 188–189
   bakeries, 194
   butcher shops, 192
   candy stores, 195
   delicatessens, 192
   dairies, 194
   fish markets, 193
   fruit stores, 191
   grocery stores, 190
   health foods stores, 195
   wineries, 196–197
jewelry, 175–176
opinions, expressing, 184–185
preferences, expressing, 183–184
salespeople, requesting help from, 182–183, 199–200
taxes, T.V.A. (taxe à la valeur ajoutée), 177
si (yes), 76
sightseeing activities, 162–163
signs, reading
   airports, 109–111
   road signs, 125
singular nouns
   gender, 55–58
   noun markers, 55–58
singular pronouns, 66
sion, pronunciations, 23
sizes (clothing), 177
slang, 36–37
solid measurements, 198
sortir (to go out), conjugating, 201
soups, 212
special characters (accent marks), 11–12
spices, 215
sports, 228–229
locations, 231
Tour de France, 229
stores
clothing, 176–177
drugstores, 276–278
foods, 188–189
bakeries, 194
butcher shops, 192
candy stores, 195
delicatessens, 192
dairies, 194
fish markets, 193
fruit stores, 191
grocery stores, 190
health foods stores, 195
wineries, 196–197
jewelers, 175–176
pharmacies, 276
salepeople, requesting help from, 182–183, 199–200
vocabulary, 174–175
stress pronouns, 257–258
study tips, 6
subject pronouns, 66–68
subjunctive mood, 329–333
common expressions, 333
forming, 330
irregular verbs, 332–333
shoe verbs, 330–331
suffixes
feminine, 57–58
masculine, 57–58
plurals, 62

suggestions
answering, 165
expressing, 164
command forms, 164
on (pronoun) + verb, 164
phrases, 164–165

sunbathing accessories, 234
swimming accessories, 234

syllables, accenting, 10

symptoms (illnesses), describing
avoir mal à + definite article, 265
expressions, 267
faire mal à, 266
vocabulary, 266–267
T

inversions (asking questions), 74
pronunciation, 20
T.V.A. (taxe à la valeur ajoutée), 177
telegrams, sending, 298
telephones
  answering, 291–292
calls
  problems, handling, 292
  making, 289–292
types, 288
France Télécom, 289
parts of, 288–289
telephone numbers, 129
television shows, 235–236
telling time, 129–131, 158
  cardinal numbers, 126–129
  idioms, 38–39
temperatures (weather)
  describing, 151
  Fahrenheit/Celsius conversions, 151
tenses (verbs)
  future
    aller (to go), 316
    irregular verbs, 318
    regular verbs, 316–317
    shoe verbs, 317–318
  imperfect, 302
irregular verbs, 303–304
regular verbs, 302–303
shoe verbs, 304
passé composé, 279, 293–294
forming, 279
helping verbs, 280, 283–286
negatives, 280–281, 282
questions, 281, 282

see also moods
th, pronunciations, 23
thank you (merci), 116
The Thinker (Le Penseur), 4
time, telling, 129–131
expressions, 130, 158
idioms, 38–39
tion, pronunciation, 21
tipping
movie theaters, 236
restaurants, 225
Tour de France, 229
tourist attractions, 162–163
tout de suite (immediately), 7
transactions (banking)
expressions, 327–329
vocabulary tables, 324–326
transitive verbs, 49
transportation, see cars; airplanes
travel, 120
activities, 162–163
airports/airplanes, 108–111
attractions, 162–163
cars, 122–125
renting, 122–123
vocabulary tables, 123–124
Chunnel, 121
directions, 125–129
distances, measuring, 124
idiomatic expressions, 37–38
road signs, reading, 125
vocabulary
tréma (¨), 12
tu (you, familiar form), 67

U
u, pronunciations, 17
ù, 12
û, 17
ui, 15
um, 19
un, 19
un (a/an), 54
une (a/an), 54

V
v, pronunciations, 20
vegetables, 190
ordering (restaurants), 214
venir (to come)
conditional mood, 321
conjugating, 279
future tense, 318
verbs, 48, 68–72
cognates, 30
er family, 30
false cognates, 33
families, 30
ir family, 31
irregular verbs, 30
re family, 31
regular verbs, 30
commands, 113–114
families
   er family, 70–71, 76–77, 139–145
   ir verb family, 71, 78
   re verb family, 72, 78
intransitive, 49
irregular
   aller (to go), 112
   avoir (to have), 42, 96–98, 280
   boire (to drink)
   devoir (to have to), 293
   dire (to tell, say), 270–271
   écrire (to write), 299
   être (to be), 83–86, 283–286
   faire (to make, to do), 158–160
   ir verb family, 200–202
   lire (to read), 299–300
mets (to put [on]), 179
pouvoir (to be able to [can]), 230
prendre (to take), 120–121
se sentir (to feel), 271
venir (to come), 279
voir (to see), 163
vouloir (to want), 230

moods
conditional, 319–321
subjunctive mood, 329–333

negatives, 76
past participles, 280–283
reflexives, 49, 271–273, 293–294
commands, 274
se sentir (to feel), 270–271

tenses
future, 316–318
imperfect, 302–305
passé composé, 279–286, 293–294
transitive, 49

voir (to see)
conditional mood, 321
conjugating, 163
future tense, 318
past participle, 283

vouloir (to want)
conjugating, 230
future tense, 318
moods
conditional, 321
past participle, 283
subjunctive, 332
vous (you, polite form)
pronunciation, 10

tu (you, familiar form), compared, 67
vowels, pronouncing, 13–24

a, 13
à, 12–13
â, 13
ai, 13
au, 16
e, 14
é, 12–13
è, 12–14
cè, 14
eau, 16
er, 13
es, 13
et, 13
ez, 13

i, 15
î, 15
il, 15–16
ill, 15

o, 16
ô, 16
oi, 17
ou, 17
oy, 17

u, 15–17
ù, 12
û, 17
ui, 15
W
weather, 150–158
  idiomatic expressions, 43–45
  temperatures, 151
  vocabulary tables, 151–158
wine
  appellation, 196
  buying tips, 196–197
  champagne, 197
  quality labels, 196
writing numbers, 128–129

X–Y–X
x
  forming plurals, 61
  pronunciations, 21–23
y, pronunciations, 15
y (there), 170–172
  making suggestions, 172
  position in sentences, 171
years, 157
yer verbs, 142–143
  conditional mood, 320
  future tense, 317
yes
  oui, 75
  si, 76
z, pronunciations, 20
About the Author

Gail Stein has been a French instructor for over 25 years and a Spanish instructor for over 10 years. She is the author of a number of language books including the French is Fun series, French at a Glance, French Practice and Testing I, II, & III, and Spanish Practice and Testing I & II. She resides in Bayside, New York.